

# THAI

## BASIC COURSE

Volume 1



This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

WARREN G. YATES and ABSORN TRYON

**FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE**

WASHINGTON, D.C.

1970

D E P A R T M E N T O F S T A T E

*FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE*  
*BASIC COURSE SERIES*  
*Edited by*  
*AUGUSTUS A. KOSKI*

## PREFACE

*The FSI Thai Basic Course, Volumes I and II, provides introductory materials in modern spoken Thai for the student who wants to learn to speak and understand the language used by an estimated 20 to 22 million people in Thailand.*

*The programmed introduction to Thai phonology which occupies the first 25 pages of Volume I is the work of Warren G. Yates, chairman of the Department of East Asian Languages at the Foreign Service Institute. Dr. Yates and Absorn Tryon, Thai language instructor at FSI, are co-authors of the 40 lessons comprising the core of the course.*

*In the early stages of the project Richard B. Noss, then chairman of the FSI Department of East Asian Languages made valuable suggestions. The authors have made extensive use of Dr. Noss's **Thai Reference Grammar** in the preparation of these volumes, and users will find that they are often referred to it for fuller explanations.*

*Mr. Prapas Kanchanandul contributed drills and assisted in matters of Thai language usage. Mrs. Tryon re-read the entire text of both volumes in Thailand in late 1969 and suggested changes to make the materials current.*

*Mrs. Phongchan Nabangchang collected and organized the items in the glossaries which appear at the end of each lesson and the comprehensive glossary for both volumes which appears at the end of Volume I. Irma C. Ponce typed the camera copy of the entire text while Miss Chotchai Kambhu, Mr. Prasert Crupiti and Mr. Thaworn Jimreivat assisted in proofreading, having previously participated in the classroom trials of the new materials in pre-publication form. Thai language textual material was tape recorded in the FSI Language Laboratory under the direction of Gary Alley with technical assistance from Jose M. Ramirez and Arthur Young.*

*The Foreign Service Institute gratefully acknowledges the financial assistance of the U.S. Office of Education which has made the preparation and publication of these volumes possible.*

  
James R. Frith, Dean  
School of Language Studies  
Foreign Service Institute  
Department of State

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

### Volume 1

|  |        |
|--|--------|
| PREFACE .....  | 111    |
| INTRODUCTORY SECTION   |        |
| Introduction .....   | x      |
| Organization and Use of This Course .....  | xi     |
| Instructions to the Student on Use of Programmed<br>Introduction to Thai Phonology ..... | xiv    |
| Programmed Introduction to Thai Phonology .....  | xvi    |
| Reference Chart of Special Symbols Used in Thai<br>Basic Course .....                    | xxxvii |
| LESSON 1.  |        |
| BASIC DIALOG .....   | 1      |
| Notes on the Basic Dialog .....  | 1      |
| Grammar Notes .....  | 2      |
| 1. The Personal Pronouns .....   | 2      |
| 2. Word Order in the Sentence .....  | 2      |
| 3. The Question Word 'rǎy' .....   | 2      |
| 4. Final Polite Particles .....  | 2      |
| DRILLS .....   | 3      |
| EXERCISES .....  | 5      |
| VOCABULARY .....   | 6      |
| LESSON 2.  |        |
| BASIC DIALOG .....   | 7      |
| Notes on the Basic Dialog .....  | 8      |
| Grammar Notes .....  | 8      |
| 1. The Question Word 'araj' .....  | 8      |
| 2. Use of 'châj máj ?' in Confirmation .....   | 9      |
| 3. Use of 'mâj châj' in Disagreement .....   | 9      |
| 4. Responding to Questions with 'rǎy' .....  | 10     |
| DRILLS .....   | 10     |
| EXERCISES .....  | 16     |
| VOCABULARY .....   | 17     |
| CLASSROOM EXPRESSIONS .....  | 19     |
| LESSON 3.  |        |
| BASIC DIALOG .....   | 20     |
| Notes on the Basic Dialog .....  | 21     |
| Grammar Notes .....  | 21     |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|   |    |
|---|----|
| 1. Stative Verbs .....                          | 21 |
| 2. Omission of the Subject .....                | 21 |
| 3. Negation of the Verb .....                   | 21 |
| 4. Use of the Question Word 'máj' .....         | 22 |
| 5. 'Plurality' in the Noun .....                | 22 |
| 6. 'jàa' in Negative Request .....              | 22 |
| 7. 'nĭi, nĭn, nĭon' in Verbless Sentences ..... | 22 |
| 8. 'rĭy' in Negative Questions .....            | 22 |
| DRILLS .....                                    | 23 |
| EXERCISES .....                                 | 32 |
| VOCABULARY .....                                | 33 |

### LESSON 4.

|   |    |
|---|----|
| BASIC DIALOG .....                                | 35 |
| Grammar Notes .....                               | 36 |
| 1. Use of Unit Classifiers .....                  | 36 |
| 2. The Classifier Phrase as a Noun Replacement... | 37 |
| 3. 'khǒŋ' Used to Indicate 'Possession' .....     | 37 |
| 4. The Position of 'khraj' in the Sentence .....  | 38 |
| 5. How to Express 'Being' .....                   | 38 |
| DRILLS .....                                      | 39 |
| EXERCISES .....                                   | 49 |
| VOCABULARY .....                                  | 50 |

### LESSON 5.

|  |    |
|--|----|
| BASIC DIALOG .....                                       | 52 |
| Notes on the Basic Dialog .....                          | 52 |
| Grammar Notes .....                                      | 56 |
| 1. Ways of Expressing Negation .....                     | 56 |
| 2. <u>pen jannaŋ</u> Meaning 'What is it like to...?'... | 56 |
| DRILLS .....   | 57 |
| EXERCISES .....  | 60 |
| VOCABULARY .....   | 62 |

### LESSON 6.

|  |    |
|--|----|
| BASIC DIALOG .....                                     | 64 |
| Grammar Notes .....                                    | 64 |
| 1. <u>caŋ</u> as an Intensifier of Stative Verbs ..... | 64 |
| 2. <u>keŋ</u> with Noun Phrases and Verb Phrases ..... | 64 |
| 3. Verbs with Obligatory Complements .....             | 65 |
| 4. Terms Used to Refer to People .....                 | 65 |
| 5. Words Relating to Names of Cities and Countries     | 66 |
| 6. Another Use of <u>khraj</u> .....                   | 66 |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| DRILLS .....   | 67  |
| EXERCISES .....  | 79  |
| COMPREHENSION TEST .....   | 80  |
| VOCABULARY .....   | 82  |
| <br>LESSON 7.  |     |
| BASIC DIALOG .....   | 86  |
| Notes on the Basic Dialog .....  | 86  |
| Grammar Notes .....  | 87  |
| 1. <u>khəej</u> to Indicate Past Experience .....                                | 87  |
| 2. <u>paj</u> + Place Expressions .....  | 87  |
| 3. Lack of Verb Inflection .....   | 87  |
| 4. Omission of Subject Pronoun .....   | 88  |
| 5. Sentence + <u>dâj</u> to Indicate 'possibility' or<br>'suitability' .....     | 88  |
| 6. Sentence + <u>pen</u> to Indicate 'ability to perform<br>some activity' ..... | 88  |
| 7. Use of <u>khəej</u> + <u>pen</u> / <u>daj</u> .....                           | 89  |
| DRILLS .....   | 90  |
| EXERCISES .....  | 109 |
| VOCABULARY .....   | 110 |
| Map of Thailand Showing Some Provinces .....                                     | 113 |
| <br>LESSON 8.  |     |
| BASIC DIALOG .....   | 115 |
| Grammar Notes .....  | 115 |
| 1. Compounds .....   | 115 |
| 2. <u>jùu</u> + Place Expressions .....  | 118 |
| 3. Responses to <u>thamnaan araj</u> .....                                       | 118 |
| 4. Difference between <u>paj nǎj</u> and <u>paj thǐnǎj</u> ...                   | 118 |
| DRILLS .....   | 118 |
| EXERCISES .....  | 129 |
| VOCABULARY .....   | 130 |
| <br>LESSON 9.  |     |
| BASIC DIALOG .....   | 135 |
| Grammar Notes .....  | 135 |
| 1. Means of Indicating 'Time' and 'Aspect' of the<br>Verb .....                  | 135 |
| 2. Function of the Question Words .....  | 137 |
| GRAMMAR DRILLS .....   | 139 |
| EXERCISES .....  | 156 |
| VOCABULARY .....   | 158 |

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| LESSON 10.  |     |
| BASIC EPISODE .....   | 160 |
| Questions on Basic Episode .....  | 160 |
| DRILLS .....  | 161 |
| EXERCISE .....  | 170 |
| VOCABULARY .....  | 170 |
| LESSON 11.  |     |
| BASIC DIALOG .....  | 171 |
| Grammar Notes .....   | 172 |
| 1. Use of <u>kan</u> to Indicate 'Mutuality' and<br>'Plurality' .....     | 172 |
| 2. <u>araj</u> , <u>khraj</u> , and <u>năj</u> as Indefinite Pronouns ... | 172 |
| 3. Numerals .....   | 173 |
| 4. <u>thfi</u> with Included Modifiers or Specifiers ....                 | 174 |
| 5. <u>yyn yyn</u> as a Pluralizer .....                                   | 175 |
| DRILLS .....  | 175 |
| EXERCISES .....   | 188 |
| VOCABULARY .....  | 189 |
| LESSON 12.  |     |
| BASIC DIALOG .....  | 191 |
| Notes on the Basic Dialog .....   | 192 |
| Grammar Notes .....   | 193 |
| 1. Ordinal Numbers .....  | 193 |
| 2. <u>rêek</u> as a Number .....  | 193 |
| 3. Ordinal Numbers After Classifiers .....                                | 194 |
| 4. Expressing 'Age' .....   | 194 |
| 5. <u>léew</u> and <u>jan</u> to Express State of an Action ....          | 194 |
| 6. <u>jan mâj</u> ... Versus <u>jan mâj dâj</u> ... .....                 | 195 |
| 7. Position of Classifier Phrases Referring to<br>Pronoun Subject .....   | 195 |
| DRILLS .....  | 195 |
| EXERCISES .....   | 212 |
| VOCABULARY .....  | 212 |
| LESSON 13.  |     |
| BASIC DIALOG .....  | 215 |
| Notes on the Basic Dialog .....   | 215 |
| Grammar Notes .....   | 216 |
| 1. <u>lik</u> ... <u>ca</u> for Future Time .....                         | 216 |
| 2. <u>paj</u> as an Indicator of Excess with <u>cha</u> and <u>rew</u>    | 216 |
| DRILLS .....  | 217 |
| EXERCISES .....   | 229 |
| VOCABULARY .....  | 231 |

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| LESSON 14.  |     |
| BASIC DIALOG .....  | 233 |
| Grammar Notes .....   | 234 |
| 1. <u>klaj</u> and <u>klâj</u> .....                                  | 234 |
| 2. Extent of Distance Constructions .....                             | 235 |
| 3. <u>mii</u> Indicating 'existence' .....                            | 235 |
| DRILLS .....  | 236 |
| EXERCISES .....   | 254 |
| VOCABULARY .....  | 254 |
| LESSON 15.  |     |
| BASIC DIALOG .....  | 257 |
| Questions on the Interview .....                                      | 259 |
| EXERCISES .....   | 260 |
| VOCABULARY .....  | 260 |
| LESSON 16.  |     |
| BASIC DIALOG .....  | 262 |
| DRILLS .....  | 263 |
| EXERCISES .....   | 273 |
| VOCABULARY .....  | 274 |
| LESSON 17.  |     |
| BASIC DIALOG .....  |     |
| Grammar Notes .....   | 276 |
| 1. <u>paj</u> / <u>maa</u> used to Indicate Direction of Motion ..... | 276 |
| 2. Prepositions in Compounds .....                                    | 277 |
| DRILLS .....  | 277 |
| EXERCISES .....   | 286 |
| VOCABULARY .....  | 286 |
| LESSON 18.  |     |
| BASIC DIALOG .....  | 290 |
| Notes on the Basic Dialog .....                                       | 291 |
| Grammar Notes .....   | 291 |
| Sentence Embedding .....  | 291 |
| DRILLS .....  | 293 |
| EXERCISES .....   | 306 |
| VOCABULARY .....  | 308 |
| LESSON 19.  |     |
| BASIC DIALOG .....  | 310 |
| Grammar Drills .....  | 310 |
| EXERCISES .....   | 317 |
| VOCABULARY .....  | 318 |

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON 20.

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| BASIC EPISODE .....                  | 319 |
| Questions on the Basic Episode ..... | 320 |
| EXERCISES .....                      | 322 |
| VOCABULARY .....                     | 323 |
| TEXT GLOSSARY .....                  | G-1 |

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## INTRODUCTORY SECTION

### Introduction

This is the first volume of a three-volume course designed to teach Standard Thai. Standard Thai is the national spoken language of Thailand and is the dialect of educated speakers of Bangkok and Central Thailand. Standard Thai in spoken and written form is known to some extent by nearly all Thais. There are approximately 20 million speakers.

The materials contained in the first two volumes consist of the following:

- (1) A Programmed Introduction to Thai Phonology,
- (2) A standard text of 40 lessons, and
- (3) A text glossary.

Not included in the text but considered to be an integral part of the course are a series of tapes consisting of taped portions of the text and other supplementary materials.

These materials were designed to be used in a course of instruction where the main focus is on teaching the student to speak and understand Thai. This is not to say that reading and writing should be ignored, but that additional materials would be required for that purpose.

Basic to the approach recommended by the authors of this text are the following tenets:

- (1) In the classroom only Thai should be spoken.
- (2) The teacher should be either a native speaker of Thai, or a non-native with excellent control of the language.
- (3) Every effort should be made to make the instruction both in and out of class approximate 'real' use of the language.
- (4) The use of audio-visual devices of all kinds (charts, films, objects, etc.) is encouraged, but they must be used in such a way as to function as an integrated part of the instruction and not just as an interesting appendage.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- (5) Language learning is a largely a function of the student's interest, motivation, and application; therefore, every effort should be made to interest and motivate him to make the requisite effort to learn the language. Next to the student, the language teacher is the most important element in the learning process; it is, therefore, imperative that the teacher not be restricted to following slavishly any particular course of study. With this in mind we encourage Thai language instructors to look upon this text and the accompanying tapes as useful devices which may be modified as required and should in no sense be thought of as the sole or even the main instruments for teaching Thai.

### ORGANIZATION AND USE OF THIS COURSE

#### 1. Basic Dialog

There is a basic dialog at the beginning of each lesson. It consists of a limited number of exchanges between two or sometimes more persons. It represents a somewhat modified version of a 'real' dialog, since hesitation phenomena, false starts, and other features regularly occurring in real speech have been eliminated. It does present what two educated Thai speakers might say in a given situation if they were being particularly careful to avoid the features referred to above.

If the student has memorized the dialogs, he will have a store of language that is readily available when needed (assuming he is in a situation comparable to that of a particular dialog). It is, therefore, suggested that some time be spent for this purpose. Most of this time should be outside of the classroom with the tape recorder, since different students memorize at different rates, and if many class hours are used for this purpose, it will prove very boring to quick learners and very frustrating to slow ones.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 2. Notes

There are three kinds of notes in this text: notes on the dialog, vocabulary notes, and grammar notes. Notes on the dialog present some information that is useful for understanding the dialog. It is often cultural. Vocabulary notes are used to explain the meaning of a word in somewhat greater depth than is included in the lesson glossary. Grammar notes provide a general understanding of Thai grammar. They are written in such a manner as to be useful to even the most linguistically unsophisticated learner. All types of notes should be read and studied outside of class. If some points are still unclear, the instructor may clarify further by giving additional examples, paraphrasing, or by explaining in Thai.

### 3. Drills

The drills in this textbook are for the purpose of providing an opportunity for the student to isolate a particular feature (grammatical or semantic) of the language and to practice it in a limited context until he understands well how to use it and can say it with good fluency and pronunciation.

It should be clearly understood that drills of any kind are simply devices for actuating practice having a particular focus and with a limited objective, and as such they do not represent 'real communication' in language no matter how cleverly they are arranged; therefore, the instructor should be constantly alert to signs of boredom and should switch to a different type of activity before that point is reached.

All this is not to say that drills do not have a place in language teaching. It is probable that a certain number of drills are very helpful if not absolutely indispensable in learning to speaking language well.

Various kinds of drill (substitution, transformation, etc.) are found in this textbook. In most cases it is obvious from the format of the drill what procedure (substitution of an item in a sentence, rearrangement of a sentence, expansion of a sentence or phrase, etc.) is called for. In those instances where it might not be clear, special instructions are provided.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 4. Exercises

'Exercises' (as the term is used in this textbook) are distinguishable from drills mainly by the type of response they elicit. Drills are designed to elicit one particular response and any other response (even if it is correct in form and meaning) is unacceptable; whereas, the only requirement in an exercise is that the response conform logically with the original request (i.e. if you are asked where a certain building is, you don't respond with a description of it instead).

The exercises in any particular lessons in this text have two basic purposes: to provide (1) a setting in which communication of a restricted kind can take place and (2) a means for the instructor to test the ability of the students to use the material in the lesson in more realistic situations.

The exercises in the lessons are an especially important part of the lesson and should be done at the end of the lesson. If students are unable to perform well the tasks presented to them, the instructor should review any parts of the lesson that seem necessary for successful completion of those tasks. In no case should students go to the next lesson until they can do the exercises easily, rapidly, and correctly.

### 5. Lesson and Text Glossaries

At the end of each lesson there is a list of all words occurring for the first time in that lesson and at the end of the volume there is a complete list of words in the first volume.

All entries are listed in alphabetical order (English alphabet) and are written in a phonemic transcription using Roman letters. With each noun is its unit classifier. A limited number of the more useful noun and verb compounds are included. Two examples are given below:

mǎo (khon) ..... doctor (medical)

khâw paj ..... to enter (away from the speaker)

khâw maa ..... to enter (towards the speaker)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 6. Taped Material

Besides the tapes which form a major part of the Programmed Introduction to Thai Phonology, there are tapes of various kinds that accompany each lesson. The dialogs and most of the essential drills are recorded on the lesson tapes; however, they are recorded in such a manner as not to be an exact duplicate of the way in which the drill will be conducted in class, since the purpose of the tapes is to supplement not replace classroom work. Special pronunciation drills and remarks are included on the tapes.

#### INSTRUCTIONS TO THE STUDENT ON USE OF PROGRAMMED INTRODUCTION TO THAI PHONOLOGY

The purpose of this material is to acquaint you with the significant features of the Thai sound system. 'Significant' as used here refers to those features which distinguish words; for example, in English the words sit and set are distinguished only by the quality of the two vowels; therefore, we can say that vowel quality is significant in English (i.e. if you say sit instead of set, you may be misunderstood.) It is, therefore, important that you learn to hear and produce vowel quality. On the other hand, it doesn't matter whether you pronounce the vowel in hit long or short. You may find it a little harder to understand a Southerner who pronounces hit with a slightly longer vowel than you do, but you will not confuse it with heat, which has different vowel quality. We can see then that vowel quality is significant, but vowel length isn't in English.

The significant features of the Thai sound system referred to here relate to contrasts in pitch contour, length of vowels and diphthongs, aspiration of consonants, and syllable prominence.

In addition to the sound features referred to, you will be taught to read and write the special phonetic transcription which is used in the Thai Basic Course that follows this instruction.

The following procedure should be used with these materials:

- (1) Put tape 1 of the Programmed Introduction on the tape recorder and proceed through it carrying out the instructions you hear on the tape. You will

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

not need to refer to the text except for those portions of the material where you are asked to read or write something.

- (2) When you are asked to write something, write it in the text and check your answers. If you need more time than is provided on the tape for checking your answers, stop the machine.
- (3) If at any time in the program, you are confused about something, stop the tape, rewind it and listen to that particular part again.
- (4) Although the program was designed primarily for use before beginning lesson one in the text, all of it or parts of it can be used profitably at later stages in the course as well.
- (5) It is suggested that you do not work for longer periods of time than 30 minutes. Take a short break, and then return. All of the tapes can be completed in one day.
- (6) Since almost all of the material is only on tape, it would be clearly impossible to do the program without the tapes and a tape recorder.

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## A PROGRAMMED INTRODUCTION TO THAI PHONOLOGY

(Student's Text)

Part I is on Tape only.<sup>1</sup>

Part II, Section 1, Frames 1-10, are on Tape only.<sup>2</sup>

| <u>Frame</u> | <u>Content</u>  |
|--------------|---|
| 11           | Observe the way this word is written in the special writing system used in this book:<br><br>phaa   |
| 12           | The 'ph' is used to represent the initial consonant in the word, which sounds like the 'p' in 'pat' in English. The 'aa' stands for 'long a', which sounds like 'ah' in 'father'. |
| 13           | Observe the way this word is written. Notice particularly the symbol above the vowels.<br><br>phâa  |
| 14           | The 'hat' or 'circumflex accent' over the first vowel is used to indicate that the vowel is pronounced with a <u>high falling</u> pitch contour.                                  |
| 15           | Pronounce this word 3 times: phâa<br>After each attempt listen to the tape for confirmation.  |

- 
1. The only 'frames' that are written out in this text are those where you are asked to look at how something is written; otherwise, the content of the frame is voiced only.
  2. You will be notified by the tape when you are to refer to the written text. Be sure to cover the answer when doing a written frame.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### Frame

### Content

- 16 If no mark is written above the vowel, that is indication that the word is to be pronounced with a mid level pitch contour. Listen to the pronunciation of phaa.
- 17 Listen to the pronunciation of the following words and write a mark above the vowel when necessary:  
(1) phaa (2) phaa (3) phaa (4) phaa (5) phaa
- Answers: (1) phâa (2) phaa (3) phaa (4) phâa (5) phâa
- 18 Listen to the following words and write them in the Thai transcription in the spaces below:  
(1) (2) (3) (4) (5)
- Answers: (1) phaa (2) phâa (3) phaa (4) phâa (5) phaa
- 19 This word has low rising pitch. It is written phǎa.
- 20 The mark / ~ / is written above the vowel to indicate that it is to be pronounced with a low rising pitch contour.
- 21 Read the following words. Check your response by the Tape.  
(1) phǎa (2) phaa (3) phâa (4) phaa (5) phâa  
(6) phǎa
- 22 Put the tone markers on the following words after they are pronounced on the tape.  
(1) phaa (2) phaa (3) phaa (4) phaa (5) phaa  
(6) phaa (7) phaa (8) phaa
- Answers: (1) phâa (2) phǎa (3) phaa (4) phâa (5) phǎa  
(6) phǎa (7) phaa (8) phâa

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

| <u>Frame</u> | <u>Content</u>   |
|--------------|--|
| 23           | Transcribe the following words:<br>(1)           (2)           (3)           (4)           (5)<br>(6)           (7)           (8)           (9)           (10) |
| Answers:     | (1) phǎa (2) phaa (3) phâa (4) phǎa (5) phâa<br>(6) phaa (7) phâa (8) phaa (9) phǎa (10) phâa  |

Part II Section 1, Drills, Frames 1-17 are on tape only.

| <u>Frame</u> | <u>Content</u>  |
|--------------|---|
| 18           | This time look at the words below as they are read on the tape. Note carefully how they are written in the special writing system.<br><br>(1) naa (2) nǎa (3) laa (4) hâa (5) khâa<br>(6) mǎa (7) phaa (8) maa (9) sǎa (10) thâa<br>(11) khaa (12) lǎa (13) daa (14) bâa (15) wâa<br>(16) thaa (17) nâa (18) phâa (19) hǎa (20) saa   |
| 19           | This time write the words you hear on the tape in the spaces below using the special writing system:<br><br>(1)           (2)           (3)           (4)           (5)<br>(6)           (7)           (8)           (9)           (10)<br>(11)           (12)           (13)           (14)           (15)<br>(16)           (17)           (18)           (19)           (20) |
| Answers:     | (1) phâa (2) maa (3) thǎa (4) bâa (5) khâa<br>(6) fǎa (7) haa (8) phǎa (9) nâa (10) thaa<br>(11) khǎa (12) laa (13) hǎa (14) nâa (15) phaa<br>(16) saa (17) thǎa (18) khaa (19) hâa (20) mǎa  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Part II Section 2, Frames 1-10 are on Tape only.

| <u>Frame</u> | <u>Content</u>  |
|--------------|---|
| 11           | The symbol / ' / above the vowel is used to indicate High pitch contour. Put the correct tone marker above the vowel in the words below:<br>(1) chaan (2) maà (3) laan (4) khaa |

Answers: (1) cháan (2) máa (3) láan (4) kháa

Part II, Section 2, Frames 12-20 are on Tape only.

|    |  |
|----|--|
| 21 | Indicate the pitch contour of the following words by writing / ^ / for high falling pitch; / ' / for High; and nothing for mid level.<br>(1) khaan (2) khaan (3) khaan (4) khaan (5) khaan |
|----|--|

Answer: (1) khâan (2) kháan (3) khaan (4) khâan (5) kháan

|    |  |
|----|--|
| 22 | Listen to these words and transcribe them below:<br>(1) (2) (3) (4) (5)<br>(6) (7) (8) |
|----|--|

Answers: (1) kháan (2) khâan (3) khaan (4) kháan  
(5) khâan (6) khaan (7) kháan (8) khâan

|    |  |
|----|--|
| 23 | Read the following words and listen to the tape for pronunciation check:<br>(1) kháan (2) khaan (3) khâan (4) khaan<br>(5) khâan (6) kháan (7) kháan (8) khâan |
|----|--|

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Part II, Section 2 Drills, Frames 1-9 are on Tape only.

### Frame

### Content

10 Read the following words:  
(1) kháa (2) nâan (3) phâat (4) máa  
(5) wâa (6) thâa (7) kháan (8) mâak

11 Write the words you hear below:  
(1) (2) (3) (4)  
(5) (6) (7) (8)

Answers: (1) phâa (2) náam (3) máa (4) thâa  
(5) láa (6) náa (7) mâak (8) kháan

Part II, Section 3, Frames 1-5 are on Tape only.

6 This word is written as follows phít

7 Write this word: \_\_\_\_\_

Answer: phít

8 This word is written phít  
What is the pitch contour on this word?

9 Do these two words sound the same?

10 Do these two words sound the same?

11 True or false? The symbol / ` / is used to indicate low pitch contour.

Answer: True



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- | <u>Frame</u> | <u>Content</u>  |
|--------------|---|
| 12           | The symbol / ' / is used to indicate <u>high falling</u> pitch contour. True or false?                  |
| Answer:      | True  |
| 13           | /ph/ is used to transcribe a sound that is like the 'p' in the English word <u>pit</u> . True or false? |
| Answer:      | True  |

Frames 14-17 are on Tape only.

- 18 This word is written khâat  
19 This word is written khàat  
20 Transcribe this word: \_\_\_\_\_

Answer: khâat

- 21 Transcribe this word: \_\_\_\_\_

Answer. khàat

- 22 Pronounce these words after the tape.  
(1) phít (2) khâat (3) khàat (4) phít (5) khàat  
(6) phít (7) phít (8) khâat (9) phít (10) khàat
- 23 Read these words. Check your responses with the tape.  
(1) phít (2) khâat (3) khàat (4) phít (5) khàat  
(6) phít (7) phít (8) khâat (9) phít (10) khàat

Part II, Section 3, Frames 24-30 are on Tape only.

- 31 Read the words below:  
(1) phàa (2) mǎa (3) thàan (4) thǎam  
(5) thàan (6) khǎan (7) nǎam (8) nǎa

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

| <u>Frame</u> | <u>Content</u>   |
|--------------|--|
| 32           | Write the words you hear in the space below:<br><br>(1)            (2)            (3)            (4)<br><br>(5)            (6)            (7)            (8) |

Answers: (1) phàan (2) mǎa (3) phàa (4) khǎan  
(5) nǎa (6) phàat (7) thǎa (8) thàaŋ

Part III, Section 1, Frames 1-23 are on Tape only.

24 In the special phonetic alphabet used in the Thai Basic Course, aspirated t is written th (The h stands for aspiration).

25 How would you write this word in the special alphabet?

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer: thaa

Frames 26-36 are on the Tape only.

37 The word meaning 'eye' is written taa in the special phonetic alphabet.

38 Write these words in a phonetic transcription as you hear them.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ 2. \_\_\_\_\_ 3. \_\_\_\_\_ 4. \_\_\_\_\_  
5. \_\_\_\_\_ 6. \_\_\_\_\_ 7. \_\_\_\_\_ 8. \_\_\_\_\_

Answers: 1. taa 2. thaa 3. thaa 4. taa  
5. taa 6. thaa 7. taa 8. thaa

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Part III, Section 1 Drill, Frames 1-10 are on Tape only.

Frame

Content

- 11 Listen to the following words as they are pronounced on the tape:
- (1) thaa (2) taa (3) tûu (4) thûu  
(5) tii (6) thii (7) taa (8) thaa  
(9) taan (10) thaan (11) tii (12) thii  
(13) thaa (14) tii (15) tûu (16) thûu  
(17) thaan (18) tii

- 12 Listen to a series of Thai words. If a word begins with an aspirated t, write th in the space beside its number; if it begins with an unaspirated t, write t after its number.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ 2. \_\_\_\_\_ 3. \_\_\_\_\_ 4. \_\_\_\_\_  
5. \_\_\_\_\_ 6. \_\_\_\_\_ 7. \_\_\_\_\_ 8. \_\_\_\_\_  
9. \_\_\_\_\_ 10. \_\_\_\_\_

- Answers: 1. t 2. th 3. t 4. th 5. t  
6. th 7. th 8. th 9. t 10. t

- 13 Transcribe the words you hear in the spaces below:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ 2. \_\_\_\_\_ 3. \_\_\_\_\_ 4. \_\_\_\_\_  
5. \_\_\_\_\_ 6. \_\_\_\_\_ 7. \_\_\_\_\_ 8. \_\_\_\_\_  
9. \_\_\_\_\_ 10. \_\_\_\_\_ 11. \_\_\_\_\_ 12. \_\_\_\_\_  
13. \_\_\_\_\_ 14. \_\_\_\_\_ 15. \_\_\_\_\_ 16. \_\_\_\_\_

- Answers: 1. taa 2. thaan 3. taan 4. thaa 5. thaang  
6. thii 7. too 8. tii 9. thoo 10. taa  
11. tii 12. thaang 13. thaa 14. taan 15. thaan  
16. taa

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Part III, Section 2, Frames 1-4 are on Tape only.

| <u>Frame</u> | <u>Content</u>  |
|--------------|---|
| 5            | It begins with an <u>unaspirated t</u> (it doesn't have a puff of air after it) and it is written <u>tii</u> in the special alphabet. |

Frames 6-8 are on Tape only.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| 9 | It begins with <u>d</u> and is written <u>dii</u> |
|---|---|

Frames 10-14 are on Tape only.

15 Identify the following words by writing d, t, or th in the blank by their numbers, after you hear them on tape.

|     |     |     |     |      |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|
| (1) | (2) | (3) | (4) | (5)  |
| (6) | (7) | (8) | (9) | (10) |

Answers: 1. d    2. th    3. th    4. t    5. d  
6. th    7. d    8. t    9. th    10. d

Part III, Section 3, Frame 1-5 are on Tape only.

6 This word is written phaa.  
The 'h' after the 'p' shows that the 'p' is aspirated.

7 Does this word begin with an 'aspirated p'?

8 How would you write this word?: \_\_\_\_\_

Answer: phaa

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Frames 9-18 are on Tape only.

19 The word meaning 'father's elder sister' is written pâa in the special writing system used in the text. Listen to it.

20 The word meaning 'cloth' is written phâa

21 You will now hear several repetitions of these two words. As you hear each one, write it in transcription in the space below:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ 2. \_\_\_\_\_ 3. \_\_\_\_\_ 4. \_\_\_\_\_  
5. \_\_\_\_\_ 6. \_\_\_\_\_ 7. \_\_\_\_\_ 8. \_\_\_\_\_

Answers: (1) pâa (2) pâa (3) phâa (4) pâa  
(5) phâa (6) phâa (7) pâa (8) phâa

Part III, Section 3 Drill, Frames 1-10 are on Tape only.

11 Listen to a series of Thai words. If a word begins with an aspirated p, write ph in the space beside its number; if it begins with an unaspirated p, write p after its number.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ 2. \_\_\_\_\_ 3. \_\_\_\_\_ 4. \_\_\_\_\_ 5. \_\_\_\_\_  
6. \_\_\_\_\_ 7. \_\_\_\_\_ 8. \_\_\_\_\_ 9. \_\_\_\_\_ 10. \_\_\_\_\_

Answers: 1. p 2. ph 3. ph 4. ph 5. p 6. ph 7. p  
8. p 9. ph 10. p

12 Listen to the following words as they are pronounced on the tape:

1. pâaj 2. phûu 3. pàa 4. pâa 5. pàa  
6. pûu 7. phaan 8. phàa 9. phâa 10. phàn  
11. paan 12. phâa 13. phaan 14. pîi 15. phǎi

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### Frame

### Content

13 Write the words you hear in the phonetic transcription in the spaces below:

- |           |           |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____  | 2. _____  | 3. _____  | 4. _____  |
| 5. _____  | 6. _____  | 7. _____  | 8. _____  |
| 9. _____  | 10. _____ | 11. _____ | 12. _____ |
| 13. _____ | 14. _____ | 15. _____ |           |

Answers: 1. phaa 2. p<sup>h</sup>aa 3. ph<sup>h</sup>aa 4. paan 5. phaan  
6. p<sup>h</sup>aa 7. ph<sup>h</sup>aa 8. ph<sup>h</sup>aa 9. p<sup>h</sup>aa 10. p<sup>h</sup>aa  
11. ph<sup>h</sup>aa 12. p<sup>h</sup>aa 13. ph<sup>h</sup>aa 14. p<sup>h</sup>aa 15. phaa

Part III, Section 4, Frames 1-8 are on Tape only.

9 Read the following words and check your readings with the tape.

(1) p<sup>h</sup>aa (2) b<sup>h</sup>aa (3) p<sup>h</sup>aa (4) b<sup>h</sup>aa (5) p<sup>h</sup>aa

10 A pair of words will be spoken, if they sound the same, say 'Same'; if different, say 'Different'.

11 Look at the following words as they are read on the tape. Notice in particular the tone marks above the vowels;

(1) p<sup>h</sup>it (2) ba<sup>h</sup>j (3) b<sup>h</sup>aan (4) p<sup>h</sup>aa<sup>h</sup>k (5) p<sup>h</sup>aa<sup>h</sup>n  
(6) p<sup>h</sup>aa (7) ba<sup>h</sup>aa (8) ba<sup>h</sup>aa<sup>h</sup>n (9) p<sup>h</sup>aa (10) b<sup>h</sup>it  
(11) paa

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### Frame

### Content

12 Write the words you hear on the tape in the spaces below:

(1)            (2)            (3)            (4)            (5)  
(6)            (7)            (8)            (9)            (10)

Answers: 1. p̄aa 2. b̄aa 3. p̄aa 4. b̄aa 5. paa  
6. b̄aan 7. paan 8. b̄aan 9. p̄aat 10. p̄aak

Note: If you didn't get most of them right including the correct tone mark, use a clean piece of paper and repeat the drill, as well as frame 11 above.

Part III, Section 4 Drill, Frames 1 and 2 are on Tape only.

3 Read the words below. Check with the tape for pronunciation.

(1) baan (2) p̄et (3) b̄aat (4) ph̄uu  
(5) ph̄ăn (6) b̄aa (7) pii (8) ph̄aa  
(9) paan (10) baan (11) b̄aan (12) ph̄at  
(13) p̄aa (14) plaa (15) p̄aaj

4 Write the words you hear in transcription below:

(1)            (2)            (3)            (4)  
(5)            (6)            (7)            (8)  
(9)            (10)

Answers: (1) paa (2) ph̄aa (3) baan (4) p̄aa (5) pen  
(6) phaa (7) b̄aa (8) ph̄aan (9) ph̄it (10) plaa

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Part III, Section 5, Frames 1-7 are on Tape only.

### Frame

### Content

8 In transcription aspirated k is written kh. The 'h' stands for the air stream. Write the symbol for the initial sound in these words:

(1) (2) (3) (4)

Answer: To all 4: kh

Frames 9-12 are on Tape only.

13 Unaspirated k is written 'k'. In the spaces below write the symbol for the initial consonant sound in these words:

(1) (2) (3) (4)

Answer: In each case is k.

Frames 14-17 are on Tape only.

18 Listen to these words. If a word begins with aspirated k, write kh opposite its number; if unaspirated k, write k.

(1) (2) (3) (4)  
(5) (6)

Answers: 1. kh, 2. k, 4. kh, 5. k, 6. kh

19 Read the words below. Check your responses with the tape:

(1) kàap (2) khìi (3) kìn (4) kaan  
(5) kàp (6) klâj (7) khâan (8) kûn  
(9) kàj (10) khàat (11) khaa (12) kâan



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### Frame

### Content

- 20 Write these words:
- |     |      |      |      |
|-----|------|------|------|
| (1) | (2)  | (3)  | (4)  |
| (5) | (6)  | (7)  | (8)  |
| (9) | (10) | (11) | (12) |
- Answers: (1) kaan (2) khaa (3) kâaŋ (4) khàp  
(5) khâaŋ (6) khǎn (7) kàj (8) kâan  
(9) khâaŋ (10) klaj (11) khàat (12) kàp

Part III, Section 6, Frames 1-9 are on Tape only.

- 10 The symbol ch is used to write the initial consonant in these words. The 'c' indicates the sound is made at the hard palate ('the ceiling of the mouth') and the 'h' indicates that there is a stream of air after the 'c'. Write the initial consonant of these words in the spaces below:
- |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| (1) | (2) | (3) | (4) |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
- The answer in each case above is ch. (Don't forget: 'c' for 'ceiling' and 'h' for aspiration.)
- 11 The initial sound in this Thai word is also made with the tongue on the hard palate (i.e. 'the ceiling' of the mouth).
- 12 There is no aspiration after the initial consonant.
- 13 This sound that is made at the hard palate and is without aspiration is written 'c'. Write the initial sound of these words in the space below:
- |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| (1) | (2) | (3) | (4) |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

| <u>Frame</u>      | <u>Content</u>          |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| Answers<br>to 13: | (1) c (2) c (3) c (4) c |

Frames 14-19 are on Tape only.

20 Read the following words:

- (1) chàt (2) càk (3) caŋ (4) chan  
(5) châat (6) cuan (7) châaw (8) cèt  
(9) cèp (10) chàp (11) càak (12) càt  
(13) chaa (14) caŋ (15) cam

21 Write the following words in the spaces below:

- (1) (2) (3) (4)  
(5) (6) (7) (8)  
(9) (10) (11) (12)  
(13) (14)

Answers: (1) càak (2) cham (3) cèt (4) châat  
(5) chin (6) câm (7) com (8) còp  
(9) choŋ (10) chaan (11) còt (12) coom  
(13) caan (14) chàt

Part III, Section 7, Frames 1-3 are on Tape only.

- 4 You can hear the quality of this sound easily by saying ing several times. This sound is called a velar nasal and is written ŋ in phonetic writing. Please observe that ŋ is like n with a long bent tail on it.
- 5 The velar nasal /ŋ/ occurs finally in many English words (bring, sing, etc.) and it also occurs medially in some words (singer, etc.), but it never occurs in initial position.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

| <u>Frame</u> | <u>Content</u>   |
|--------------|--|
| 6            | This Thai word ends in a velar nasal like <u>bring</u> in English.   |
| 7            | What sound do these words end in?  |
| Answer:      | ŋ  |
| 8            | The final sound in these words would be written /ŋ/. True or false?  |
| 9            | These words end in a nasal sound also but not the velar nasal. Listen to these words. What is the final sound?                                   |
| 10           | Now you will hear some pairs of words. The first member of the pair ends in the velar nasal; the second, in <u>n</u> . Listen to the difference. |
| 11           | The velar nasal occurs at the beginning of some Thai words. Listen to these examples:  |
| 12           | Contrast these words beginning with /ŋ/ with those beginning with /n/.   |

Frame 13-16 are on Tape only.

- 17 Read the following words:
- (1) ɲaa (2) ɲaan (3) ɲaam (4) ɲan  
(5) ɲuu (6) ɲâaj (7) ɲœn (8) ɲaj
- 18 Write the following words:
- (1) (2) (3) (4)

Answers: (1) ɲaa (2) ɲaam (3) ɲâaj (4) ɲaj

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Part III, Section 8, Frames 1-4 are on Tape only.

| <u>Frame</u> | <u>Content</u>   |
|--------------|--|
| 5.           | If you said 'an old oak' (with clear separation between <u>old</u> and <u>oak</u> ), what you said would be written phonetically as follows:<br><br>æn owld ʔ owk (The symbol ʔ represents the glottal stop) |

Frames 6-9 are on Tape only.

|    |  |
|----|--|
| 10 | Being careful to put a glottal stop at the end of each syllable, pronounce the following words when you hear the number:<br><br>(1) ná (2) sǐ (3) phrá (4) há (5) mí<br><br>(Note: The glottal stop symbol is not usually written after short vowels since its occurrence is predictable.) |
|----|--|

Part III, Section 9, Frames 1-15 are on Tape only.

|    |   |
|----|---|
| 16 | Listen to these words and write the final stops (p, t, or k) in the space below:<br><br>(1) (2) (3) (4) (5)<br><br>(6) (7) (8) (9) (10) |
|----|---|

Answers: (1) p (2) t (3) k (4) p (5) k  
(6) t (7) k (8) p (9) p (10) k

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Part III, Section 10, Frames 1-4 are on Tape only.

| <u>Frame</u> | <u>Content</u>  |     |     |      |
|--------------|---|-----|-----|------|
| 5            | Write the final sound of these words in the space below (use ? for glottal stop): |     |     |      |
| (1)          | (2)   | (3) | (4) | (5)  |
| (6)          | (7)   | (8) | (9) | (10) |

Answers: 1. p 2. k 3. ? 4. t 5. ? 6. t 7. t  
8. ? 9. p 10. ?

Frames 6-9 are on Tape only.

|     |   |     |     |      |
|-----|---|-----|-----|------|
| 10  | Write the final sound of these words below: |     |     |      |
| (1) | (2)   | (3) | (4) | (5)  |
| (6) | (7)   | (8) | (9) | (10) |

Answers: 1. âa 2. t 3. k 4. âa 5. p 6. k 7. p  
8. âa 9. k 10. âa

Part IV, Section 1, Frames 1-2 are on Tape only.

- 3 The diphthong is made up of two parts:  
a as in bah plus a glide like w  
It would be written /haw/ in phonetic transcription.

Frames 4-6 are on Tape only.

- 7 The diphthong in this word could be written /aw/.  
The first part is a and the last part is a w glide.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Frames 8-10 are on Tape only.

| <u>Frame</u> | <u>Content</u>   |
|--------------|--|
| 11           | The diphthong in this word could be written <u>aaw</u> . The first part is a long <u>a</u> and the second part is a <u>w</u> glide.                                    |
| 12           | The <u>aa</u> and the <u>w</u> glide are about equally loud but the <u>aa</u> is considerably longer than the <u>w</u> glide. This is called a <u>long diphthong</u> . |

Frames 13-18 are on Tape only.

19 Read the following words:  
(1) khâw (2) chaaw (3) mâw (4) plàaw  
(5) sǎaw (6) câw (7) kâw (8) cháaw

20 Write these words in the space below:  
(1) (2) (3) (4)  
(5) (6) (7) (8)

Answers: (1) khǎaw (2) sâw (3) cháaw (4) lâw  
(5) nǎaw (6) khâaw (7) raw (8) khâw

Part IV, Section 2.

- 1 This word ends in a diphthong.
- 2 The diphthong in this word is written /aj/ which means that it begins with an ah sound and ends with an 'ee' glide.
- 3 The ah sound and the ee glide are about equally loud, but the ee glide is longer.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Frames 4-9 are on Tape only.

| <u>Frame</u> | <u>Content</u>  |
|--------------|---|
| 10           | The long diphthong in these words is written <u>aa</u> .<br>Write the words you hear below:<br><br>(1)            (2)            (3)            (4)<br><br>(5)            (6) |

Answers: 1. chaa*j* 2. daa*j* 3. naa*j* 4. tha*a**j* 5. kh*h*a*a**j*  
6. ba*a**j*

Frames 11-13 are on Tape only.

|    |   |
|----|---|
| 14 | Read the words below and check your responses<br>with the tape:<br><br>(1) pa <i>j</i> (2) d <i>h</i> a <i>j</i> (3) cha <i>a</i> <i>j</i> (4) h <i>h</i> a <i>j</i><br>(5) ba <i>a</i> <i>j</i> (6) tha <i>j</i> |
| 15 | Write the words you hear below:<br><br>(1)            (2)            (3)            (4)<br><br>(5)            (6)            (7)            (8)<br><br>(9)            (10)  |

Answers: 1. na*j* 2. d*h*a*j* 3. cha*a**j* 4. klaa*a**j* 5. h*h*a*j*  
6. kh*h*a*a**j* 7. ja*j* 8. tha*j* 9. kl*h*a*j* 10. ba*a**j*

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Part IV, Section 3, Frames 1-14 are on Tape only.

| <u>Frame</u> | <u>Content</u>  |
|--------------|---|
| 15           | Read the following words:<br>(1) càak (2) chán (3) faŋ (4) sǎam (5) ráan<br>(6) khan (7) thaan (8) lǎŋ (9) phâak (10) wan |
| 16           | Write the following words:<br>(1) (2) (3) (4) (5)<br>(6) (7) (8) (9) (10)   |

Answers: 1. wǎŋ 2. khâaŋ 3. tàaŋ 4. phan 5. láan  
6. ɲaan 7. tham 8. dâam 9. thaaŋ 10. caŋ

Part V, Section 1, Frames 1-13 are on Tape only.

Part V, Section 2, Frames 1-8 are on Tape only.

- 9 A syllable in Thai has 4 parts to it: an initial consonant, a vocalism, an optional final consonant and a pitch contour. Here are examples of each of the types of syllables:
- |   |         |
|---|---------|
| (a) Consonant plus long vowel             | (phaa)  |
| (b) Consonant plus long vowel plus nasal  | (phàan) |
| (c) Consonant plus long vowel plus glide  | (fàaj)  |
| (d) Consonant plus long vowel plus stop   | (khàat) |
| (e) Consonant plus short vowel plus nasal | (phan)  |
| (f) Consonant plus short vowel plus glide | (paj)   |
| (g) Consonant plus short vowel plus stop  | (kàt)   |

Frames 10-14 are on Tape only.

This is the end of The Programmed  
Introduction to Thai Phonology.



# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## REFERENCE CHART OF SPECIAL SYMBOLS USED IN THAI BASIC COURSE

When Thais write Thai they use the regular writing system, which is a rather complex system based on Sanscrit. After you have been studying the spoken language for 6 to 8 weeks, you will begin to learn to read in this system. Since it is fairly difficult to learn regular Thai orthography, it is considered inadvisable to require you to learn it in addition to learning the spoken language at the beginning; therefore, a special system of transcription is used throughout the first volume of the Thai Basic Course. In this system regular Roman letters plus a few phonetic symbols are used. The system is completely regular, and you will learn to read it rather quickly. In fact, if you have already finished the Programmed Introduction, you may already know most of it. Please keep in mind that no writing system reflects accurately and precisely the sound system of a language, so rely on your ears and not on any written symbols (including the regular Thai orthography) for the pronunciation of Thai words and sentences.

It will help you understand the summary of the transcription system that follows, if you are aware of 3 conventions that are used in it: (1) Vowel length is indicated by a doubling of the vowel symbol, (2) An 'h' after an initial consonant indicates that the consonant is 'aspirated', and (3) Pitch contours are indicated by placing certain kinds of symbols above vowels; thus phâa refers to an 'aspirated p', followed by 'long a', which has a 'high falling' pitch contour.

### REFERENCE CHART

| <u>Symbol</u> | <u>Usual English Letter</u> | <u>Approximate Pronunciation</u>                            |
|---------------|-----------------------------|---|
| b             | b                           | similar to English <u>b</u> in <u>Samba</u> .               |
| p             | p (after <u>s</u> )         | like the <u>p</u> in <u>spy</u><br>(no puff of air after p) |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

| <u>Symbol</u> | <u>Usual English<br/>Letter</u> | <u>Approximate Pronunciation</u>   |
|---------------|---------------------------------|--|
| ph            | p                               | like the <u>p</u> in <u>pie</u><br>(puff of air after p)                       |
| d             | d                               | similar to English <u>d</u> in <u>Sunday</u>                                   |
| t             | t (after <u>s</u> )             | like the <u>t</u> in <u>sty</u><br>(no puff of air after <u>t</u> )            |
| th            | t                               | like the <u>t</u> in <u>tie</u><br>(puff of air after <u>t</u> )               |
| k             | k (after <u>s</u> )             | like the <u>k</u> in <u>ski</u>  |
| kh            | k                               | like the <u>k</u> in <u>Korea</u>  |
| c             | ..                              | between English <u>jet</u> and <u>Chet</u>                                     |
| ch            | ch                              | between <u>ch</u> in <u>cheat</u> and <u>sh</u><br>in <u>sheet</u>             |
| r             | r                               | <u>r</u> as in <u>red</u> may be used<br>(rarely occurs in Bangkok<br>dialect) |
| l             | l                               | <u>l</u> as in <u>long</u>   |
| m             | m                               | <u>m</u> as in <u>me</u>   |
| h             | h                               | <u>h</u> as in <u>hen</u>  |
| f             | f                               | <u>f</u> as in <u>fun</u>  |
| s             | s                               | <u>s</u> as in <u>see</u>  |
| n             | n                               | <u>n</u> as <u>need</u>  |
| ŋ             | -ng (only final)                | like <u>-ng</u> in <u>sing</u>   |
| w             | w                               | <u>w</u> as in <u>we</u>   |
| j             | y                               | <u>y</u> as in <u>yet</u>  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

| <u>Symbol</u> | <u>Usual English Letter</u> | <u>Approximate Pronunciation</u>   |
|---------------|-----------------------------|--|
| i             | i                           | <u>i</u> in <u>sip</u>   |
| ii            | ee, ea                      | <u>ee</u> as in <u>see</u>   |
| e             | e                           | <u>e</u> as in <u>pet</u>  |
| ee            | a, ay                       | <u>a</u> as in <u>made</u>   |
| ɛ             | a                           | <u>a</u> as in <u>and</u>  |
| ɛɛ            | a                           | <u>a</u> as in <u>fan</u>  |
| y             | ..                          | <u>u</u> in <u>sugar</u> is somewhat similar                                       |
| yy            | ..                          | ....   |
| ə             | ..                          | somewhat similar to <u>-er</u> in <u>baker</u> but shorter and without 'r' quality |
| əə            | ..                          | similar to <u>ə</u> but longer. British pronunciation of <u>sir</u>                |
| a             | u                           | somewhat similar to <u>u</u> in <u>fun</u>   |
| aa            | a                           | <u>a</u> as in <u>father</u>   |
| u             | oo                          | <u>oo</u> as in <u>look</u>  |
| uu            | ou                          | <u>ou</u> as in <u>you</u>   |
| o             | o                           | <u>o</u> as in <u>cone</u> but shorter   |
| oo            | o                           | <u>o</u> as in <u>so</u>   |
| o             | ..                          | ....   |
| oo            | aw                          | <u>aw</u> as in <u>law</u>   |
| iw            | ..                          | ....   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

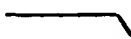








| <u>Symbol</u> | <u>Usual English Letter</u> | <u>Approximate Pronunciation</u>                |
|---------------|-----------------------------|---|
| ew            | ..                          | ..  |
| eew           | ..                          | ..  |
| ɛw            | ..                          | ..  |
| aw            | ow                          | <u>ow</u> as in <u>cow</u>                      |
| aaw           | ow                          | <u>ow</u> as in <u>cow</u> (longer than aw)     |
| uj.           | ..                          | ..  |
| ooj           | ..                          | ..  |
| oj            | oy                          | <u>oy</u> as in <u>toy</u>                      |
| ooj           | oy                          | <u>oy</u> as in <u>toy</u> (longer than oj)     |
| aj            | y, i                        | <u>y</u> as in <u>my</u>                        |
| aaj           | y, i                        | <u>y</u> as in <u>my</u> (longer than aj)       |
| ia            | ee, ie, e                   | <u>ee</u> as in <u>beer</u> (without <u>r</u> ) |
| ya            | ..                          | ..  |
| ua            | oo                          | <u>oo</u> as in <u>poor</u> (without <u>r</u> ) |
| iaw           | eo                          | <u>eo</u> as in <u>Leo</u>                      |
| yaj           | ..                          | ..  |

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## THAI TONE CHART

The shapes, names and symbols used for five significant pitch contours in Thai are given below:

|                         |   |   |   |  |   |
|-------------------------|---|---|---|--|---|
| Written Examples:       | khaa  | khàa  | khâa  | kháa   | khǎa  |
| Approximate Pitch Range |  |    |    |    |    |
| Name of Contour         | Mid Level   | Low   | High Falling  | High   | Low Rising  |
| Symbol                  | No Mark   |  |  |  |  |

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON ONE

### 1.0 BASIC DIALOG: Greeting Someone

- A. sawàtdii khráp                      Hello.  
    khun sabaajdií rý khráp            How are you?
- B. phǒm sabaajdií khráp                I'm fine.  
    khòopkhun                              Thank you.  
    léew khun la khráp                    And you?
- A. phǒm sabaajdií khráp                I'm fine.

### 1.1 NOTE ON THE DIALOG

sawàtdii is a very common salute in Thailand. It may be used for greeting someone or for leavetaking. It is usually accompanied by a 'wai' (wâj).

The 'wai' is illustrated in the picture below. The height of the hands in the 'wai' is in inverse ratio to the age and social position of the participants. In the picture below the woman is older and is of equal or higher social status than the man.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) phǒm, dichǎn, khun, and khǎw are pronouns in Thai.

phǒm means 'I' and is used by males only.

dichán or dihán (or in formal usage dichǎn) means 'I' and is used only by females.

khun is a polite form for 'you'.

kháw (in slow distinct speech khǎw) means 'he, she, or they'.

- b) sabaajdi 'to be well, to be in good health' is a verb. The verb in Thai does not undergo changes in form, hence sabaajdi might be translated 'am, is, are fine' according to its subject.

- c) The subject precedes the verb in Thai, hence the sentence phǒm sabaajdi is the most common type of statement.

- d) Statements may be changed into questions by adding a question word at the end.

Statement: khun sabaajdi 'You are well.'

Question: khun sabaajdi rǎy 'Are you well?'

- e) rǎy is a question word that is used to ask for verification. It may occur after words, phrases, or sentences. It is usually unstressed and may be pronounced in any of the following ways:

When sentence final: lǎy, lǎə, rǎy, rǎə, ǎə

Before kháp (khá): rý, lý, lé, ré, é, ý

- f) kháp (or khá) is a particle used as the final element of statements or questions. It indicates that the speaker is male. It is often pronounced há? in rapid speech.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- g) khâ is a particle used as the final element of a statement. It indicates that the speaker is female. It may be pronounced hâ in rapid speech.
- h) khá is similar in usage to khâ except that it is used at the end of a question. In rapid speech há may be used instead of khá.
- i) The omission of the polite particles kháp, khâ, and khá may result in rather abrupt-sounding or impolite speech; it is, therefore, advisable to put one in at least once in each utterance.
- j) lěsw 'and' is used to connect sentences.
- k) lěsw (khun, kháw, etc.) la (kháp, khá) is a kind of echo type question; that is, it forms a question which is based on the previous statement.

Statement:        phǒm sabaajdii        'I'm fine.'  
Echo question: lěsw khun la kháp    'And how are you?'

### 1.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Expansion Drill

|                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| sabaaj                | (am) fine           |
| sabaaj dii            | (am) fine           |
| phǒm sabaaj dii       | I (male) am fine.   |
| phǒm sabaaj dii kháp  | I (male) am fine.   |
| sabaaj                | (am) fine           |
| sabaaj dii            | (am) fine           |
| dichán sabaaj dii     | I (female) am fine. |
| dichán sabaaj dii khâ | I (female) am fine. |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>  | <u>Pattern</u>              |                                 |
|-------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
|             | <u>phǒm</u> sabaajdii khráp | <u>I</u> am fine.               |
| <u>khun</u> | <u>khun</u> sabaajdii khráp | <u>You</u> are fine.            |
| <u>kháw</u> | <u>kháw</u> sabaajdii khráp | <u>He/she/they</u> is/are fine. |
| <u>khun</u> | <u>khun</u> sabaajdii khráp | <u>You</u> are fine.            |
| <u>phǒm</u> | <u>phǒm</u> sabaajdii khráp | <u>I</u> am fine.               |

Repeat the drill using dichán / khâ for phǒm / khráp

### c) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>  | <u>Pattern</u>            |                   |
|-------------|---------------------------|-------------------|
|             | léew <u>khun</u> la khráp | And <u>you</u> ?  |
| <u>kháw</u> | léew <u>kháw</u> la khráp | And he?           |
| <u>khun</u> | léew <u>khun</u> la khráp | And <u>you</u> ?  |
| <u>kháw</u> | léew <u>kháw</u> la khráp | And <u>they</u> ? |
| <u>khun</u> | léew <u>khun</u> la khráp | And <u>you</u> ?  |

### d) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>  | <u>Pattern</u>                           |
|-------------|--|
|             | phǒm sabaajdii léew <u>khun</u> la khráp |
| <u>kháw</u> | phǒm sabaajdii léew <u>kháw</u> la khráp |
| <u>khun</u> | phǒm sabaajdii léew <u>khun</u> la khráp |
| <u>kháw</u> | phǒm sabaajdii léew <u>kháw</u> la khráp |
| <u>khun</u> | phǒm sabaajdii léew <u>khun</u> la khráp |

Repeat the drill using dichán / khá for phǒm / khráp.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

e) Transformation Drill (Change into questions with rǎy)

| <u>Statement</u> | <u>Question</u>           |                |
|------------------|---------------------------|----------------|
| khun sabaajdii   | khun sabaajdii <u>rǎy</u> | Are you well?  |
| kháw sabaajdii   | kháw sabaajdii <u>rǎy</u> | Is she well?   |
| khun sabaajdii   | khun sabaajdii <u>rǎy</u> | Are you well?  |
| kháw sabaajdii   | kháw sabaajdii <u>rǎy</u> | Are they well? |

f) Dialog Variation Drill

If there are female members of the class, repeat the basic dialog using female pronouns and polite words.

### 1.4 EXERCISES

- a) Each person inquires about the health of the person next to him, to which that person replies that he is fine.
- b) The instructor asks each student how he is, and each student replies.
- c) Each student asks the instructor how he is, and the instructor responds.
- d) The instructor has student A ask student B how student C's health is, to which student B replies that it is good. (The instructor should continue this exercise until every student has asked and responded at least once.)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1.5 VOCABULARY

|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| dichăn, dichán    | I (female speaker)   |
| dii               | (to be) good   |
| khâ, hâ           | polite particle, <u>statement</u> by a female  |
| khá, há           | polite particle, <u>question</u> by a female   |
| khăw, kháw        | he, she; they (third person, singular and plural). It does <u>not</u> refer to things. |
| khòopkhun         | thank you  |
| kh ráp, há?, kháp | polite particle, used in statements and questions by males                             |
| khun              | you (singular only) polite form  |
| la                | question word  |
| lếw               | and (sentence connective)  |
| phỏm              | I (male speaker)   |
| rỷ, rý, lỷ, lý    | question word  |
| sabaajdii         | to feel well, be in good health  |
| sawàtdii          | hello (used for greeting or leavetaking)   |

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON TWO

### 2.0 BASIC DIALOG: Finding Out Someone's Name

|         |   |  |
|---------|---|--|
| Prabas: | sawàtdii khráp<br>phǒm chýy praphâat<br>khǒothôot, khun chýy<br>araj khráp.                   | Hello.<br>My name is Prabas.<br>Excuse me. What's your<br>name?      |
| John:   | phǒm chýy cǒon khráp  | My name's John.  |
| Prabas: | khǒothôot, khun chýy<br>araj nakhráp<br>karunaa phûut ìik thii,<br>dâj máj khráp              | Excuse me. What's your<br>name?<br>Could you please repeat<br>that?  |
| John:   | phǒm chýy cǒon khráp<br>khǒothôot, khun praphâat<br>naamsakun araj khráp                      | My name's John.<br>Excuse me, Mr. Prabas<br>what? (family name)      |
| Prabas: | phǒm naamsakun rákthaj<br>khráp<br>khǒothôot, khun cǒon<br>naamsakun samít, châj<br>máj khráp | My family name's Rakthai.<br>Excuse me, Mr. John<br>Smith, isn't it? |

---

NOTE: For female members of the class use Mary (mæerîi) and the appropriate pronouns and particles instead of John. If the instructor is female, malí may be used instead of praphâat with appropriate changes.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- John: mâj châj khráp                      No, it isn't.  
                 phǒm naamsakun braawn              My family name's Brown.
- Prabas: cǝon braaw rǝkhráp              John Brown, huh?
- John: khráp                                      That's right.

### 2.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) chây means 'name' or 'to be named' but refers only to the first or given name.
- b) naamsakun means 'family or last name'.
- c) khǝothǝot means 'excuse me' or 'pardon me' and is used in the same way as the English words.
- d) karunaa means 'please, kindly...' and is followed by a request form.
- e) lik thii 'again' means literally 'an additional time.'
- f) khun is a polite title that may be used with names of either sex. It is normally put before a person's given name, since that is the name that one is usually addressed by in Thailand.

khun aarii 'Miss Aree', khun thǎawcǝon 'Mr. Thaworn',  
khun nonkhraan 'Mrs. Nongkran'

khun may be placed before the family names of foreigners, thus khun braawn 'Mr. Brown'.

### 2.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) The word 'a\_j' 'what?' occupies the same position in the sentence as the word it refers to:

Question: khun chây araj                      'What's your name?'

Answer: phǒm chây cǝon                      'My name's John.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- b) When châj máj is added to a statement, it becomes a question. It is used when the speaker is seeking confirmation of something. It is very similar in usage to rýy (see 1.2e) which it can replace in many situations.

Question: khun chýy thǎawɔɔn, 'Your name's Thaworn,  
châj máj khráp isn't it?

Affirmative response:

châj khráp 'Yes, it is.'

Negative response:

mâj châj khráp 'No, it isn't.'

- c) If one wishes to disagree with a question with chýy and give additional information, it can be done in either of the following ways:

Question: khun chýy sǒmsàk, 'Your name's Somsak,  
châj máj khráp isn't it?'

Negative response 1:

mâj châj khráp 'No, it's not.'

phǒm chýy prichaa<sup>1</sup> 'My name's Pricha.'

mâj châj sǒmsàk 'It isn't Somsak.'

Negative response 2:

phǒm chýy prichaa 'My name's Pricha.'

phǒm mâj dâj chýy 'I'm not named

sǒmsàk Somsak.'

Observe that mâj châj can occur before a name (a noun) but not before chýy (a verb). mâj dâj must be used before chýy.

---

<sup>1</sup>Do not use contrastive stress as you would in English ('My name's Prichaa. It isn't Somsak.').

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- d) Questions ending with rǎy are normally answered affirmatively with khráp, which indicates that what the speaker assumed to be true is indeed true.

Question: khun chǎy praphâat-rǎykhráp 'You're named Prapas?'

Affirmative response:

khráp 'That's right.'

The usual negative response to questions with rǎy is mâj châj, thus

Question: khun chǎy priichaarǎykhráp '(You're) Pricha?'

Negative response:

mâj châj khráp 'No, I'm not.'  
(phǒm... chǎy...) I'm...

If one wishes to register strong disagreement with a rǎy question, he may respond with plàaw.

Question: khâw chǎy priichaarǎykhráp 'He's named Pricha?'

Negative response:

plàaw khráp, khâw mâj 'No, he's not named  
dâj chǎy priichaa Pricha. He's Somsak.'  
khâw chǎy sǒmsàk

### 2.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Expansion Drills

araj

araj khráp

chǎy araj khráp

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

khun chây araj khráp  
khǒothôot, khun chây araj khráp  
cǒon  
cǒon khráp  
chây cǒon khráp  
phǒm chây cǒon khráp  
  
araj  
araj khráp  
chây araj khráp  
kháw chây araj khráp  
  
dík  
dík khráp  
chây dík khráp  
kháw chây dík khráp

### b) Recognition and Familiarization Drills

1.       A: khǒothôot, khun chây araj khráp  
          John: phǒm chây cǒon khráp
2.       A: khǒothôot, khun chây araj khráp  
          Mary: díchán chây mǝrîi khâ
3.       A: khǒothôot, khun chây araj khráp  
          Bill: phǒm chây bin khráp
4.       A: khǒothôot, khun chây araj khráp  
          George: phǒm chây cǒon khráp
5.       A: khǒothôot, khun chây araj khráp  
          Dick: phǒm chây dík khráp

---

<sup>1</sup>Whenever masculine pronouns and polite forms occur, the instructor may replace them with the equivalent feminine forms. To save space generally only the masculine forms will be given.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

c) Response Drill

The teacher asks the question khun chây araj (What's your name?) and each student responds with phǒm chây \_\_\_\_ --- (My name is \_\_\_\_.) giving his correct name.

d) Response Drill

The teacher has each student address the following question to him: khun chây araj and the teacher responds with his correct name.

e) Response Drill

Teacher asks each student the following question: khǎo-thoot, khun chây araj and each student responds with his correct name. phǒm chây \_\_\_\_\_.

f) Response Drill

Pairs of students take turns asking and answering the question: khǎothôot khun chây araj

g) Response Drill

Each student asks another student his name using an incorrect name, to which the student responds by giving his correct name.

h) Response Drill

The following question is to be asked using the real names of the students:

Question: khun chây (X), châj máj khráp?

Answer: châj khráp, phǒm chây (X)

i) Response Drill

Question: khun chây (X), châj máj khráp

Answer: mâj châj khráp, phǒm chây (Y)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### j) Response Drill

The question following may be used with the correct or incorrect name of the student addressed. The answer given will depend on the question.

Question: khun chây (X), chây máj khráp

Answer: máj chây khráp, phỏm chây (Y)  
chây khráp, phỏm chây (X).

Drills h, i, and j, may be repeated with khỏỏthỏỏt preceding each question if desired.

### k) Response Drill

The teacher has each student address to him the question khun chây (X), chây máj using an incorrect name to which he gives the following response:

|                |                   |
|----------------|-------------------|
| máj chây khráp | That's not right, |
| phỏm chây (Y)  | my name is Y.     |
| máj chây (X)   | It isn't X.       |

or

|                       |                  |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| phỏm chây (Y)         | My name is Y.    |
| phỏm máj dâj chây (X) | My name isn't X. |

### l) Transformation Drill (Use actual names of students.)

Student 1

Student 2

|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| phỏm chây <u>cỏỏn</u>     | sawàtdii khráp, khun <u>cỏỏn</u>           |
| dichán chây <u>mẻẻrfi</u> | sawàtdii khráp, khun <u>mẻẻrfi</u>         |
|                           | <u>or</u> sawàtdii khâ, khun <u>mẻẻrfi</u> |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### m) Substitution Drill

Have the students (in pairs) participate in short dialogs like the model below using their actual names:

S-1: khun ch̄ȳ araj khráp                      What's your name?

S-2: phǒm ch̄ȳ cɔɔn                              My name's John.

S-1: cɔɔn rěkhráp                              It's John, is it?

m̄aj ch̄aj cǔɔc rěkhráp                      It isn't George?

S-2: m̄aj ch̄aj khráp                              No, it isn't.

### n) Expansion Drill

nakhráp    (Question)

araj nakhráp                                      What?

ch̄ȳ araj nakhráp                              What is your name?

nakhráp    (Question)

araj nakhráp                                      What?

naamsakun araj nakhráp                      What's your family name?

nakhráp    (Question)

araj nakhráp                                      What?

w̄aa araj nakhráp                              ...

ph̄ut w̄aa araj nakhráp                      What did (you) say?

khun ph̄ut w̄aa araj nakhráp                What did you say?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

o) Progressive Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>                     | <u>Pattern</u>  |
|--------------------------------|---|
|                                | <u>khun</u> chÿy araj nakhráp                         |
| <u>kháw</u>                    | <u>kháw</u> chÿy araj nakhráp                         |
| <u>naamsakun</u>               | <u>kháw</u> <u>naamsakun</u> araj nakhráp             |
| <u>khǎothôot</u> , <u>khun</u> | <u>khǎothôot</u> , <u>khun</u> naamsakun araj nakhráp |
| <u>chÿy</u>                    | <u>khun</u> <u>chÿy</u> araj nakhráp                  |
| <u>kháw</u>                    | <u>kháw</u> chÿy araj nakhráp                         |
| <u>naamsakun</u>               | <u>kháw</u> <u>naamsakun</u> araj nakhráp             |
| <u>khǎothôot</u> , <u>khun</u> | <u>khǎothôot</u> , <u>khun</u> naamsakun araj nakhráp |
| <u>chÿy</u>                    | <u>khun</u> <u>chÿy</u> araj nakhráp                  |

p) Transformation Drill (Asking for repetitions)

MODEL: Instructor: phǎm chÿy praphâat khráp

Student: khǎothôot, khun chÿy araj nakhráp

karunaa phûut ìik thi, dâj máj khráp

Instructor: phǎm chÿy praphâat khráp

Cue: 1. kháw chÿy prichaa.

2. dichán naamsakun kamphuu

3. kháw naamsakun rákthaj

4. phǎm chÿy sǎmsàk

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### q) Response Drill

Affirmative: Instructor:

brawn rěkháp

It's Brown, is it?

Yes.

Student:

khráp

Yes (It is).

Negative: Instructor:

brawn rěkháp

It's Brown, is it?

No.

Student:

mâj châj khráp

No (It isn't).

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Question</u>        | <u>Response</u> |
|------------|------------------------|-----------------|
| yes        | chÿy coon rěkháp       | khráp           |
| no         | khun thăawoon rěkháp   | mâj châj khráp  |
| yes        | kháw ǎə khráp          | khráp           |
| no         | samít ǎə khráp         | mâj châj khráp  |
| yes        | naamsakun samít rěkháp | khráp           |

### 2.4 EXERCISES (Students are to take the roles below:)

- a) Mr. Jones meets Mr. Smith on the street. They greet each other and inquire about each other's health.
- b) Mr. Wichai meets Miss Nongkhraan and says, 'Excuse me. Isn't your name Absorn'. Miss Nongkhraan says that is not correct but that her correct name is Nongkhraan.
- c) Mr. Prichaa sees Mr. Wichai and says, 'Hello, Mr. Somsak.' Mr. Wichai says, 'Excuse me.' My name is not Somsak. It's Wichai'.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- d) Mr. Smith meets a Thai at the Embassy and says, 'Excuse me. What is your name?' The man says, 'My name is Prichaa. What's yours?' Smith gives his name.
- e) Miss Nongkhraan accidentally bumps Mr. Wichai and asks his pardon.

The teacher asks the students to bring in pictures of well-known persons. In class the students ask each other the names of the persons pictured, sometimes intentionally using the incorrect name.

### 2.5 VOCABULARY

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| araj      | what (question word)  |
| lik       | in addition, more   |
| lik thii  | again, one more time  |
| bin       | Bill (name)   |
| braaw(n)  | Brown (name)  |
| châj      | to be so, to be it, be the one<br>(meant, intended)             |
| châj máj  | Isn't it so? Isn't it the one?                                  |
| chÿy      | name, to be named   |
| cóc       | George (name)   |
| coon      | John (name)   |
| dâj máj   | Can (you)? Could (you)?<br>Are (you) able to?                   |
| dík       | Dick (name)   |
| kamphuu   | Kambhu (Thai family name)                                       |
| karunaa   | please, kindly  |
| khǒothôot | excuse me   |
| khun      | Mr, Mrs., Miss (a polite title)                                 |
| malí      | Malee (Thai girl's name)  |
| mâj châj  | It is not so. It is not the one<br>(meant). (Negative response) |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| mǎj, máj  | question word   |
| mæɛr̄fi   | Mary (name)   |
| na, ná    | particle used to make the question sound less abrupt  |
| naamsakun | family name   |
| phûut     | to speak, talk, say   |
| plàaw     | No (it isn't so). Particle indicating strong disagreement with the information content of the question) |
| praphâat  | Prabas (Thai male first name)   |
| prichaa   | Pricha (Thai male first name)   |
| rákthaj   | Rakthai (Thai family name)  |
| samít     | Smith (name)  |
| thǎawoon  | Thaworn (Thai male first name)  |
| thii      | instance, case, time  |
| wâa       | that (when used with verbs like <u>phûut</u> )  |

CLASSROOM EXPRESSIONS

|                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| phûut ìik thii           | Please repeat.           |
| phûut taam phǒm/dichǎn   | Please repeat after me.  |
| faŋ                      | Please listen.           |
| khun phûut phít          | You said it wrong.       |
| khun phûut thùuk léew    | You said it right.       |
| lɔɔŋ phûut ìik thii      | Try to say it.           |
| sǎaŋ khun phít           | Your tone is wrong.      |
| sǎaŋ khun thùuk          | Your tone is right.      |
| phûut phaasǎa thaj       | Please speak in Thai.    |
| jàa phûut phaasǎa aŋkrít | Don't speak English.     |
| phûut phrɔ́om kan        | Please say it in chorus  |
| tòɔp thii la khon        | Answer one at a time.    |
| phûut daŋ daŋ nòɔj       | Speak louder.            |
| pèet naŋsǎy              | Open your book.          |
| pít náŋsǎy               | Close your book.         |
| jàa duu náŋsǎy           | Don't look at your book. |



# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON THREE

### 3.0 BASIC DIALOG: Identifying Objects

|  |  |
|--|--|
| A: khun mii phěnthîi máj khráp   | Do you have a map?   |
| B: mii khráp   | I do.  |
| A: dii máj khráp   | Is it good?  |
| B: dii khráp   | It's good.   |
| A: nîi araj khráp  | What's this?   |
| B: nân rûup khráp  | That's a picture.  |
| A: rûup araj khráp   | A picture of what?   |
| B: rûup wát khráp  | A picture of a temple.   |
| A: sŭaj máj khráp  | Is it pretty?  |
| B: sŭaj khráp  | It's pretty.   |
| A: lésw nîi rîak wâa araj khráp  | And what's this called?  |
| B: rîak wâa nâatàaŋ khráp  | It's called a 'window'.  |
| A: khǒothôot, jàa pèet nâatàaŋ<br>khráp  | Excuse me. Don't open<br>the window.   |
| B: khǒothôot, khun phûut wâa<br>araj khráp<br>phǒm mâj khâwcaj<br>karunaa phûut cháa cháa nòoj,<br>dâj máj khráp | Excuse me. What did<br>you say?<br>I didn't understand.<br>Could you please speak<br>slowly. |
| A: phǒm phûut wâa jàa pèet<br>nâatàaŋ  | I said, 'Don't open<br>the window.'  |

---

NOTE: The instructor should have the objects referred to before him and should point to them when necessary.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 3.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) wát is used to refer to the Buddhist temple compound. This includes the temple and other related buildings in the compound (usually fenced in with a gate). It may be translated as 'church, etc.' when referring to places of worship for other religions.
- b) nǎaw means 'cold' when referring to the weather or a person's feeling about the weather.
- c) cháa means 'slow(ly)'. It is repeated for emphasis.
- d) nîi refers to a place near the speaker; nân away from the speaker; and nôn, still farther away from the speaker, but within view.

### 3.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) dii, sǔaj, nǎaw, and rón are called stative verbs in Thai. They can be translated as 'to be good', 'to be pretty', 'to be cold', and 'to be hot'.

- b) When the meaning is clear the subject of the sentence may be omitted, thus:

Question: mii tó máj khráp                      Do (you) have a table?

Answer: mii khráp                                      (I) do.

- c) A negative sentence is formed by repeating mâj before the main verb:

mâj mii    'don't have'

mâj dii    '(is) not good', etc.

- d) máj (in slow speech mǎj) is a question word that is used when a simple YES or NO answer is expected. The affirmative answer is a repetition of the main verb:

Question: mii nánsǔy máj khráp                      Do you have a book?

Answer: mii khráp                                      I do.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

In the negative answer mâj is repeated before the main verb:

Question: mi nánsǎy máj                    Do you have a book?  
Answer: mâj mi khráp                    (No) I don't.

- e) There is no distinction in form between the singular and plural of nouns in Thai, thus tó means 'a table' or 'tables' (in general).

However, plurality in general may be indicated by other forms in the Noun Phrase, thus:

tó dii dii                    'some good tables'

where repeating the stative verb dii serves this purpose.

- f) When jâa 'don't' is repeated before a command or request form, it is changed into a negative command or request:

pèet pratau khráp            Open the door.  
jâa pèet pratau khráp       Don't open the door.

- g) After verbs like phûut 'to say', rîak 'to be called', etc. wâa must be used.

phǒm phûut wâa jâa pèet pratau    'I said, "Don't open the door."'

- h) When nîi 'this', nân 'that', or nôn 'that one over there' is the subject, the sentence has no verb expressed.

nîi tó                    'This (is) a table.'

(Note: In rather formal usage khyy 'to be' could be used.)

- i) When Yes-No type questions are asked in the negative, rǎy is the question word used. máj can not be used.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Negative question:

roonrian mâj dii rÿy 'Isn't the school any good?'

Confirmatory response:

khráp 'No, it isn't.'

Since khráp is used to indicate that the information in the question is correct, and the information was given in the negative, it must be translated as 'No, it isn't.' plàaw as a response would indicate that the information in the question was incorrect, and it would be translated something like 'On the contrary!'. plàaw is usually followed by a sentence giving the correct information:

Negative question:

aahaan mâj dii  
rěkhráp 'The food isn't any good, huh?'

Contradictory response:

plàaw khráp, dii 'On the contrary it's good.'

### 3.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>  | <u>Pattern</u>         |                           |
|-------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
|             | <u>n</u> ân araj khráp | What's that?              |
| <u>n</u> ôn | <u>n</u> ôn araj khráp | What's that (over there)? |
| <u>n</u> îi | <u>n</u> îi araj khráp | What's this?              |
| <u>n</u> ân | <u>n</u> ân araj khráp | What's that?              |
| <u>n</u> ôn | <u>n</u> ôn araj khráp | What's that (over there)? |
| <u>n</u> îi | <u>n</u> îi araj khráp | What's this?              |
| <u>n</u> ân | <u>n</u> ân araj khráp | What's that?              |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

| <u>Question</u>                          | <u>Answer</u> |
|--|---------------|
| 1) nân araj khráp (nân) pratuu khráp     | 'door'        |
| 2) nân araj khráp (nân) nâatàaŋ khráp    | 'window'      |
| 3) nân araj khráp (nân) tó khráp         | 'table'       |
| 4) nân araj khráp (nân) náŋsŷy khráp     | 'book'        |
| 5) nân araj khráp (nân) samùt khráp      | 'notebook'    |
| 6) nân araj khráp (nân) phěenthîi khráp  | 'map'         |
| 7) nân araj khráp (nân) kradaandam khráp | 'blackboard'  |
| 8) nân araj khráp (nân) dînsǎo khráp     | 'pencil'      |
| 9) nân araj khráp (nân) pàakkaa khráp    | 'pen'         |

Note: The instructor points at the object referred to during the drill.)

### c) Response Drill

While pointing at the objects referred to in Drill b, the instructor asks questions and the students respond as in the following example:

Instructor: nîi araj khráp      Student: nân náŋsŷy khráp

### d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

| <u>Question</u>             | <u>Answer</u>    |
|-----------------------------|------------------|
| 1) nân rîak wâa araj khráp  | pratuu khráp     |
| 2) nîi rîak wâa araj khráp  | náŋsŷy khráp     |
| 3) nôon rîak wâa araj khráp | kradaandam khráp |
| 4) nîi rîak wâa araj khráp  | tó khráp         |
| 5) nân rîak wâa araj khráp  | naalikaa khráp   |
| 6) nîi rîak wâa araj khráp  | pàakkaa khráp    |
| 7) nîi rîak wâa araj khráp  | kâwîi khráp      |

Note: The instructor points at the object referred to during the drill.

e) Response Drill

While pointing at the objects in Drill d, the instructor asks questions and the students respond as in the following example:

Instructor: nân rîak wâa araj                      What's that called?  
khráp

Student: nân rîak wâa                                      That's a blackboard.  
kradaandam khráp

f) Substitution Response Drill

The instructor points at one of the objects previously named, and two students carry on an exchange like the following:

Instructor: (Pointing at the door of the classroom)

Student 1: nân rîak wâa araj khráp

Student 2: pratuu khráp

Student 1: (nân) rîak wâa pratuu rĕkhráp

Student 2: khráp

g) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

|                   |                                     |                                  |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
|                   | khun mi <u>phĕenthîi</u> máj khráp  | Do you have a <u>map</u> ?       |
| <u>nánsÿy</u>     | khun mi <u>nánsÿy</u> máj khráp     | Do you have a <u>book</u> ?      |
| <u>samùt</u>      | khun mi <u>samùt</u> máj khráp      | Do you have a <u>notebook</u> ?  |
| <u>dinsŏ</u>      | khun mi <u>dinsŏ</u> máj khráp      | Do you have a <u>pencil</u> ?    |
| <u>naalikaa</u>   | khun mi <u>naalikaa</u> máj khráp   | Do you have a <u>watch</u> ?     |
| <u>burìi</u>      | khun mi <u>burìi</u> máj khráp      | Do you have a <u>cigarette</u> ? |
| <u>ŋəən</u>       | khun mi <u>ŋəən</u> máj khráp       | Do you have <u>money</u> ?       |
| <u>nánsÿyphim</u> | khun mi <u>nánsÿyphim</u> máj khráp | Do you have a <u>newspaper</u> ? |
| <u>kradaat</u>    | khun mi <u>kradaat</u> máj khráp    | Do you have <u>paper</u> ?       |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### h) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern</u>             | <u>Response</u> |
|------------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| yes        | khun mi nánsŷy máj khráp   | mi khráp        |
| no         | khun mi kradàat máj khráp  | mâj mi khráp    |
| yes        | khun mi samùt máj khráp    | mi khráp        |
| no         | khun mi dīnsŷo máj khráp   | mâj mi khráp    |
| yes        | khun mi phěnthīi máj khráp | mi khráp        |
| no         | khun mi burīi máj khráp    | mâj mi khráp    |
| no         | khun mi rûup máj khráp     | mâj mi khráp    |

### i) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Question</u>   | <u>Response</u> |
|------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| yes        | kháw dii máj      | dii khráp       |
| no         | kháw dii máj      | mâj dii khráp   |
| yes        | roonriian dii máj | dii khráp       |
| no         | khun rŷon máj     | mâj rŷon khráp  |
| yes        | aakàat năaw máj   | năaw khráp      |
| no         | aahăan dii máj    | mâj dii khráp   |
| yes        | rûup sŷaj máj     | sŷaj khráp      |
| no         | nánsŷy dii máj    | mâj dii khráp   |

### j) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>       | <u>Pattern</u>           |                             |
|------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
|                  | phěnthīi dii máj         | Is the <u>map</u> good?     |
| <u>nánsŷy</u>    | <u>nánsŷy</u> dii máj    | Is the <u>book</u> good?    |
| <u>kháw</u>      | <u>kháw</u> dii máj      | Is <u>he</u> good?          |
| <u>roonriian</u> | <u>roonriian</u> dii máj | Is the <u>school</u> good?  |
| <u>khruu</u>     | <u>khruu</u> dii máj     | Is the <u>teacher</u> good? |
| <u>pàakkaa</u>   | <u>pàakkaa</u> dii máj   | Is the <u>pen</u> good?     |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                   |                           |                                |
|-------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <u>dinsǎo</u>     | <u>dinsǎo</u> dii máj     | Is the <u>pencil</u> good?     |
| <u>kradaandam</u> | <u>kradaandam</u> dii máj | Is the <u>blackboard</u> good? |
| <u>naalikaa</u>   | <u>naalikaa</u> dii máj   | Is the <u>watch</u> good?      |
| <u>kradaat</u>    | <u>kradaat</u> dii máj    | Is the <u>paper</u> good?      |
| <u>aahǎan</u>     | <u>aahǎan</u> dii máj     | Is the <u>food</u> good?       |

### k) Progressive Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>     | <u>Pattern</u>            |                       |
|----------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|
|                | aakàat <u>dii</u>         | The weather's good.   |
| <u>nǎaw</u>    | aakàat <u>nǎaw</u>        | The weather's cold.   |
| <u>phǒm</u>    | <u>phǒm</u> nǎaw          | I'm cold.             |
| <u>kháw</u>    | <u>kháw</u> nǎaw          | They're cold.         |
| <u>sǔaj</u>    | <u>kháw</u> <u>sǔaj</u>   | They're pretty.       |
| <u>rûup</u>    | <u>rûup</u> sǔaj          | The picture's pretty. |
| <u>pàakkaa</u> | <u>pàakkaa</u> sǔaj       | The pen's pretty.     |
| <u>dii</u>     | <u>pàakkaa</u> <u>dii</u> | The pen's good.       |
| <u>aahǎan</u>  | <u>aahǎan</u> dii         | The food's good.      |
| <u>róon</u>    | <u>aahǎan</u> <u>róon</u> | The food's hot.       |
| <u>kháw</u>    | <u>kháw</u> róon          | He's hot.             |
| <u>dii</u>     | <u>kháw</u> <u>dii</u>    | He's good.            |

### l) Transformation Drill (Change statements into questions)

| <u>Statement</u> | <u>Question</u>   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| roonriian dii    | roonriian dii máj |
| rûup sǔaj        | rûup sǔaj máj     |
| wát sǔaj         | wát sǔaj máj      |
| aakàat nǎaw      | aakàat nǎaw máj   |
| aahǎan dii       | aahǎan dii máj    |
| khun róon        | khun róon máj     |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

m) Transformation Drill (Change statements into the negative)

| <u>Statement</u> | <u>Negative</u>   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| roonriian dii    | roonriian mâj dii |
| aakàat năaw      | aakàat mâj năaw   |
| kháw róon        | kháw mâj róon     |
| aahăan dii       | aahăan mâj dii    |
| rûup sŭaj        | rûup mâj sŭaj     |
| khruu dii        | khruu mâj dii     |

n) Transformation Drill (Change from Negative Statement to Negative Question:)

| <u>Negative Statement</u> | <u>Negative Question</u> |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. roonriian mâj dii      | roonriian mâj dii rŷy    |
| 2. aakàat mâj năaw        | aakàat mâj năaw rŷy      |
| 3. kháw mâj róon          | kháw mâj róon rŷy        |
| 4. rûup mâj sŭaj          | rûup mâj sŭaj rŷy        |
| 5. khruu mâj dii          | khruu mâj dii rŷy        |

o) Transformation Drill (Change the statements into questions)

| <u>Statement</u>  | <u>Questions</u>           |
|-------------------|----------------------------|
| kháw dii          | kháw dii máj khráp         |
| kháw mâj dii      | kháw mâj dii rě khráp      |
| kháw róon         | kháw róon máj khráp        |
| aahăan mâj róon   | aahăan mâj róon rě khráp   |
| rûup mâj sŭaj     | rûup mâj sŭaj rě khráp     |
| roonriian dii     | roonriian dii máj khráp    |
| khruu dii         | khruu dii máj khráp        |
| phěenthŭi mâj dii | phěenthŭi mâj dii rě khráp |
| aahăan mâj dii    | aahăan mâj dii rě khráp    |
| kháw sŭaj         | kháw sŭaj máj khráp        |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

p) Response Drill

Students will indicate they are in agreement with the instructor's questions.

| <u>Question</u>             | <u>Response</u> |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| 1) naalikaa dii rěkhráp     | khráp (dii)     |
| 2) roonrian mâj dii rěkhráp | khráp (mâj dii) |
| 3) khun năaw rěkhráp        | khráp (năaw)    |
| 4) aahăan mâj dii rěkhráp   | khráp (mâj dii) |
| 5) rûup sŭaj rěkhráp        | khráp (sŭaj)    |

q) Response Drill

Students will indicate they are in strong disagreement with the instructor's question.

| <u>Question</u>             | <u>Response</u>        |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1) naalikaa dii rěkhráp     | plàaw khráp (mâj dii)  |
| 2) roonrian mâj dii rěkhráp | plàaw khráp (dii)      |
| 3) khun năaw rěkhráp        | plàaw khráp (mâj năaw) |
| 4) aahăan mâj dii rěkhráp   | plàaw khráp (dii)      |
| 5) rûup sŭaj rěkhráp        | plàaw khráp (mâj sŭaj) |

r) Transformation Drill (Change the sentences into Noun Phrases - Noun + Modifier).

| <u>Sentence</u>                          | BECOMES | <u>Noun Phrase</u>                    |
|--|---------|---------------------------------------|
| nánsŷy dii<br>'The book(s) is/are good.' |         | nánsŷy dii dii<br>'(some) good books' |
| 1) phěenthfi dii                         |         | phěenthfi dii dii                     |
| 2) aahăan dii                            |         | aahăan dii dii                        |
| 3) pàakkaa dii                           |         | pàakkaa dii dii                       |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 4) roonrian dii | roonrian dii dii |
| 5) rûup sǔaj    | rûup sǔaj sǔaj   |
| 6) khruu dii    | khruu dii dii    |

### s) Expansion Drill

The instructor has the students give an expanded form of the noun; for example, pàakkaa becomes pàakkaa dii dii, etc.

| <u>Cue</u>                   | <u>Expanded Form</u>                 |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| khun mii <u>pàakkaa</u> máj  | khun mii <u>pàakkaa dii dii</u> máj  |
| khun mii <u>dinsǔo</u> máj   | khun mii <u>dinsǔo dii dii</u> máj   |
| khun mii <u>khruu</u> máj    | khun mii <u>khruu dii dii</u> máj    |
| khun mii <u>roonrian</u> máj | khun mii <u>roonrian dii dii</u> máj |
| khun mii <u>phÿan</u> máj    | khun mii <u>phÿan dii dii</u> máj    |
| khun mii <u>rûup</u> máj     | khun mii <u>rûup dii dii</u> máj     |
| khun mii <u>nánsÿy</u> máj   | khun mii <u>nánsÿy dii dii</u> máj   |

### t) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>     | <u>Pattern</u> (Request Form) |                       |
|----------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
|                | pèet <u>pratuu</u> khráp      | Open the door.        |
| <u>nánsÿy</u>  | pèet <u>nánsÿy</u> khráp      | Open (your) book(s).  |
| <u>faj</u>     | pèet <u>faj</u> khráp         | Turn on the lights.   |
| <u>nâataaŋ</u> | pèet <u>nâataaŋ</u> khráp     | Open the window.      |
| <u>samùt</u>   | pèet <u>samùt</u> khráp       | Open (your) notebook. |
| <u>pratuu</u>  | pèet <u>pratuu</u> khráp      | Open the door.        |

Note to the instructor: Have the students perform some of the actions referred to above.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- u) Transformation Drill (Change the request forms into the negative.)

Request Form

pèet nâatàan khráp  
pìt faj khráp  
duu nánsǎy khráp  
duu naalikaa khráp  
pìt pratuu khráp

Negative Request Form

jàa pèet nâatàan khráp  
jàa pìt faj khráp  
jàa duu nánsǎy khráp  
jàa duu naalikaa khráp  
jàa pìt pratuu khráp

- v) Transformation Drill (Change the sentences below to others having similar meaning, egs. don't open: close.)

Pattern 1

jàa pèet nánsǎy  
jàa pèet pratuu  
pìt faj  
pìt nâatàan

Pattern 2

pìt nánsǎy  
pìt pratuu  
jàa pèet faj  
jàa pèet nâatàan

Drills t, u, and v may be repeated with karunaa 'kindly' or pròot 'please' before the affirmative and negative requestion forms. This will result in more polite forms.

- 1) jàa pìt pratuu becomes karunaa jàa pìt pratuu  
2) pèet faj becomes pròot pèet faj

The forms with karunaa, can be made even more formal and polite by adding dâj maj khráp:

- 1) pìt pratuu becomes karunaa pìt pratuu (nòoj), dâj maj khráp 'Would you be so kind as to close the door'.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### w) Response Drill

The instructor asks the question: khun phûut wâa araj khráp 'What did you say?' and gives the cue sentences. The student combines phǒm phûut wâa... 'I said' with the cue sentence.

| <u>Cue</u>          | <u>Response</u>  |
|---------------------|--|
| jàa pèet nâatàan    | phǒm phûut wâa jáa pèet nâatàan                                |
| jàa duu nán̄sǔy     | phǒm phûut wâa jáa duu nán̄sǔy                                 |
| pít nán̄sǔy         | phǒm phûut wâa pít nán̄sǔy                                     |
| phûut taam khruu    | phǒm phûut wâa phûut taam khruu<br>(phûut taam 'repeat after') |
| phûut cháacháa nõoj | phǒm phûut wâa phûut cháa cháa nõoj                            |
| phǒm nǎaw           | phǒm phûut wâa phǒm nǎaw                                       |

### 3.4 EXERCISES

- Find out from some of the other students or the instructor what the names of some of the objects in the classroom are.
- Ask some of the other students or the instructor about their possessions (i.e. what they have).
- Get an opinion (whether something is 'good' or 'beautiful') about some of the objects in the room.
- Tell another student that you are either cold, beautiful, or hot and find out if he (or she) is hot, beautiful, or cold.
- Ask another student to perform certain acts (close the door, etc.) for you. Use different kinds of request forms.
- Ask another student not to do certain things.

- g) The instructor asks a student if he has a (watch, etc.). If the student says he does have a (watch, etc.), the instructor says, 'This is your (watch, etc.), isn't it? (pointing at a watch). The student responds to the question.

### 3.5 VOCABULARY

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| aakàat     | weather, air   |
| aahǎan     | food   |
| burìi      | cigarette  |
| cháa       | slow(ly)   |
| dinsǒo     | pencil   |
| duu        | to look at   |
| faj (fáa)  | electric light, electricity                              |
| kâwfi      | chair  |
| khâwcaj    | to understand  |
| khruu      | teacher  |
| kradaandam | blackboard   |
| kradàat    | paper  |
| jàa        | don't (negative request form)                            |
| mi         | to have  |
| naalikaa   | watch, clock   |
| nâatàan    | window   |
| nǎaw       | (to be) cold   |
| nân        | that (one), there  |
| nánsǎyphim | newspaper  |
| nfi        | this (one), here   |
| nôn        | that (one) over there, over there                        |
| nòoj       | here <u>nòoj</u> is used to make the request less abrupt |
| ṅəən       | money  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|            |                             |
|------------|-----------------------------|
| pàakkaa    | pen                         |
| pèet       | to open, turn on (lights)   |
| pìt        | to close, turn off (lights) |
| phěnthîi   | map                         |
| phûut      | to say, speak               |
| phûut taam | to repeat after             |
| phÿan      | friend                      |
| pratuu     | door, gate                  |
| pròot      | please (request form)       |
| rîak wâa   | to be called                |
| roonriian  | school                      |
| rónn       | to be hot (temperature)     |
| rûup       | picture                     |
| samùt      | notebook                    |
| sǎaj       | (to be) pretty, beautiful   |
| tó         | table, desk                 |
| wát        | temple, temple compound     |

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON FOUR

### 4.0 BASIC DIALOG: Establishing Identity and Ownership of Objects.

- A: chûaj sòn nán̄sŷy lêm nán  
hâj phôm nòɔj, dâj máj khráp      Could you hand me that  
book?
- B: dâj khráp      Yes.  
nán̄sŷy lêm níi dii      This book is good.  
khǎɔŋ khraɔj khráp      Whose is it?
- A: khǎɔŋ phŷan phôm khráp      A friend of mine.
- B: phŷan khun chŷy araɔj khráp      What's your friend's name?
- A: (kháw chŷy) cɔɔn khráp      His name's John.
- B: khon nǎj chŷy cɔɔn khráp      Which person is named John?
- A: khon nóon khráp      That person over there.
- B: léɛw nân khraɔj khráp      Then who's (that) there?
- A: phûujŷŋ rý phûuchaaj khráp      The woman or the man?
- B: phûuchaaj khráp      The man.
- A: nân nákrían khráp      That's a student.
- B: khun rúucàk kháw máj khráp      Do you know him?
- A: rúucàk khráp      Yes, I do.
- B: kháw pen khraɔj khráp      Who is he?
- A: kháw pen phŷan phôm khráp      He's my friend.



4.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) The following type of construction is used to indicate the number of items when referring to concrete nouns:

| <u>Noun</u>    | + | <u>Number</u> | + | <u>Unit Classifier</u> <sup>1</sup> |                |
|----------------|---|---------------|---|-------------------------------------|----------------|
| <u>nànsǎy</u>  |   | <u>sǎɔŋ</u>   |   | <u>lêm</u>                          | 'two books'    |
| <u>nákrian</u> |   | <u>sǎɔŋ</u>   |   | <u>khon</u>                         | 'two students' |
| <u>kâwǎi</u>   |   | <u>sǎɔŋ</u>   |   | <u>tua</u>                          | 'two chairs'   |

When specifying a particular noun in a class, the following type of construction is used:

| <u>Noun</u>    | + | <u>Unit Classifier</u> | + | <u>Determiner</u> |                 |
|----------------|---|------------------------|---|-------------------|-----------------|
| <u>phýan</u>   |   | <u>khon</u>            |   | <u>nán</u>        | 'That friend'   |
| <u>samùt</u>   |   | <u>lêm</u>             |   | <u>níi</u>        | 'This notebook' |
| <u>pàakkaa</u> |   | <u>dâam</u>            |   | <u>nǎj</u>        | 'which pen?'    |

A unit classifier is one of a special class of nouns which are used in constructions to enumerate or specify concrete nouns. There are about 200 unit classifiers in Thai, and each of them is normally used with a large number of concrete nouns of very different meanings.

Since the unit classifier must be used in any situation in which you wish to indicate the number of items (of concrete nouns) or wish to specify a particular item out of a group (of concrete nouns), you will have to learn which unit classifier is used with each noun. Since there is usually no obvious connection between the classifier and its Noun, using the correct one will be a matter of having learned it.

There are a few classifiers for which noun reference is relatively predictable:

---

<sup>1</sup>For a full treatment of unit classifiers, see Noss, Richard B., Thai Reference Grammar, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 1964, pp. 104, 105.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

| <u>Unit Classifier</u> | <u>Noun Reference</u>                             |
|------------------------|---|
| <u>khon</u>            | People (professions and positions held by people) |
| <u>tua</u>             | animals, objects with arms and legs               |
| <u>phèen</u>           | flat objects                                      |
| <u>baj</u>             | containers  |
| <u>thên</u>            | sticks  |

b) After a noun has been mentioned or otherwise identified, Classifier+Determiner or Number+Classifier can replace it in sentences following immediately:

- 1) A: nîi nánsýy 2 lêm  
x  
lêm năj khǒn khun  
x
'Here are 2 books.  
Which is yours?'
- B: lêm nán kháp
'That one'.
- 2) A: mii nánsýy máj  
x  
B: mii sǒn lêm kháp  
x
'Do you have any books?'  
'I have two.'

The classifier functions like a substitute word here, but it can not occur without either a number before it or a determiner after it.

c) khǒn 'of' or 'belonging to' is used to indicate 'possession'. It occurs after the thing possessed and before the possessor. Its occurrence in the Noun Phrase is optional when the head noun (thing possessed) is present, thus:

nánsýy khǒn kháw
'his book'

or nánsǎy kháw 'his book'

but the occurrence of khǎon is obligatory when the head noun is not present, thus:

khǎon kháw 'his'

The head noun can be omitted only after it has been identified since khǎon kháw acts as a replacement for the whole Noun Phrase.

- d) khraj like araj (see 2.2a) has the same position in the sentence as the noun it refers to, thus:

Question: kháw pen khraj (lit: he is who)  
Who is he?

Answer: kháw pen phyan phǎm 'He's my friend.'

Question: khun cǎon pen khraj (lit: John is who)  
What is John?

Answer: khun cǎon pen khruu 'John's my teacher.'  
phǎm

When the main verb in the sentence is pen, khraj normally occurs in the predicate. Observe that it may be translated 'what' in some situations.

- e) The verb 'to be' is translated differently according to its subject and complement. Observe the following examples:

| <u>Subject</u> | <u>Verb</u> | <u>Complement</u> |                       |
|----------------|-------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| nǎi            | (khyy)      | phyan kháw        | 'This is his friend.' |
| khun cǎon      | pen         | khruu phǎm        | 'John is my teacher.' |
| kháw           | chǎy        | cǎon              | 'He is (named) John.' |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 4.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Response Drill

The instructor points at a student as he asks the question and gives the actual name of the student as the cue. He asks every student the question.

Questions: nân/nîi khraj khráp                      Who is that/this?  
Cue: (actual name of student  
pointed at)  
Answers: nîi/nân khun (Joe)                      This/that is (Joe).  
khráp

#### b) Response Drill

The instructor gives a cue and points at a student. One student asks and another answers questions like the following:

Instructor: khun thăawoon (pointing at a student)

Student 1: nân/nîi khun thăawoon,                      That/this is Mr.  
châj mâj khráp    Thaworn, isn't it?

Student 2: mâj châj khráp    No, it isn't.

Student 1: nân/nîi khraj khráp    Who is that/this?

Student 2: (nân/nîi) khun \_\_\_\_    (That/this is) \_\_\_\_

- |                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. khun cim    | 4. khun coon    |
| 2. khruu       | 5. khruu kháw   |
| 3. khun mæsrîi | 6. khun prasèet |

Repeat the drill using actual names of students in the class.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### c) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern</u>                |                          |
|------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
|            | <u>nánsǎy</u> khraj khráp     | Whose book (is it)?      |
| naalikaa   | <u>naalikaa</u> khraj khráp   | Whose watch (is it)?     |
| dinsǎo     | <u>dinsǎo</u> khraj khráp     | Whose pencil (is it)?    |
| rûup       | <u>rûup</u> khraj khráp       | Whose picture (is it)?   |
| kâwîi      | <u>kâwîi</u> khraj khráp      | Whose chair (is it)?     |
| pàakkaa    | <u>pàakkaa</u> khráj khráp    | Whose pen (is it)?       |
| nánsǎyphim | <u>nánsǎyphim</u> khraj khráp | Whose newspaper (is it)? |
| burîi      | <u>burîi</u> khraj khráp      | Whose cigarette (is it)? |
| nánsǎy     | <u>nánsǎy</u> khraj khráp     | Whose book (is it)?      |

### d) Response Drill

The instructor points at an object near a student and asks him whose is it. The student's response indicates the actual owner.)

MODEL: Instructor: nân/nîi nánsǎy khraj khráp  
'Whose book is that/this?'

Student: khǎoŋ phǎm/khâw/khun cim  
'Mine/his/Jim's'

- |             |               |           |
|-------------|---------------|-----------|
| 1. dinsǎo   | 4. pàakkaa    | 7. nánsǎy |
| 2. naalikaa | 5. samùt      | 8. burîi  |
| 3. rûup     | 6. nánsǎyphim | 9. kâwîi  |

This drill may be repeated one time with students repeating the thing referred to in the answer: nánsǎy khǎoŋ phǎm and one time with students repeating the thing referred to and nân / nîi: nîi nánsǎy phǎm

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Expansion Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Expansion</u>               |                         |
|------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1)         | khǎwng khraj khráp             | Whose?                  |
| nánsǎy     | nánsǎy khǎwng khraj khráp      | Whose book?             |
| nân        | nân nánsǎy khǎwng khraj khráp  | Whose book is that?     |
| 2)         | khǎwng khraj khráp             | Whose?                  |
| pàakkaa    | pàakkaa khǎwng khraj khráp     | Whose pen?              |
| nân        | nân pàakkaa khǎwng khraj khráp | Whose pen is that?      |
| 3)         | khǎwng khraj khráp             | Whose?                  |
| samùt      | samùt khǎwng khraj khráp       | Whose notebook?         |
| nîi        | nîi samùt khǎwng khraj khráp   | Whose notebook is this? |
| 4)         | khǎwng khraj khráp             | Whose?                  |
| dinsǎw     | dinsǎw khǎwng khraj khráp      | Whose pencil?           |
| nân        | nân dinsǎw khǎwng khraj khráp  | Whose pencil is that?   |

### f) Reduction Drill (Change from Pattern 1 to Pattern 2)

| <u>Pattern 1</u>            | <u>Pattern 2</u>     |                     |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| nánsǎy khǎwng khraj         | nánsǎy khraj         | Whose book?         |
| pàakkaa khǎwng khraj        | pàakkaa khraj        | Whose pen?          |
| phŷan khǎwng phǎm           | phŷan phǎm           | My friend.          |
| kâwîi khǎwng khraj          | kâwîi khraj          | Whose chair.        |
| samùt khǎwng nákrían        | samùt nákrían        | Student's notebook. |
| phanrajaa khǎwng khun cǎwng | phanrajaa khun cǎwng | Johâ's wife.        |
| khruu khǎwng raw            | khruu raw            | Our teacher.        |
| saǎmii khǎwng kháw          | saǎmii kháw          | Her husband.        |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

| <u>Question</u>        | <u>Response</u> |   |
|------------------------|-----------------|---|
| khon nǎj chÿy cɔɔn     | khon nán khráp  | Which person is named John?<br>That one.            |
| khon nǎj chÿy cim      | khon nóon khráp | Which person is named Jim?<br>The one over there.   |
| khon nǎj chÿy mɛɛrɯi   | khon nán khráp  | Which person is named Mary?<br>That one.            |
| khon nǎj pen phÿankhun | khon nóon khráp | Which person is your friend?<br>The one over there. |
| khon nǎj pen khruu     | khon nán khráp  | Which person is the teacher?<br>That one.           |
| khon nǎj pen nákrían   | khon nán khráp  | Which person is a student?<br>That one.             |

### h) Response Drill (The instructor asks the names of students.)

Instructor: khon nǎj chÿy \_\_\_\_\_ Which person is named  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (actual name) \_\_\_\_\_?

Student: khon ní/nán  
 (pointing to the student): This/that person.

### i) Expansion Drill

|                            |                      |
|----------------------------|----------------------|
| 1) nǎj                     | Which?               |
| khon nǎj                   | Which one (person)?  |
| nákrían khon nǎj           | Which student?       |
| nákrían phÿuchaaj khon nǎj | Which male student?  |
| 2) níi                     | This                 |
| khon níi                   | This one (person).   |
| phÿujǎn khon níi           | This female.         |
| nákrían phÿujǎn khon níi   | This female student. |

- |    |                                    |                                   |
|----|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 3) | nóon                               | That over there.                  |
|    | khon nóon                          | That one over there.              |
|    | khruu khon nóon                    | That teacher over there.          |
|    | khruu kh๓๓๓ khun khon nóon         | That teacher of yours over there. |
| 4) | nán                                | That.                             |
|    | khon nán                           | That one (person).                |
|    | phŷan khon nán                     | That friend.                      |
|    | phŷan kh๓๓๓ khun khon nán          | That friend of yours.             |
|    | phŷan phŷuaj໑໑ kh๓๓๓ khun khon nán | That female friend of yours.      |

j) Expansion Drill

- |    |  |  |
|----|--|--|
| 1) | khon nǎj chŷy ๘๘๘                                      | Which person is named John?                  |
|    | nákrian      nákrian khon nǎj chŷy ๘๘๘                 | Which student is named John?                 |
|    | phŷuchaaj      nákrian phŷuchaaj khon nǎj chŷy ๘๘๘     | Which male student is named John?            |
| 2) | khon nán chŷy nonjaw                                   | That person is named Nongyaw.                |
|    | phŷan ph๓๓      phŷan ph๓๓ khon nán chŷy nonjaw        | That friend of mine is named Nongyaw.        |
|    | phŷuaj໑໑      phŷan phŷuaj໑໑ ph๓๓ khon nán chŷy nonjaw | That female friend of mine is named Nongyaw. |
| 3) | nán๓໑໑ lêm nán dii                                     | That book is good.                           |
|    | kh๓๓๓ khun      nán๓໑໑ kh๓๓๓ khun lêm nán dii          | That book of yours is good.                  |



|            |  |  |
|------------|--|--|
| 4)         | khon nán sǔaj                          | That one (person) is pretty.           |
| phŷan      | phŷan khon nán sǔaj                    | That friend is pretty.                 |
| khǒɔŋ khun | phŷan khǒɔŋ khun khon nán sǔaj         | That friend of yours is pretty.        |
| phŷujǐŋ    | phŷan phŷujǐŋ khǒɔŋ khun khon nán sǔaj | That female friend of yours is pretty. |

k) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

Pattern 2

|                                      |                                   |                              |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| khon nǎj chŷy cim                    | khun cim, khon nǎj                | Which one (person) is Jim?   |
| khon nǎj chŷy praphâat               | khun praphâat, khon nǎj           | Which one is Prabas?         |
| khon nǎj chŷy prasèet                | khun prasèet, khon nǎj            | Which one is Prasert?        |
| khon nǎj chŷy nútchanan              | khun nútchanan, khon nǎj          | Which one is Nuchanan?       |
| khon nǎj pen khruu khǒɔŋ khun        | khruu khǒɔŋ khun, khon nǎj        | Which is your teacher?       |
| khon nǎj pen phanrajaa khun thǎawɔɔn | phanrajaa khun thǎawɔɔn, khon nǎj | Which one is Thaworn's wife? |
| khon nǎj pen sǎamii khun mɛɛrŋi      | sǎamii khun mɛɛrŋi, khon nǎj      | Which one is Mary's husband? |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

| <u>Question</u>           | <u>Response</u>  |   |
|---------------------------|------------------|---|
| phûujǎn rý phûuchaaj      | phûuchaaj khráp  | Woman or man? Man.                                  |
| chÿy cœn rý cim           | cim khráp        | Is (he) named John or Jim? Jim                      |
| khon nán rý khon nóon     | khon nóon khráp  | That one or the one over there? The one over there. |
| kháw pen khruu rý nákrían | nákrían khráp    | Is he teacher or a student? A student.              |
| dii rý mâj dii            | dii khráp        | (Is it) good or not? (It's) good.                   |
| sǔaj rý mâj sǔaj          | mâj sǔaj khráp   | (Is she) pretty or not? (She is) not (pretty).      |
| khǒœn khun rý khǒœn kháw  | khǒœn kháw khráp | Yours or his? His.                                  |

- m) Response Drill (Pairs of students engage in an exchange of the following kind using actual names of other students).

Student 1: kháw chÿy \_\_\_\_\_ (actual name)

Student 2: khraj khráp, khon níi rý  
khon nán (pointing at students)

Student 1: khon níi/nán khráp

n) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Question</u>                   | <u>Response</u>   |
|------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------|
| cim        | chây cǎon rý cim                  | (chây) cim khráp  |
| nóon       | khon nán rý khon nóon             | khon nóon knráp   |
| khruu      | pen phyan rý pen khruu            | (pen) khruu khráp |
| khun       | khǎon khun rý khǎon phǎm          | khǎon khun khráp  |
| sǎaj       | phûujǎn khon nán sǎaj rý mâj sǎaj | sǎaj khráp        |
| mâj        | chây níi dii rý mâj dii           | mâj dii khráp     |

o) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u>                           |                     |   |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------|---|
| chây cim                             | kháw pen khraj      | kháw chây cim                             |
| pen phyan phǎm                       | kháw pen khraj      | kháw pen phyan phǎm                       |
| chây cim, pen phyan phǎm             | khon nán pen khraj  | kháw chây cim, pen phyan phǎm             |
| chây mǎerfi, pen phanrajaa khun cǎon | kháw pen khraj      | kháw chây mǎerfi, pen phanrajaa khun cǎon |
| chây praphâat                        | kháw pen khraj      | kháw chây praphâat                        |
| pen khruu phǎm                       | kháw pen khraj      | kháw pen khruu phǎm                       |
| chây praphâat, pen khruu phǎm        | kháw pen khraj      | kháw chây praphâat pen khruu phǎm         |
| chây khun chótchǎoj                  | khon nán pen khraj  | kháw chây chótchǎoj                       |
| pen khruu                            | khon nóon pen khraj | kháw pen khruu                            |
| chây cǎon, pen phyan phǎm            | khon níi pen khraj  | kháw chây cǎon, pen phyan phǎm            |

p) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

The instructor points at two or more of the objects as he asks the question and selects one of them as he gives the response.

| <u>Question</u>            | <u>Response</u> |                                    |
|----------------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|
| 1) nánsŷy lêm năj dii      | lêm nán         | Which book is good?<br>That one.   |
| 2) pàakkaa dâam năj dii    | dâam níi        | Which pen is good?<br>This one.    |
| 3) dinsŏo thêŋ năj dii     | thêŋ níi        | Which pencil is good?<br>This one. |
| 4) kâwîi tua năj dii       | tua nán         | Which chair is good?<br>That one.  |
| 5) phĕenthîi phĕen năj dii | phĕen níi       | Which map is good?<br>This one.    |

q) Response Drill (Selecting two each of the objects listed below, the instructor asks questions about ownership using the following model):

Instructor: níi nánsŷy sŏoŋ lêm, Here are 2 books.  
lêm năj khŏoŋ khun Which (one) is yours?

Student: lêm níi/nán This one/that one.

- |          |            |             |
|----------|------------|-------------|
| 1) kâwîi | 3) dinsŏo  | 5) naalikaa |
| 2) samùt | 4) pàakkaa |             |

In the question khun may be replaced by kháw or phŏm / dichán.

r) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern</u>                                     |
|------------|--|
|            | <u>nánsǎy</u> <u>lêm</u> <u>ní</u> <u>dii</u>      |
| samùt      | <u>samùt</u> <u>lêm</u> <u>ní</u> <u>dii</u>       |
| pàakkaa    | <u>pàakkaa</u> <u>dâam</u> <u>ní</u> <u>dii</u>    |
| dinsǎo     | <u>dinsǎo</u> <u>thên</u> <u>ní</u> <u>dii</u>     |
| tó (tua)   | <u>tó</u> <u>tua</u> <u>ní</u> <u>dii</u>          |
| phěenthîi  | <u>phěenthîi</u> <u>phèen</u> <u>ní</u> <u>dii</u> |
| rûup (baj) | <u>rûup</u> <u>baj</u> <u>ní</u> <u>dii</u>        |
| nákrian    | <u>nákrian</u> <u>khon</u> <u>ní</u> <u>dii</u>    |
| khruu      | <u>khruu</u> <u>khon</u> <u>ní</u> <u>dii</u>      |
| naalikaa   | <u>naalikaa</u> <u>ryan</u> <u>ní</u> <u>dii</u>   |
| nánsǎy     | <u>nánsǎy</u> <u>lêm</u> <u>ní</u> <u>dii</u>      |

s) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>     | <u>Pattern</u>   |
|----------------|--|
|                | chûaj sòn <u>nánsǎy</u> <u>lêm</u> <u>nán</u> hâj phǎm<br>nòoj, dâj máj khráp      |
| pàakkaa, nóon  | chûaj sòn <u>pàakkaa</u> <u>dâam</u> <u>nóon</u> hâj phǎm<br>nòoj, dâj máj khráp   |
| rûup, nán      | chûaj sòn <u>rûup</u> <u>baj</u> <u>nán</u> hâj phǎm<br>nòoj, dâj máj khráp        |
| phěenthîi, nán | chûaj sòn <u>phěenthîi</u> <u>phèen</u> <u>nán</u> hâj phǎm<br>nòoj, dâj máj khráp |
| nánsǎy, nóon   | chûaj sòn <u>nánsǎy</u> <u>lêm</u> <u>nóon</u> hâj phǎm<br>nòoj, dâj máj khráp     |

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| dins๓๐, nán   | chûaj sòŋ dins๓๐ thêŋ nán hâj phǒm<br>nòoj, dâj máj khráp   |
| naalikaa, nán | chûaj sòŋ naalikaa ryan nán hâj phǒm<br>nòoj, dâj máj khráp |

#### 4.3 EXERCISE

- a) One student points at an object and asks who it belongs to. Another student (the actual owner) says that it's his. Continue until ownership has been established for all the objects the students are familiar with.
- b) Find out the names of all the students by asking questions like this: What's the name of that person? A student will respond with the real name.
- c) Find out the names of all the students by asking questions like this: Who is named \_\_\_\_\_? (using the names of students). The student with the name will respond: I am (named) \_\_\_\_\_.
- d) One student will point to an object and will ask another student if it's his. He will respond that it is.
- e) Find out if other students think various objects in the room are good or beautiful.
- f) Ask someone to pass you something. He pretends he isn't sure which one you want and asks, 'This one or that one!'. You indicate which one and he passes it. You thank him.

4.4 VOCABULARY

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| ba.j                                | classifier for 'picture', etc.                     |
| cim                                 | Jim (name)   |
| chótchóoj                           | Chotchoi (Thai female first name)                  |
| chûaj                               | please   |
| dâam                                | classifier for 'pen', etc.                         |
| dâ.j                                | can, could, be able                                |
| hâ.j                                | for (the benefit of)                               |
| khon (khon) <sup>1</sup>            | people, also classifier for humans                 |
| khǎoj                               | of, belonging to                                   |
| khraj                               | who, what (in some constructions)                  |
| lêm                                 | classifier for 'book'                              |
| nonjaw                              | Nongyaw (Thai female first name)                   |
| nákrian (khon)                      | student, pupil                                     |
| nán, nân                            | that (determiner)                                  |
| nǎ.j                                | which (one(s)) (determiner)                        |
| nîi, nîi                            | this (determiner)                                  |
| nútchanan                           | Nuchanan (female first name)                       |
| nóon, nôon                          | the one over there (determiner)                    |
| pen                                 | to be  |
| phanrajaa, pharijaa, phanjaa (khon) | wife (elegant term)                                |
| phèen                               | classifier for 'map, picture, paper'<br>sheet-like |
| phûuchaa.j (khon)                   | man, boy (male human of any age)                   |
| phûujǎ.j (khon)                     | woman, girl (female human of any age)              |

---

<sup>1</sup>The unit classifier for each noun is given after the noun.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|               |  |
|---------------|--|
| prasə̀ət      | Prasert (male first name)  |
| raw           | we, our, us  |
| rúucàk        | to know, to be acquainted with, to be familiar with                |
| rŷy, rý, etc. | or   |
| ryan          | classifier for 'watch, clock'                                      |
| săamii (khon) | husband (elegant term)   |
| sòŋ           | to pass, to hand (someone something)                               |
| sŏŋ           | two  |
| tua           | classifier for 'animals, objects with legs (chairs, tables, etc.)' |
| thêŋ          | classifier for 'pencil', etc.                                      |



# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON FIVE

### 5.0 BASIC DIALOG: Social Formulae

|                    |   |  |
|--------------------|---|--|
| A:                 | sawàtdii khráp, khun prichaa  | Hello, Pricha.   |
| B:                 | sawàtdii khráp, khun sǒmsàk<br>pen jaṅṅaj bâaṅ khráp                                | Hello, Somsak.<br>How are you?                               |
| A:                 | kô rŷaj rŷaj khráp  | O.K. (so, so)  |
| B:                 | โฉ, khun prichaa khráp<br>nŷi khun cǒon,<br>nân khun mserŷi,<br>phanrajaa khun cǒon | Oh, Prichaa<br>This is John.<br>That's Mary.<br>John's wife. |
| A:                 | sawàtdii khráp  | Hello.   |
| John:              | sawàtdii khráp  | Hello.   |
| Mary:              | sawàtdii khâ  | Hello.   |
| (10 minutes later) |   |  |
| A:                 | khǒothôot, phǒm paj kòon na khráp   | Excuse me, I must go.  |
| B:                 | cheen khráp, phóp kan màj khráp   | All right, I'll see<br>you again.                            |

### 5.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) The particular form used by one Thai when greeting another is dependent on the social status and age of the two participants. Within this framework three groups can be distinguished: (1) Equals, (2) Superiors, and (3) Inferiors. Equals are persons of the same status and greater age. Inferiors are persons of lower status, or of equal status and lesser age. Within these social groups there are formal and informal types of discourse.

Observe the following examples:

1. GREETINGS

a) Between Equals

i) Formal

A: sawàtdii khráp

B: sawàtdii khráp

(The exchange may continue as in 1.0)

ii) Informal (especially between intimates)

A: (sa) wàt dii khráp

B: (sa) wàt dii khráp

or A: pen (jaŋ) ɲaj bâaŋ khráp      How are you?

B: kô rŷaj rŷaj      So so.

or B: jêε      Terrible.

or A: paj năj khráp      Where are you going?

B: paj { thŷaw khráp      Out for pleasure.

{ thurá      Out for business.

or A: paj năj maa khráp      Where are you coming from?

B: paj { thŷaw maa khráp      From pleasure.

{ thurá      From business.

b) Inferior or Superior

i) Formal

Inferior: sawàtdii khráp (accompanied by a wai (wâj). See 1.1)

Superior: (sawàtdii) (sometimes only wais in return.)

NOTE: The height of the hands when waiing is in inverse ratio to the age and social position of the participants.

or Inferior: thâan sabaajdii ǎ khráp

Superior: sabaajdii, khòpcaj

ii) There is no informal greeting from inferior to superior.

c) Superior to Inferior

i) Informal

Superior: pen (jaŋ) ɲaj bâan

Inferior: sabaajdii khráp

ii) There is no formal greeting from superior to inferior.

NOTE: A greeting between superior and inferior may be no more than an exchange of wais with the inferior waiing first.

2 INTRODUCTIONS

a) Between Equals

A: khun sǎmsàk khráp  
nîi khun prichaa

sǎmsàk: sawàtdii khráp

prichaa: sawàtdii khráp

b) Between Inferiors and Superiors

(An inferior is always introduced to a superior)

A: khun (name of inferior) khráp  
nfi thân \_\_\_\_\_ (rank, position)  
khun \_\_\_\_\_ (name)

Inferior: sawàtdii khráp (accompanied by a wai)

NOTE: jindii thfi dâj rúucàk 'glad to know (you)' is added after sawàtdii in many social groups. Among equals a woman is introduced to a man. The woman usually wais before the greeting. If one woman is introduced to another, the wai is not necessary but is considered as polite.

3. LEAVETAKING (at all levels)

A: khǒothôot, phǒm paj kòn      'Excuse me, I  
na khráp                              must go.'

B: chǎen khráp, phóp kan      'All right, I'll  
màj khráp                              see you again.'

4. INVITATION

chǎen khráp is used as an invitation to a person.

- a) to take some action which is beneficial to himself (eat food, come in, sit down, etc.)
- or b) to do something the person has already indicated he wants to do (take leave, etc.).

Special Note to the Student:

- a) Social status and age are very important in Thailand. Most Thais are very conscious of the social status and age of the people they meet, and act accordingly. The American who has been assigned to work in Thailand may

not be aware of his social position. Depending on his age and the position he holds in the government agency his status will vary from high to very high; consequently, he should use the forms designated as 'between equals' for most of the Thais he meets in his work and reserve the 'inferior to superior' forms for greeting higher ranking officials. With taxi drivers and servants he might choose to use the 'superior to interior' forms. If he should meet the King of Thailand or a Buddhist priest, none of the forms given would be correct.

b) The following are some common titles and forms of address:

- 1) thân It replaces khun when speaking to a superior.  
thân + Title (position): thân thûut 'Mr. Ambassador'
- 2) mǎo: (khun) + mǎo + Name 'Doctor X' (M.D)
- 3) dóktêe: dóktêe + Name 'Doctor Y' (Ph.D.)
- 4) aacaan: aacaan + Name 'Mr./Mrs.' (College teacher)
- 5) khruu: khruu + Name 'Mr./Mrs.' (teacher)

## 5.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) There are several ways to indicate negation in Thai.<sup>1</sup> The choice of ways is determined by (1) the form class (noun, verb, etc.) of the thing to be negated and (2) the kind of negative meaning to be expressed.

1. mâj 'not, the contrary, etc.' is used to negate all types of verbs (stative, modals, motion, etc.)

aakaat mâj rón 'The weather isn't hot.'

phóm mâj mii naalikaa 'I don't have a watch.'

2. mâj dâj 'not, not as assumed to be' is used to negate verbs of motion, action verbs, and pen and chây. It is used often in past situations and in present situations that are contrary to expectations.

---

<sup>1</sup>See Noss, 138-143 for a fuller treatment.

phǒm mâj dâj pít faj 'I didn't turn off the lights.'  
 kháw mâj dâj chýy sǒmsàk 'He's not named Somsak.'

3. mâj châj 'not a case of' is used most frequently to negate Noun Phrases as complements in Equational sentences (sentences without verbs).

nîi mâj châj dinsǒo kháw 'This isn't his pencil'.  
 naalikaa ryan níi mâj châj 'This watch isn't yours.'  
khǒn khun.

In sentences with pen as the connective verb (kháw pen nákrían, etc.) either of two types of negation may occur according to the situation.

As an initial statement:

kháw mâj dâj pen nákrían 'He isn't a student.'

As a response to a question:

kháw pen khruu (kháw) mâj châj nákrían 'He's the teacher. He isn't a student.'

- b) pen janṇaj 'How is/are...?' can be used with subject like aakaat, etc.

aakaat pen janṇaj 'How's the weather?'

(kaan) rián phaasǎa thaj pen janṇaj 'How is studying Thai?'

### 5.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Response Drill

Have pairs of students practice the following exchange (with accompanying wai when appropriate):

1. A: pen (jan) ṇaj bâṇ khráp  
 B: { kô rýaj rýaj  
       { jêe

2. A: paj nǎj khráp  
B: paj { thfaw khráp  
          { thurá
3. A: paj nǎj maa khráp  
B: paj { thfaw maa khráp  
          { thurá

b. Response Drill

Have sets of 3 students participate in the following exchanges (with wai when appropriate):

1. A: khun (name of student)  
nfi khun (name of student)

Student 1: sawàtdii khráp

Student 2: sawàtdii khráp

2. A: khun (name of a student)  
nfi khun (name of student)

Student 1: sawàtdii khráp

jindii thfi dâj rúucàk (khun)

Student 2: sawàtdii khráp

jindii thfi dâj rúucàk (khun)

3. Have one student take the part of Foreign Minister, Thanat Khoman.

A: khun (name of student)  
 nîi khun thanàt khooman<sup>1</sup>

Student: sawàtdii khráp

c) Response Drill

Have pairs of students practice the following exchange:

A: khǎothôot, phǎm paj kòon nakhráp  
 B: chǎen khráp, phóp kan màj khráp

d) Substitution Transformation Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern 1</u>  | <u>Pattern 2</u>                  |
|------------|-------------------|-----------------------------------|
| prasèet    | kháw chýy prichaa | kháw mâj dâj chýy <u>prasèet</u>  |
| cɔɔn       | kháw chýy cim     | kháw mâj dâj chýy <u>cɔɔn</u>     |
| praphâat   | kháw chýy wíchaj  | kháw mâj dâj chýy <u>praphâat</u> |
| kaandaa    | kháw chýy waanii  | kháw mâj dâj chýy <u>kaandaa</u>  |

---

<sup>1</sup>nîi thân rátthamontrií krasuan  
 tàan prathêet

'Mr. Foreign Minister',,

or nîi thân rátthamontrií krasuan  
 tàan prathêet, khun thanàt  
 khooman

'Mr. Foreign Minister,  
 Mr. Thanat Khoman'  
 might be used.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Substitution Transformation Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern 1</u>                 | <u>Pattern 2</u>  |
|------------|----------------------------------|---|
| kháw       | khun malíkaa pen khruu<br>phǒm   | khun malíkaa mǎj dâj<br>pen khruu <u>kháw</u>           |
| khun       | khun nonlák pen phýan<br>kháw    | <u>khun</u> nonlák mǎj dâj<br>pen phýan <u>khun</u>     |
| khun cǒon  | mǝerfi pen phanrajaa<br>khun cim | mǝerfi mǎj dâj pen<br>phanrajaa <u>khun</u> <u>cǒon</u> |

### f) Substitution Transformation Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern 1</u>  | <u>Pattern 2</u>             |
|------------|-------------------|------------------------------|
| nâataaŋ    | nân pratuu        | nân mǎj châj <u>nâataaŋ</u>  |
| dinsǒo     | nîi pàakkaa       | nîi mǎj châj <u>dinsǒo</u>   |
| wát        | nôn roonrian      | nôn mǎj châj <u>wát</u>      |
| tó         | nân kâwîi         | nân mǎj châj <u>tó</u>       |
| samùt      | nîi nánsýy        | nîi mǎj châj <u>samùt</u>    |
| rûup wát   | nân rûup roonrian | nân mǎj châj <u>rûup wát</u> |

NOTE: Point at the objects referred to in this drill.

## 5.4 EXERCISES

a) Have the students discuss various objects in the room in terms of:

1. What they are and what they are not,
2. What they are called,
3. Which ones are good, or beautiful.
4. Who has them, and
5. Who they belong to.

b) Have the students discuss various people in the classroom in terms of:

1. Their names,
2. Whether they are teachers, wives, or friends, and if so, of whom,
3. Whether they (the students) are good, pretty, hot, or cold,
4. Whether they are feeling well, terrible, or so so,
5. Whether one particular student is acquainted with another particular one,
6. If anyone in the room is named sǒmcìt, ubon, reenuu, or malíkaa, and
7. If there is anything else interesting about the people in the room (including the instructor) that the students know how to ask about.

c) Using students act out the following social situations:

### 1. Greetings

- a) A student Mr. Brown greets a Thai friend of his from the Foreign Ministry, Mr. Praphaat.
- b) A Thai Minister, Mr. Arun, is greeted by one of the people in his ministry.
- c) A servant greets his boss, Mr. Jones.
- d) Two Thai women friend, Mrs. Aarii and Mrs. Amphoon, meet and greet each other.
- e) Two Thai men, Mr. Somchit and Mr. Pridaa, greet each other. One says he feels terrible.

### 2. Introductions

- a) A friend introduces two men (Mr. Prasæt and Mr. Somsak) who work in the same office.
- b) Someone introduces a lady, Mrs. Wilaj to Mr. Prasit, a high ranking officer in the Ministry of Interior.
- c) Mrs. Nonglak is introduced to Mr. Wichaj. Both are teachers in the same school.

3. Leavetaking

One student says he wants to leave; another agrees.

4. Invitations

- a) One student knocks at the door; another invites him to come in.
- b) A lady and a gentleman are standing at the open door of the elevator. He invites her to get on.
- c) You have invited a friend to dinner. After you have sat down, you invite him to eat.

5.5 VOCABULARY

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| aacaan (khon)       | college or university teacher                                      |
| aarii               | Aree (male or female first name)                                   |
| amphoon             | Amphorn (male or female first name)                                |
| ôo                  | Oh!  |
| ubon                | Ubon (female first name)   |
| bâaŋ                | some, any (pronominal)   |
| chæŋ                | please, go ahead and...  |
| dóktêe (khon)       | doctor (Ph.D.)   |
| jaŋraj, jaŋraj, ɲaj | how (question word)  |
| jindii              | (to be) glad   |
| jêe                 | (to be) terrible, to be in a bad way                               |
| kan                 | together (particle indicating mutuality or reciprocity)            |
| kaandaa             | Kanda (female first name)  |
| kô                  | connective particle; not to be translated in <u>kô rŷaj rŷaj</u> . |
| kòon                | before, first  |
| krasuaŋ (krasuaŋ)   | ministry (division of the government)                              |
| khòɔpcaj            | thank you (superior to inferior)                                   |

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| maa                 | to come  |
| maalíkaa            | Malika (female first name)                         |
| màj                 | again, new   |
| mâj dâj             | not, not as assumed to be                          |
| m໓໐ (khon)          | medical doctor                                     |
| noŋlák              | Nonglak (female first name)                        |
| ŋaj                 | variant form of <u>jaŋraj</u>                      |
| paj                 | to go  |
| paj... maa          | to come from                                       |
| paj k໐໐n            | to go first, to go ahead                           |
| prathêet (prathêet) | country, nation                                    |
| phóp                | to meet, run into (someone)                        |
| phóp... kan         | to meet or see each other                          |
| rátthamontrii       | minister (head of a ministry)                      |
| reenuu              | Renu (male or female first name)                   |
| râyaj râyaj         | so so (as a response to a greeting)                |
| s໓mcít              | Somchit (male or female first name)                |
| s໓msàk              | Somsak (male first name)                           |
| tàaŋ                | (to be) different, separate                        |
| tàaŋ prathêet       | foreign  |
| thanàt khooman      | Mr. Thanat Khoman, Foreign Minister<br>of Thailand |
| thân                | you; he, she (for persons of superior<br>status)   |
| thîi                | that, which (connective)                           |
| thurá               | business, affairs, errands                         |
| paj thurá           | to go out on business                              |
| thîaw               | for pleasure                                       |
| paj thîaw           | to go out for pleasure                             |
| waanii              | Wanee (female first name)                          |
| wíchaj              | Wichai (male first name)                           |



2. kháw lēn dontrii mâj kèn 'He plays (music) poorly.'
3. khruu kháw kèn phaasăa juan 'His teacher is good in Vietnamese.'
- c) The verbs rian 'study, learn', khĭan 'write', àan 'read', and sŏn 'to teach' do not occur without object complements; if there is no other complement, nánsŷy is used, thus rian nánsŷy 'to study (in a school)', khĭan nánsŷy 'to write (books)', àan nánsŷy 'to read', and sŏn nánsŷy 'to teach'.
- d) The Thais use the following terms to refer to people of various nationalities:
- For all nationalities: khon + Name of Country
 

|                      |                    |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| <u>khon thaj</u>     | 'a Thai'           |
| <u>khon jĭipùn</u>   | 'a Japanese'       |
| <u>khon phaamăa</u>  | 'a Burmese'        |
| <u>khon jæeraman</u> | 'a German'         |
| <u>khon iijĭp</u>    | 'an Egyptian' etc. |
  - For people from Malaya, Indonesia, India, and the Middle East only: khèek + Name of Country.
 

|                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| <u>khèek malajuu</u> | 'a Malayan'       |
| <u>khèek iijĭp</u>   | 'an Egyptian'     |
| <u>khèek india</u>   | 'an Indian', etc. |
  - The terms khèek and faràn are used alone to refer to certain large groups of people.
    - faràn refers to white-skinned people, including Europeans, Australians, and white Americans.
 

|                            |                     |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| Q: <u>kháw pen faràn,</u>  | 'He's a 'farang',   |
| <u>châj máj</u>            | isn't he?'          |
| A: <u>châj khráp, kháw</u> | 'That's right. He's |
| <u>pen khon sapeen</u>     | Spanish.'           |

- b) khèək refers to people from Malaya, Indonesia, India, Ceylon, and the Middle East. (Normally dark-skinned people).

kháw pen khèək, maa càak 'He's a khèək.' 'He  
prathêet india comes from India.'

4. The Moslem people living in South Thailand are referred to as thaj itsalaam 'Thai Moslem'.

- e) myaŋ + (name of city) or name of city alone is used in colloquial language to refer to cities, thus myaŋ wəschintân (or) wəschintân 'Washington'. In the mass media kruŋ + (name of city) is used to refer to some capitol cities, thus kruŋ room 'Rome', kruŋ parfit 'Paris', etc.

- f) myaŋ + (name of country) or name of country alone is frequently used in spoken Thai to refer to a country instead of prathêet + (name of country) which is more formal and is used in newspapers, speeches, etc.

kháw maa càak jîipùn 'He comes from Japan'.

kháw maa càak myaŋ jîipùn 'He comes from Japan'.

kháw maa càak prathêet jîipùn 'He comes from Japan'.

- g) As was indicated in 4.1, khraj usually occurs in the complement position after pen (kháw pen khraj, etc.); in some situations khraj precedes pen. Observe the following two examples:

1. 'Juliet' pen khraj 'Who's Juliet?' (I never heard of her.)

2. khraj pen 'Juliet' 'Who's Juliet?' (Who is playing the part of Juliet in the play by Shakespeare.)

When the main verb in the sentence is khyy 'to be', if the subject of the sentence is a pronoun, khraj is in the complement position.

kháw khyy khraj

'Who is he?'

With noun subjects khraj may precede or follow khyy optionally:

khun nonnúť khyy khraj

'Who is Nongnut?'

or khraj khyy khun nonnúť

With verbs besides pen and khyy, khraj may occupy the subject or complement position:

khraj sǒn phaasǎa thaj

'Who teaches Thai?'

khun praphâat sǒn

'Who is Prapas teaching

phaasǎa thaj hâj khraj

Thai to?'

## 6.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| 1. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (khon) <u>thaj</u>      | He's a Thai.        |
| 2. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (khon) <u>ameerikan</u> | He's an American.   |
| 3. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (khon) <u>anjkrít</u>   | He's an Englishman. |
| 4. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (khon) <u>farànsèet</u> | He's a Frenchman.   |
| 5. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (khon) <u>jæraman</u>   | He's a German.      |
| 6. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (khon) <u>ciin</u>      | He's a Chinese.     |
| 7. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (khon) <u>jîipùn</u>    | He's a Japanese.    |
| 8. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (khon) <u>laaw</u>      | He's a Lao.         |
| 9. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (khon) <u>juan</u>      | He's a Vietnamese.  |
| 10. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (khon) <u>phamáa</u>   | He's a Burmese.     |
| 11. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (khon) <u>khaměen</u>  | He's a Cambodian.   |
| 12. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (khon) <u>kawlǐi</u>   | He's a Korean.      |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>     | <u>Pattern</u>                       |
|----------------|--------------------------------------|
|                | <u>kháw</u> pen khon thaj            |
| khun           | <u>khun</u> pen khon thaj            |
| khon ankrít    | khun pen <u>khon ankrít</u>          |
| khon ameerikan | khun pen <u>khon ameerikan</u>       |
| kháw           | <u>kháw</u> pen khon ameerikan       |
| khun cõn       | <u>khun cõn</u> pen khon ameerikan   |
| phÿan phõm     | <u>phÿan phõm</u> pen khon ameerikan |
| khon ciin      | phÿan phõm pen <u>khon ciin</u>      |
| kháw           | <u>kháw</u> pen khon ciin            |
| khon phamâa    | kháw pen <u>khon phamâa</u>          |
| khun           | <u>khun</u> pen khon phamâa          |
| thaj           | khun pen khon <u>thaj</u>            |

### c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

| <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>                           |
|--|---|
| 1. kháw pen khon châat araj<br>What nationality is he? | kháw pen khon thaj<br>He's a Thai.        |
| 2. kháw pen khon châat araj<br>What nationality is he? | kháw pen juan<br>He's a Vietnamese.       |
| 3. kháw pen khon châat araj<br>What nationality is he? | kháw pen khon ameerikan<br>He's American. |
| 4. kháw pen khon châat araj<br>What nationality is he? | kháw pen khon phamâa<br>He's Burmese.     |
| 5. kháw pen khon châat araj<br>What nationality is he? | kháw pen ciin<br>He's Chinese.            |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

d) Transformation Drill (Change to the negative in two ways.)

| <u>Affirmative Pattern</u> | <u>Negative 1-Pattern</u>    | <u>Negative 2-Pattern</u>       |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| kháw pen khon jîipùn       | kháw mâj châj khon<br>jîipùn | kháw mâj dâj pen khon<br>jîipùn |
| kháw pen laaw              | kháw mâj châj laaw           | kháw mâj dâj pen laaw           |
| kháw pen khon aṅkrít       | kháw mâj châj khon<br>aṅkrít | kháw mâj dâj pen khon<br>aṅkrít |
| kháw pen juan              | kháw mâj châj juan           | kháw mâj dâj pen juan           |

e) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Question</u>                 | <u>Response</u>                                       |
|------------|---------------------------------|---|
| ciin       | kháw pen khon thaj,<br>châj máj | mâj châj<br>kháw pen khon ciin<br>mâj châj khon thaj  |
|            | He's Thai, isn't he?            | No, he isn't.<br>He's Chinese.<br>He isn't Thai.      |
| laaw       | kháw pen khon thaj,<br>châj máj | mâj châj,<br>kháw pen khon laaw<br>mâj châj khon thaj |
|            | He's Thai, isn't he?            | No, he isn't.<br>He's Lao.<br>He isn't Thai.          |

THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                            |                                  |   |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|---|
| laaw                       | knun pen khon thaj<br>rýplàaw    | plàaw (or)<br>phǒm pen khon laaw<br>mâj châj khon thaj                                      |
|                            | Are you Thai?                    | No, I'm <u>not</u> . / I'm not.<br>I'm Lao.<br>I'm not a Thai.                              |
| phonlaryan                 | khun pen thahǎan lǎ              | { plàaw<br>mâj châj<br>phǒm pen phonlaryan<br>mâj châj thahǎan                              |
|                            | You're a soldier?                | No, I am <u>not</u> .<br>No, I'm <u>not</u> .<br>I'm a civilian.<br>I'm not a soldier.      |
| câwnâathîi<br>sathǎanthûut | khun pen câwnâathîi<br>juusít lǎ | { mâj châj<br>plàaw<br>phǒm pen câwnâathîi<br>sathǎanthûut<br>mâj châj câwnâathîi<br>juusít |
|                            | You are a USIS official?         | No, I'm not.<br>No, I am not.<br>I'm an Embassy official.<br>I'm not a USIS official.       |

|                     |                                     |   |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| khon<br>tâaŋ caŋwàt | khun pen khon kruŋthêep<br>châj máj | {mâj châj<br>{plâaw<br>phǒm pen khon<br>tâaŋ caŋwàt<br>mâj châj khon<br>kruŋthêep |
|                     | You are a Bangkokker, aren't you?   | No, I'm not.<br>No, I am not.<br>I'm an out-of-towner.<br>I'm not a Bangkokker.   |
| phÿan               | kháw pen phanrajaa khun<br>cœœn lǎ  | mâj châj<br>kháw pen phÿan<br>mâj châj phanrajaa                                  |
|                     | She's John's wife?                  | No, she isn't.<br>She's a friend.<br>She's not his wife.                          |

f) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern</u>                               |                     |
|------------|--|---------------------|
|            | kháw maa càak (prathêet)<br><u>thaj</u>      | He's from Thailand. |
| ameerikaa  | kháw maa càak (prathêet)<br><u>ameerikaa</u> | He's from America.  |
| farànsèet  | kháw maa càak (prathêet)<br><u>farànsèet</u> | He's from France.   |
| wîatnaam   | kháw maa càak (prathêet)<br><u>wîatnaam</u>  | He's from Vietnam.  |

|          |   |                            |
|----------|---|----------------------------|
| phamâa   | kháw maa càak (prathêet)<br><u>phamâa</u>   | He's from Burma.           |
| rátsia   | kháw maa càak (prathêet)<br><u>rátsia</u>   | He's from Russia.          |
| ciin     | kháw maa càak (prathêet)<br><u>ciin</u>     | He's from China.           |
| khaměen  | kháw maa càak (prathêet)<br><u>khaměen</u>  | He's from Cambodia.        |
| malajuu  | kháw maa càak (prathêet)<br><u>malajuu</u>  | He's from Malaya.          |
| filíppin | kháw maa càak (prathêet)<br><u>filíppin</u> | He's from the Philippines. |

g) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

kháw pen khon thaj  
kháw pen khon aṅkrìt  
kháw pen juan  
kháw pen khon rátsia  
kháw pen jîipùn  
kháw pen khèesk india

Pattern 2

kháw maa càak (prathêet) thaj  
kháw maa càak (prathêet) aṅkrìt  
kháw maa càak (prathêet) wîatnaam  
kháw maa càak (prathêet) rátsia  
kháw maa càak (prathêet) jîipùn  
kháw maa càak (prathêet) india

h) Substitution Drill

Have two students do the following exchange substituting the cue words for those underlined.

Student 1: kháw pen juan, châj máj khráp

Student 2: máj châj, pen khon thaj khráp

Student 1: maa càak prathêet thaj rý khráp

Student 2: khráp

1. jæraman, farànsèet

4. rátsia, sapeen

2. laaw, kawlyi

5. ankrít, ameerika(a)(n)

3. jîipùn, ciin

i) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>   | <u>Question</u>   | <u>Response</u>                                |
|--------------|---|--|
| krunthêep    | khun maa càak myaŋ araj<br>What city do you<br>come from? | phǒm maa càak <u>krun room</u><br>Bangkok.     |
| wóochiŋtân   | khun maa càak myaŋ araj<br>What city do you<br>come from? | phǒm maa càak <u>wóochiŋtân</u><br>Washington. |
| njuu jóok    | khun maa càak myaŋ araj<br>What city do you<br>come from? | phǒm maa càak <u>njuu jóok</u><br>New York.    |
| krun room    | khun maa càak myaŋ araj<br>What city do you<br>come from? | phǒm maa càak <u>krun room</u><br>Rome.        |
| krun loondøn | khun maa càak myaŋ araj<br>What city do you<br>come from? | phǒm maa càak <u>krun loondøn</u><br>London.   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                   |   |   |
|-------------------|---|---|
| lɔɔndɔn           | khun maa càak myaŋ araj<br>What city do you<br>come from? | phǒm maa càak <u>lɔɔndɔn</u><br><br>London.                         |
| denwêe            | khun maa càak myaŋ araj<br>What city do you<br>come from? | phǒm maa càak <u>denwêe</u><br><br>Denver.                          |
| saan<br>fransisko | khun maa càak myaŋ araj<br>What city do you<br>come from? | phǒm maa càak <u>saan</u><br><u>fransisko</u><br><br>San Francisco. |

### j) Substitution Transformation Drill

| <u>Cue</u>         | <u>Pattern 1</u>                      | <u>Pattern 2</u>                               |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|--|
| ankrìt, ameerikaa  | kháw maa càak <u>ankrìt</u>           | kháw mâj dâj maa càak<br><u>ameerikaa</u>      |
| lɔɔndɔn, njuu jóok | kháw maa càak <u>lɔɔndɔn</u>          | kháw mâj dâj maa càak<br><u>njuu jóok</u>      |
| parîit, tookiaw    | kháw maa càak (kruŋ)<br><u>parîit</u> | kháw mâj dâj maa càak<br>(kruŋ) <u>tookiaw</u> |
| wɔɔchɪŋtân, denwêe | kháw maa càak<br><u>wɔɔchɪŋtân</u>    | kháw mâj dâj maa càak<br><u>denwêe</u>         |
| farànsèet, jæraman | kháw maa càak<br><u>farànsèet</u>     | kháw mâj dâj maa càak<br><u>jæraman</u>        |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### k) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. kháw pen faràŋ, maa càak<br>parîit                | He's a 'farang'.<br>He comes from Paris.      |
| 2. kháw pen khèek, maa càak<br>malajuu               | He's a 'khèek'.<br>He comes from Malaya.      |
| 3. kháw pen khon thaj, maa càak<br>myaŋ thaj         | He's a Thai.<br>He comes from Thailand.       |
| 4. kháw pen khèek, maa càak<br>prathêet india        | He's a 'khèek'.<br>He comes from India.       |
| 5. kháw pen faràŋ, maa càak<br>prathêet aŋkrít       | He's 'farang'.<br>He comes from England.      |
| 6. kháw pen khon ciin, maa càak<br>hôngkon           | He's Chinese.<br>He comes from Hong Kong.     |
| 7. kháw pen khon thaj ìtsalaam,<br>maa càak pàttanii | He's a Thai Moslem.<br>He comes from Pattani. |
| 8. kháw pen faràŋ, maa càak<br>woochiŋtân            | He's a 'farang'.<br>He comes from Washington. |

### l) Substitution Drill

Substitute the cue words in one of the exchanges below  
(only one will fit the cue word):

MODEL I: (for khèek)            Cue word: khon malajuu

A: phÿan khun pen faràŋ, châj máj

B: mâj châj, pen khèek

A: maa càak prathêet năj

B: maa càak (prathêet) malajuu



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

MODEL II: (for others) Cue word: khon farànsèet (or) thaj

A: phÿan khun pen faràn, châj máj

B: châj khráp, pen khon farànsèet  
mâj châj khráp, pen khon thaj

- |                |            |
|----------------|------------|
| 1. jġipùn      | 6. khamĕen |
| 2. india       | 7. sapeen  |
| 3. rátsia      | 8. malajuu |
| 4. ameerikan   | 9. phamáa  |
| 5. indooniisia | 10. laaw   |

### m) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |   |                              |
|---|------------------------------|
| 1. khonthaj phÿut phaasăa thaj            | Thais speak Thai.            |
| 2. khon ameerikan phÿut phaasăa ankrít    | Americans speak English.     |
| 3. khon ankrít phÿut phaasăa ankrít       | Englishmen speak English.    |
| 4. khon ciin phÿut phaasăa ciin           | Chinese speak Chinese.       |
| 5. khon laaw phÿut phaasăa laaw           | Lao speak Laotian.           |
| 6. khèek malajuu phÿut phaasăa malajuu    | Malayans speak Malay.        |
| 7. khon juan phÿut phaasăa juan.          | Vietnamese speak Vietnamese. |
| 8. khon óosatreeelia phÿut phaasăa ankrít | Australians speak English.   |

### n) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern</u>                            |
|------------|---|
| rátsia     | khon rátsia phÿut phaasăa <u>rátsia</u>   |
| kawlġi     | khon kawġi phÿut phaasăa <u>kawlġi</u>    |
| jġipùn     | khon jġipùn phÿut phaasăa <u>jġipùn</u>   |
| khamĕen    | khon khamĕen phÿut phaasăa <u>khamĕen</u> |
| phamáa     | khon phamáa phÿut phaasăa <u>phamáa</u>   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### o) Substitution Drill

Have two students engage in the following exchange, substituting the cue words below for those underlined:

Cue: phamâa, ciin

Student 1: thfi phamâa, khâw phûut phaasăa ciin, châj máj

Student 2: mâj châj, khâw phûut phaasăa phamâa  
khâw mâj dâj phûut phaasăa ciin.

- |                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. farànsèet, jøeraman | 7. hõnkoŋ, wíatnaam      |
| 2. indooniisia, jîipùn | 8. thaj, malajuu         |
| 3. sapeen, italían     | 9. njuu jóok, kawlíi     |
| 4. myan̄thaj, thaj     | 10. rát míchíkseen, thaj |
| 5. ameerikaa, aŋkrít   | 11. bóssatân, rátsia     |
| 6. khamëen, laaw       | 12. rát indianâa, aŋkrít |

### p) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern</u>                         |                          |
|------------|--|--------------------------|
| thaj       | khâw phûut phaasăa <u>thaj</u> dâj     | He can speak Thai.       |
| laaw       | khâw phûut phaasăa <u>laaw</u> dâj     | He can speak Lao.        |
| jøeraman   | khâw phûut phaasăa <u>jøeraman</u> dâj | He can speak German.     |
| sapeen     | khâw phûut phaasăa <u>sapeen</u> dâj   | He can speak Spanish.    |
| rátsia     | khâw phûut phaasăa <u>rátsia</u> dâj   | He can speak Russian.    |
| ciin       | khâw phûut phaasăa <u>ciin</u> dâj     | He can speak Chinese.    |
| juan       | khâw phûut phaasăa <u>juan</u> dâj     | He can speak Vietnamese. |
| malajuu    | khâw phûut phaasăa <u>malajuu</u> dâj  | He can speak Malayan.    |
| phamâa     | khâw phûut phaasăa <u>phamâa</u> dâj   | He can speak Burmese.    |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### q) Substitution Drill

Ask the students what languages they can speak, using the following patterns:

Instructor: khun phûut phaasăa ( \_\_\_\_\_ ) dâj máj khráp  
 Can you speak \_\_\_\_\_?

Student: dâj khráp                      Yes, I can.  
 mâj dâj khráp                      No, I can't.

### r) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern</u>                                   |                                   |
|------------|--|-----------------------------------|
|            | nákrian khon ní kèn phaasăa<br>thaj máj          | Is that student<br>good in Thai?  |
| khun coon  | <u>khun coon</u> kèn phaasăa thaj máj            | Is John good in Thai?             |
| aᅇkrít     | khun coon kèn phaasăa <u>aᅇkrít</u><br>máj       | Is John good in<br>English?       |
| prichaa    | khun <u>prichaa</u> kèn phaasăa<br>aᅇkrít máj    | Is Prichaa good in<br>English?    |
| faràᅇsèet  | khun prichaa kèn phaasăa<br><u>faràᅇsèet</u> máj | Is Prichaa good in<br>French?     |
| khruu kháw | <u>khruu kháw</u> kèn phaasăa<br>faràᅇsèet máj   | Is his teacher good<br>in French? |
| laaw       | khruu kháw kèn phaasăa <u>laaw</u><br>máj        | Is his teacher good<br>in Lao?    |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### s) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>            | <u>Pattern</u>                                     |                                    |
|-----------------------|--|------------------------------------|
|                       | nákrian khon nán rian<br>nánsǎy kèn                | That student learns rapidly.       |
| kháw                  | <u>kháw</u> rian nánsǎy kèn                        | He learns rapidly.                 |
| khǎan nánsǎy<br>thaj  | kháw <u>khǎan</u> <u>nánsǎy</u> <u>thaj</u> kèn    | He writes Thai well.               |
| khun                  | <u>khun</u> khǎan nánsǎy thaj kèn                  | You write Thai well.               |
| phûut phaasǎa<br>juan | khun <u>phûut</u> <u>phaasǎa</u> <u>juan</u> kèn   | You speak Vietnamese well.         |
| khruu phǎm            | <u>khruu</u> <u>phǎm</u> phûut phaasǎa<br>juan kèn | My teacher speaks Vietnamese well. |
| sǎon nánsǎy           | khruu phǎm <u>sǎon</u> <u>nánsǎy</u> kèn           | My teacher teaches well.           |

### 6.3 EXERCISES

- Using a weekly news magazine or daily newspaper have one student find out from another what the nationality of various people is.<sup>1</sup>
- Have one student find out from another what languages are spoken in Asia. (Use map on page 85.)
- Have students find out what languages other students speak and how well.
- Have students find out what city and state other students come from.

---

<sup>1</sup>To the instructor: Have the students ask the questions in as many different ways as possible.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 6.4 COMPREHENSION TEST

The teacher reads each of the passages below two times at normal speed with a pause between the two readings. The students listen and take notes if they wish. Then the teacher asks them the questions below. The students are not to look at the book during this time.

- A. phǒm mii phŷan. kháw pen khèek, maa càak malajuu.  
kháw phûut phaasǎa malajuu dâj.
1. phŷan phǒm phûut phaasǎa malajuu dâj máj
  2. kháw pen faràṅ, châj máj khráp
  3. kháw maa càak prathêet nǎj
- B. khruu phǒm kèn phaasǎa phaamâa. kháw pen khon ameerikan  
phanrajaa kháw thamṇaan thŷi juusít
1. phanrajaa khǒṅ khruu phǒm mâj dâj thamṇaan rý khráp
  2. khruu phǒm phûut phaasǎa phaamâa dâj máj
  3. khruu pen faràṅ, châj máj
- C. thahǎan maa càak prathêet jæraman. kháw pen khon  
jæraman phanrajaa kháw pen khruu phaasǎa thaj.
1. thahǎan mii phanrajaa rý khráp
  2. khruu phaasǎa thaj pen khon jæraman, châj máj
  3. thahǎan pen khèek, châj máj
- D. kháw pen khèek, maa càak prathêet india. kháw pen mǒo,  
thamṇaan thŷi roonphajabaan culaa. kháw chŷy waanii.
1. khun mǒo chŷy araj
  2. kháw thamṇaan rýplàaw
  3. kháw thamṇaan thŷinǎj

4. kháw pen khèek, châj máj
  5. kháw maa càak prathêet malajuu, châj máj
  6. khun waanii pen araj thîi roonphajabaaan culaa
- E. nákrían pen khèek indoniisia. kháw rian phaasăa juan. kháw rian kèn mâak. phanrajaa kháw pen faràn, maa càak parîit. khun mēe kháw maa càak kruŋ jaakaatâa
1. nákrían rian phaasăa araj
  2. kháw rian kèn máj
  3. phanrajaa kháw mâj dâj pen khèek rýkhráp
  4. khun mēe maa càak năj
  5. nákrían kèn phaasăa juan máj
  6. nákrían pen faràn, châj máj
  7. thîi kruŋ jaakaatâa kháw phûut phaasăa cîin, châj máj khráp
- F. phýan phôm kèn phaasăa kawlii. kháw pen faràn, maa càak prathêet italii. kháw thamŋaan thîi kruŋ room. kháw pen thahăan
1. phýan khun pen mǔo châj máj khráp
  2. kháw kèn phaasăa araj
  3. kháw pen khon châat araj
  4. kháw maa càak prathêet năj
  5. kháw pen khèek, châj máj
  6. kháw thamŋaan rýplàaw
  7. kháw thamŋaan thîinăj

G. nîi rûup phanrajaa phôm. rûup nîi sǔaj mâak. kháw pen khon  
ciin, maa càak hōonkon. kháw mâj dâj thamnaan, pen  
mêebâan

1. nîi rûup phanrajaa phôm, châj máj
2. phanrajaa phôm pen khon châat araj
3. kháw pen khruu thîinǎj
4. rûup phanrajaa phôm sǔaj máj
5. phanrajaa phôm thamnaan rýplàaw

### 6.5 VOCABULARY

|            |                          |
|------------|--------------------------|
| ameerikaa  | America                  |
| ameerikan  | American                 |
| ankrít     | England, English         |
| india      | India, Indian            |
| indoniisia | Indonesia, Indonesian    |
| indianâa   | Indiana                  |
| italîan    | Italian (italîi 'Italy') |
| ósatreelia | Australia, Australian    |
| bóssatân   | Boston                   |
| càak       | from                     |
| caṅ        | extremely, a great deal  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

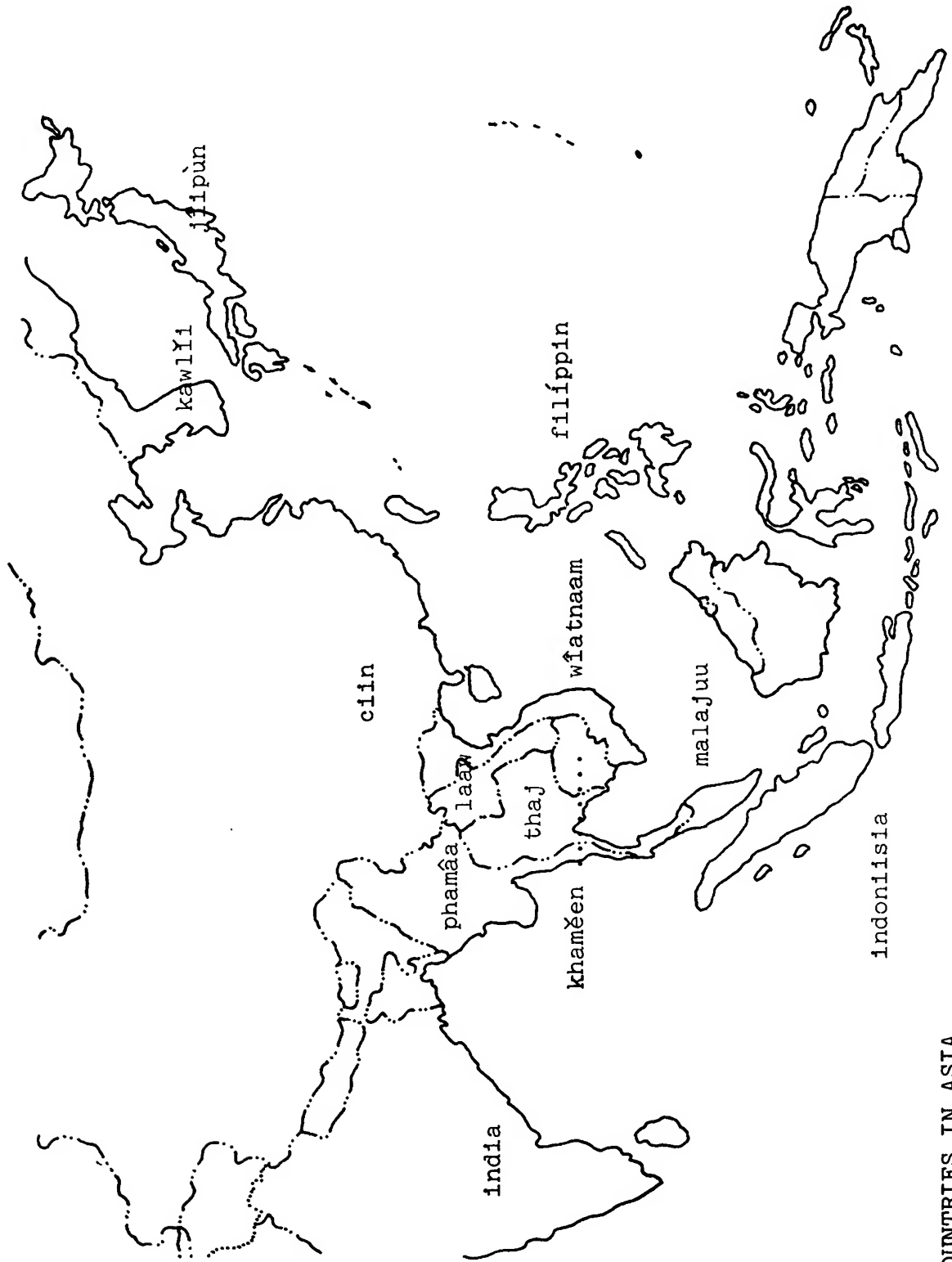
|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| châat (châat) | nationality, nation, race   |
| ciin          | China, Chinese  |
| denwêə        | Denver  |
| faràŋ (khon)  | white-skinned people, including Europeans, Australians, white Americans, etc. |
| faràŋsèet     | France, French  |
| filíppin      | Philippines, Philippine   |
| hŏŋkŏŋ        | Hong Kong   |
| jæraman       | Germany, German   |
| jŭipùn        | Japan, Japanese   |
| juan          | Vietnam, Vietnamese   |
| kawlŭi        | Korea, Korean   |
| kèŋ           | to be expert, skillful (at doing something)                                   |
| khamŕen       | Cambodia, Cambodian   |
| khèek (khon)  | dark-skinned people, Moslems and Hindus in particular                         |
| khŭan         | to write  |
| kruŋ (kruŋ)   | city (used to refer to some capitol cities)                                   |
| kruŋthêep     | Bangkok   |
| laaw          | Laos, Lao, Laotian  |
| loondŏn       | London  |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                   |                                  |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|
| mâak              | very much, a lot of              |
| malajuu           | Malaya                           |
| míchíkɛɛn         | Michigan                         |
| myaŋ (myaŋ)       | city, country (nation)           |
| nít nòɔj          | a little                         |
| njuu jóok         | New York                         |
| parít             | Paris                            |
| pattani           | Pattini (city in South Thailand) |
| phaasǎa (phaasǎa) | language, speech                 |
| phamâa            | Burma, Burmese                   |
| rát (rát)         | state, nation                    |
| rian              | to study, learn                  |
| room              | Rome                             |
| sapeen            | Spain                            |
| saan fransisko    | San Francisco                    |
| sɔɔn              | to teach                         |
| thaj              | Thai                             |
| thâwnán           | only, only that (much)           |
| tooklaw           | Tokyo                            |
| wíatnaam          | Vietnam, Vietnamese              |



# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON SEVEN

### 7.0 BASIC DIALOG: Mr. Smith meets a Thai in the Provinces

#### (Part II)

- A: paj nǎj khráp                      Where are you going?  
B: paj talàat khráp                      To the market.
- A: khun phûut phaasǎa thaj kèn        You speak Thai very well.  
caṅ pen khon châat araj                What is your nationality?  
B: phǒm pen khon ameerikan khráp      I'm an American.  
khǒothôot, khun phûut phaasǎa        Excuse me, do you speak  
aṅkrít pen máj khráp                    English?
- A: mâj pen khráp                        No, I don't.  
B: khun pen chaaw caṅwàt níi            Are you a native of this  
rýplàaw khráp                            changwat?
- A: plàaw khráp, phǒm maa càak        No, I'm from Lampang  
caṅwàt lampaan                            changwat.  
khun khəej paj máj khráp                Have you ever been there?  
B: mâj khəej khráp                        No, I haven't.  
juù thîi nǎj khráp                        Where is it?
- A: jùu naj phâak nǎa                      In the North.

#### 7.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) a caṅwàt is an administrative unit in the Thai government.  
It may be translated 'province'. There are 71 in Thailand.
- b) chaaw means 'resident' or 'native'.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- c) Observe the difference in meaning between kèn 'good' (in the sense of skillful) and dii 'good' (in general).

kháw pen khon dii

'He's a good (or nice) person.'

kháw rian nánsǎy kèn

'He's a good student (studies well).'

- d) paj nǎj is frequently used as a casual greeting.

### 7.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) khəej + Verb Phrase is used to refer to experience in the past.

kháw khəej pen khruu

'He used to be a teacher.'

khun khəej paj myan̄thaj máj

'Have you ever been to Thailand?'

The affirmative response to khəej + Verb Phrase + máj questions is khəej; the negative response is máj khəej.

- b) paj 'to go' and maa 'to come' may be followed by place expressions (roonrian, etc.) or by Verb Phrases indicating an activity (syy khǎon 'buy things', etc.). Either the place expression or Verb Phrase may be replaced by nǎj in questions, thus

Q: paj nǎj

'Where are you going? (or) 'What are you going (someplace) to do?'

A: paj roonrian

'(I'm) going to school.'

(or) paj syy khǎon '(I'm) going shopping.'

- c) Since the verb in Thai does not have changes in form to correlate with changes in time (tense changes), a sentence like phǎm paj roonrian might be interpreted as 'I'm going to school', 'I go to school', or 'I went to school'. This does not usually result in ambiguity, however, since the context the utterance occurs in usually makes it clear which interpretation is intended.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- d) The pronoun subject may be omitted anytime its omission does not result in misunderstanding. Observe these examples:

B: paj nǎj 'Where are (you) going?'

A: paj talàat khráp '(I'm) going to the market.'

The pronoun is sometimes omitted in statements; it is frequently omitted in questions, and is almost always omitted in responses to questions.

- e) The sentence + dâj construction is used to indicate that something is 'possible, suitable, all right', thus

phǒm phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj 'I can speak Thai.'

khun phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj máj 'Can you speak Thai?'

Affirmative response: dâj khráp 'Yes, I can.'

Negative response: mâj dâj khráp 'No, I can't.'

Since dâj is considered to be the main verb in constructions of this type, the negative mâj is placed just before it in negative statements, thus:

kháw paj talàat mâj dâj 'She is unable to go to the market.'

The subject of the sentence is the sentence kháw paj talàat.

- f) The Sentence + pen construction is used to indicate that 'someone knows how to perform some activity', thus:

Statement: phǒm khàp rót pen 'I know how to drive a car.'

Negative statement:

kháw lên dontrii mâj pen 'He doesn't know how to play a musical instrument.'

Question: khun lên dontrii thaj 'Can you play a Thai music?'

pen máj

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Affirmative response: pen khráp 'Yes, I can.'  
 Negative response: mâj pen khráp 'No, I can't.'

pen is considered the main verb in constructions of this type; consequently, the negative mâj is placed just in front of it, and it is the normal response to questions. The sentence khun lên dontrii thaj is the subject of the combined sentence.

- g) In situations where ability to do something is a matter of having learned the technique of doing it, either pen or dâj may be used interchangeably, thus:

phôm phût phaasǎa thaj  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{dâj} \\ \text{pen} \end{array} \right.$  'I can speak Thai.'

In situations in which inability to do something results not from a lack of technique or skill but for other reasons, only dâj and not pen can be used.

phôm khàp rót pen, tèe wanníi 'I know how to drive a car, but I can't drive today. I don't feel well.'  
khàp mâj dâj. phôm mâj sabaaj

- h) Both khæj 'used to' and dâj or pen can occur in the same sentence, thus:

kháw khæj lên dontrii pen 'He used to be able to play music.'

khun khæj phût phaasǎa ciin 'Were you formerly able to speak Chinese?'  
pen máj

The affirmative response to this question is khæj 'Yes, I was.', the negative response is mâj khæj 'No, I wasn't.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 7.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>              | <u>Pattern</u>                    |                                  |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. ráanaahǎan           | paj <u>ráanaahǎan</u> khráp       | (I'm) going to the restaurant.   |
| 2. roonrian             | paj <u>roonrian</u> khráp         | (I'm) going to the school.       |
| 3. thǐithamṇaan         | paj <u>thǐithamṇaan</u> khráp     | (I'm) going to the office.       |
| 4. talàat               | paj <u>talàat</u> khráp           | (I'm) going to the market.       |
| 5. roonphajabaan        | paj <u>roonphajabaan</u> khráp    | (I'm) going to the hospital.     |
| 6. thanakhaan           | paj <u>thanakhaan</u> khráp       | (I'm) going to the bank.         |
| 7. bâan                 | klàp <u>bâan</u> khráp            | (I'm) going home.                |
| 8. prajsanii            | paj <u>prajsanii</u> khráp        | (I'm) going to the Post Office.  |
| 9. ráankhǎajkhǒṇ        | paj <u>ráankhǎajkhǒṇ</u> khráp    | (I'm) going to the shops.        |
| 10. roonreem<br>eerawan | paj <u>roonreem eerawan</u> khráp | (I'm) going to the Erawan Hotel. |

#### b) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u>   | <u>Question</u>                       | <u>Response</u>                                   |
|--------------|---------------------------------------|---|
| roonrian     | paj nǎj khráp<br>Where are you going? | paj <u>roonrian</u> khráp<br>To school.           |
| thǐithamṇaan | paj nǎj khráp<br>Where are you going? | paj <u>thǐithamṇaan</u> khráp<br>To the office.   |
| ráanaahǎan   | paj nǎj khráp<br>Where are you going? | paj <u>ráanaahǎan</u> khráp<br>To the restaurant? |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|               |                                       |   |
|---------------|---------------------------------------|---|
| prajsani1     | paj nǎj khráp<br>Where are you going? | paj <u>prajsani1</u> khráp<br>To the Post Office. |
| ráankhǎajkhǒŋ | paj nǎj khráp<br>Where are you going? | paj <u>ráankhǎajkhǒŋ</u> khráp<br>To the shops.   |
| thanaakhaan   | paj nǎj khráp<br>Where are you going? | paj <u>thanaakhaan</u> khráp<br>To the bank.      |
| talàat        | paj nǎj khráp<br>Where are you going? | paj <u>talàat</u> khráp<br>To the market.         |
| bâan          | paj nǎj khráp<br>Where are you going? | klàp <u>bâan</u> khráp<br>Home.                   |

### c) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>  | <u>Pattern</u>                    |                              |
|-------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
|             | phǒm paj thamŋaan khráp           | I went <sup>1</sup> to work. |
| rian náŋsǎy | phǒm paj <u>rian náŋsǎy</u> khráp | I went to school.            |
| kháw        | <u>kháw</u> paj rian náŋsǎy khráp | He went to school.           |
| thĭaw       | kháw paj <u>thĭaw</u> khráp       | He went out (for fun).       |
| sýy khǒŋ    | kháw paj <u>sýy khǒŋ</u> khráp    | He went shopping.            |
| kin kaafɛɛ  | kháw paj <u>kin kaafɛɛ</u> khráp  | He went to drink coffee.     |
| kin khâaw   | kháw paj <u>kin khâaw</u> khráp   | He went to eat.              |
| sòŋ còtmǎaj | kháw paj <u>sòŋ còtmǎaj</u> khráp | He went to mail a letter.    |
| phǒm        | <u>phǒm</u> paj sòŋ còtmǎaj khráp | I went to mail off a letter. |
| hǎa mǒɔ     | phǒm paj <u>hǎa mǒɔ</u> khráp     | I went to see a doctor.      |
| thoorasàp   | phǒm paj <u>thoorasàp</u> khráp   | I went to telephone.         |
| thamŋaan    | phǒm paj <u>thamŋaan</u> khráp    | I went to work.              |

---

<sup>1</sup>paj could be translated as 'go, is/are going, or went'.



d) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u>                           | <u>Question</u>                       | <u>Response</u>   |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---|
| thamṇaan                             | paj nǎj khráp<br>Where are you going? | paj <u>thamṇaan</u> khráp<br>To work.   |
| roonṇrian                            | paj nǎj khráp<br>Where are you going? | paj <u>roonṇrian</u> khráp<br>To school.  |
| rian nǎnṣŷy                          | paj nǎj khráp<br>Where are you going? | paj <u>rian nǎnṣŷy</u> khráp<br>To study.   |
| sýy khṣṓṇ<br>thîi ráan               | paj nǎj khráp<br>Where are you going? | paj <u>sýy khṣṓṇ thîi ráan</u> khráp<br>To buy something at a shop.                           |
| sòṇ còtmǎaj                          | paj nǎj khráp<br>Where are you going? | paj <u>sòṇ còtmǎaj</u> khráp<br>To mail a letter.   |
| thoorasàp                            | paj nǎj khráp<br>Where are you going? | paj <u>thoorasàp</u> khráp<br>To telephone.   |
| thamṇaan                             | paj nǎj khráp<br>Where are you going? | paj <u>thamṇaan</u> khráp<br>To work.   |
| kin kaafɛɛ<br>thîi ráan<br>thíp thóp | paj nǎj khráp<br>Where are you going? | paj <u>kin kaafɛɛ thîi ráan</u><br><u>thíp thóp</u><br>To drink cofee at the<br>Tip Top shop. |
| kin khâaw thîi<br>raamâa             | paj nǎj khráp<br>Where are you going? | paj <u>kin khâaw thîi raamâa</u><br>To eat at the Rama.                                       |
| hǎa mṓṓ thîi<br>sǎathoon             | paj nǎj khráp<br>Where are you going? | paj <u>hǎa mṓṓ thîi sǎathoon</u><br>To see a doctor on<br>Sathorn (street).                   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                            |                                       |   |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|---|
| thîaw                      | paj nǎj khráp<br>Where are you going? | paj <u>thîaw</u><br>Out (for pleasure).   |
| thîaw talàatnát            | paj nǎj khráp<br>Where are you going? | paj <u>thîaw talàatnát</u><br>Out to the market<br>(special one day<br>market) for fun. |
| thurá thîi<br>sathǎanthûut | paj nǎj khráp<br>Where are you going? | paj <u>thurá thîi sathǎan<br/>thûut</u><br>To the embassy on<br>business.               |

### e) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>              | <u>Pattern</u>  |
|-------------------------|---|
| 1. chianmàj             | kháw maa càak caŋwàt <u>chianmàj</u><br>He comes from Chiangmai Province.         |
| 2. ùttaradìt            | kháw maa càak caŋwàt <u>ùttaradìt</u><br>He comes from Uttaradit Province.        |
| 3. phítsanulôok         | kháw maa càak caŋwàt <u>phítsanulôok</u> .<br>He comes from Pitsanuloke Province. |
| 4. udoon                | kháw maa càak caŋwàt <u>udoon</u> .<br>He comes from Udorn Province.              |
| 5. khǒon kèen           | kháw maa càak caŋwàt <u>khǒon kèen</u> .<br>He comes from Khonkaen Province.      |
| 6. nakhoon râatchasĩmaa | kháw maa càak caŋwàt <u>nakhoon râatchasĩmaa</u><br>He comes from Korat Province. |
| 7. lópburi              | kháw maa càak caŋwàt <u>lópburi</u> .<br>He comes from Lopburi Province.          |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

8. ajútthajaa kháw maa càak caṇwàt ajútthajaa.  
He comes from Ayuthaya Province.
9. krunthêep kháw maa càak krunthêep.<sup>1</sup>  
He comes from Bangkok.
10. raâtburii kháw maa càak caṇwàt raâtburii.  
He comes from Ratburi Province.
11. nakhoon sǐi kháw maa càak caṇwàt nakhoon sǐi thammarâat.  
thammarâat He comes from Nakorn Sri Thammarat Province.
12. phétburii kháw maa càak caṇwàt phétburii.  
He comes from Phetburi Province.
13. sǒṅkhlǎa kháw maa càak caṇwàt sǒṅkhlǎa.  
He comes from Songkla Province.
14. jalaa kháw maa càak caṇwàt jalaa.  
He comes from Yala Province.
15. ubon kháw maa càak caṇwàt ubon.

### f) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>                   | <u>Pattern</u>   |
|------------------------------|--|
| 1. jalaa                     | kháw pen chaaw <u>jalaa</u> .<br>He's a native of Yala.                                  |
| 2. sǒṅkhlǎa                  | kháw pen chaaw <u>sǒṅkhlǎa</u> .<br>He's a native of Songkla.                            |
| 3. nakhoon sǐi<br>thammarâat | kháw pen chaaw <u>nakhoon sǐi thammarâat</u> .<br>He's a native of Nakorn Sri Thammarat. |

---

<sup>1</sup>By government division it is called caṇwàt phránakhoon.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. phétburii                   kháw pen chaaw phétburii.  
                                  He's a native of Phetburi.
5. râatburii                   kháw pen chaaw râatburii.  
                                  He's a native of Ratburi.
6. krunthêep                  kháw pen chaaw krunthêep.  
                                  He's a native of Bangkok.
7. ajútthajaa                 kháw pen chaaw ajútthajaa.  
                                  He's a native of Ayuthaya.
8. lópburii                   kháw pen chaaw lópburii.  
                                  He's a native of Lopburi.
9. khorâat                   kháw pen chaaw khorâat.  
                                  He's a native of Khorat.
10. ubon                      kháw pen chaaw ubon.  
                                  He's a native of Ubol.
11. khǒn kĕen                 kháw pen chaaw khǒn kĕen  
                                  He's a native of Khonkaen.
12. udǒn                      kháw pen chaaw udǒn  
                                  He's a native of Udon.
13. phítsanulôok             kháw pen chaaw phítsanulôok  
                                  He's a native of Pitsanuloke.
14. uttaradìt                 kháw pen chaaw uttaradìt.  
                                  He's a native of Uttaradit.
15. chiaṅmàj                 kháw pen chaaw chiaṅmàj  
                                  He's a native of Chiangmai.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### g) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Question</u>   | <u>Response</u>   |
|------------|---|---|
| klaan      | lópburì jùu naj phâak araj<br>What part (of Thailand)<br>is Lopburi in? | jùu naj phâak <u>klaan</u><br>It's in the Central part. |
| nÿa        | chianmàj jùu naj phâak araj<br>What part is Chiangmai in?               | jùu naj phâak <u>nÿa</u><br>It's in the Northern part.  |
| isăan      | udoon jùu naj phâak araj<br>What part is Udorn in?                      | jùu naj phâak <u>isăan</u><br>It's in the N.E. part.    |
| nÿa        | uttaradìt jùu naj phâak araj<br>What part is Uttaradit in?              | jùu naj phâak <u>nÿa</u><br>It's in the Northern part.  |
| isăan      | khōnkēen jùu naj phâak araj<br>What part is Konkaen in?                 | jùu naj phâak <u>isăan</u><br>It's in the N.E. part.    |
| klaan      | phétburì jùu naj phâak araj<br>What part is Petburi in?                 | jùu naj phâak <u>klaan</u><br>It's in the Central part. |
| tâj        | sōnkhlăa jùu naj phâak araj<br>What part is Songkla in?                 | jùu naj pàk <u>tâj</u><br>It's in the Southern part.    |
| isăan      | khoorâat jùu naj phâak araj<br>What part is Korat in?                   | jùu naj phâak <u>isăan</u><br>It's in the N.E. part.    |
| tâj        | jalaa jùu naj phâak araj<br>What part is Yala in?                       | jùu naj pàk <u>tâj</u><br>It's in the Southern part.    |
| isăan      | ubon jùu naj phâak araj<br>What part is Ubol in?                        | jùu naj phâak <u>isăan</u><br>It's in the N.E. part.    |

h) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

Pattern 2

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. kháw maa càak caŋwàt chianmàj.<br>He comes from Chiangmai<br>Province.      | kháw pen khon chianmàj.<br>He's a native of Chiangmai<br>Province.      |
| 2. kháw maa càak caŋwàt jalaa.<br>He comes from Yala<br>Province.              | kháw pen khon jalaa.<br>He's a native of Yala<br>Province.              |
| 3. kháw maa càak caŋwàt lópburii.<br>He comes from Lopburi<br>Province.        | kháw pen khon lópburii.<br>He's a native of<br>Lopburi Province.        |
| 4. kháw maa càak caŋwàt ajútthajaa.<br>He comes from Ayuthaya<br>Province.     | kháw pen khon ajútthajaa.<br>He's a native of Ayuthaya<br>Province.     |
| 5. kháw maa càak caŋwàt ùttaradit.<br>He comes from Uttaradit<br>Province.     | kháw pen khon ùttaradit<br>He's a native of Uttaradit<br>Province.      |
| 6. kháw maa càak caŋwàt phítsanulôok<br>He comes from Pitsanuloke<br>Province. | kháw pen khon phítsanulôok<br>He's a native of<br>Pitsanuloke Province. |
| 7. kháw maa càak krunthêep<br>He comes from Bangkok.                           | kháw pen khon krunthêep<br>He's a 'Bangkoker'.                          |
| 8. kháw maa càak tàaŋcaŋwàt<br>He's from the provinces.                        | kháw pen khon tàaŋcaŋwàt<br>He's a 'out-of-towner.'                     |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1) Response Drill

|                   |                                 |                                  |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Teacher:          | jalaa                           | Yala.                            |
| <u>Student 1:</u> | kháw maa càak caṅwàt<br>jalaa.  | He comes from Yala<br>Province.  |
| <u>Student 2:</u> | kháw pen khon jalaa<br>rǎ khráp | He's a native of<br>Yala, is he? |
| <u>Student 1:</u> | khráp                           | Yes (he is).                     |

Continue the drill by substituting the following names for Yala:

- |               |                             |
|---------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. ubon       | 9. ùttaradìt                |
| 2. udooṅ      | 10. phítsanulôok            |
| 3. lópburií   | 11. khǒnkhèen               |
| 4. ajútthajaa | 12. nakhoon sǐi thamarâat   |
| 5. chianmàj   | 13. nakhoon râat chasǐmaa   |
| 6. râatburií  | 14. phránakhoon / krunthêep |
| 7. phétburií  | 15. jalaa                   |
| 8. sǒṅkhlǎa   |                             |

### j) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

kháw pen khon lópburií.  
kháw pen khon jalaa.  
kháw pen khon sǒṅkhlǎa  
kháw pen khon phítsanulôok  
kháw pen khon khǒnkhèen  
kháw pen khon krunthêep  
kháw pen khon tàaṅcaṅwàt

#### Pattern 2

kháw pen chaaw lópburií.  
kháw pen chaaw jalaa.  
kháw pen chaaw sǒṅkhlǎa  
kháw pen chaaw phítsanulôok  
kháw pen chaaw khǒnkhèen  
kháw pen chaaw krunthêep  
kháw pen chaaw tàaṅcaṅwàt





## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### m) Substitution Drill

Teacher: kháw maa càak phâak klaaŋ He comes from the  
Central part.  
: isǎan Northeast.

Student: kháw maa càak phâak isǎan He comes from the  
Northeast.

Continue the drill by substituting the following items  
after phâak:

- |          |          |           |
|----------|----------|-----------|
| 1. nǎa   | 4. klaaŋ | 8. klaaŋ  |
| 2. tâj   | 5. isǎan | 9. tâj    |
| 3. isǎan | 6. tâj   | 10. klaaŋ |
|          | 7. nǎa   |           |

### n) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern 1</u>   | <u>Pattern 2</u>  |
|------------|--|---|
| 1. nǎa     | kháw maa càak phâak <u>nǎa</u> .<br>He comes from the North.             | kháw pen khon phâak <u>nǎa</u> .<br>He's a Northerner.                      |
| 2. isǎan   | kháw maa càak phâak <u>isǎan</u> .<br>He comes from the<br>Northeast.    | kháw pen khon phâak <u>isǎan</u> .<br>He's a 'Northeasterner'.              |
| 3. tâj     | kháw maa càak pàk <u>tâj</u> .<br>He comes from the South.               | kháw pen khon pàk <u>tâj</u> .<br>He's a Southerner.                        |
| 4. klaaŋ   | kháw maa càak phâak <u>klaaŋ</u> .<br>He comes from the<br>Central part. | kháw pen khon phâak <u>klaaŋ</u> .<br>He's a native of the<br>Central part. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### o) Substitution Drill

Teacher: tâj South

Student 1: kháw maa càak pàk tâj He comes from the South.

Student 2: kháw pen khon pàk tâj rǎy Is he a Southerner?

Student 1: khráp Yes, he is.

Continue the drill by substituting the following items for tâj:

- |          |          |           |
|----------|----------|-----------|
| 1. klaaŋ | 4. tâj   | 8. tâj    |
| 2. nǎa   | 5. nǎa   | 9. nǎa    |
| 3. isǎan | 6. isǎan | 10. isǎan |
|          | 7. klaaŋ |           |

### p) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern 1</u>  | <u>Pattern 2</u>  |
|------------|---|---|
| 1. nǎa     | kháw pen khon phâak <u>nǎa</u> .<br>He's a Northerner.                      | kháw pen chaaw <u>nǎa</u> .<br>He's a Northerner.                       |
| 2. isǎan   | kháw pen khon phâak <u>isǎan</u> .<br>He's a Northeasterner.                | kháw pen chaaw <u>isǎan</u> .<br>He's a Northeasterner.                 |
| 3. tâj     | kháw pen khon pàk <u>tâj</u> .<br>He's a Southerner.                        | kháw pen chaaw <u>tâj</u> .<br>He's a Southerner.                       |
| 4. klaaŋ   | kháw pen khon phâak <u>klaaŋ</u> .<br>He's a native of the<br>Central part. | kháw pen chaaw phâak <u>klaaŋ</u> .<br>He's a Central Thai<br>resident. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### q) Response Drill

Teacher: tâj South.

Student 1: khun maa càak phâak nǎj What part do you  
come from?

Student 2: pàk tâj From the South.

Student 1: ô, khun pen chaaw pàk Oh, you're a  
tâj rǎkhráp Southerner?

Student 2: khráp Yes, I am.

Continue the drill by substituting the following words  
for tâj:

- |          |          |        |          |
|----------|----------|--------|----------|
| 1. nǎa   | 3. klaan | 5. nǎa | 7. isǎan |
| 2. isǎan | 4. tâj   | 6. tǎj | 8. nǎa   |

### r) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. khon phâak klaan phûut phaasǎa<br>krunthêep     | People from Central Thailand<br>speak Bangkok Thai. |
| 2. khon pàk tâj phûut phaasǎa<br>pàk tâj           | Southerners speak Southern<br>Thai.                 |
| 3. khon phâak isǎan phûut phaasǎa<br>(phâak) isǎan | Northeasterners speak<br>Northeastern Thai.         |
| 4. khon phâak nǎa phûut phaasǎa<br>(phâak) nǎa     | Northerners speak Northern<br>Thai                  |

**THAI BASIC COURSE**

---

s) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>             | <u>Pattern</u>   |
|------------------------|--|
|                        | khun khəej <u>paj myan̄thaj</u> máj<br>Have you ever been to Thailand?           |
| rúucàk kháw            | khun khəej <u>rúucàk kháw</u> máj<br>Have you ever met him?                      |
| paj chian̄màj          | khun khəej <u>paj chian̄màj</u> máj<br>Have you ever been to Chiangmai?          |
| rian phaasǎa farànsèet | khun khəej <u>rian phaasǎa farànsèet</u> máj.<br>Have you ever studied French?   |
| jùu tàan̄prathêet      | khun khəej <u>jùu tàan̄prathêet</u> máj<br>Have you ever lived abroad?           |
| tham̄naan kàp kháw     | khun khəej <u>tham̄naan kàp kháw</u> máj<br>Have you ever worked with him?       |
| pen khruu              | khun khəej <u>pen khruu</u> máj<br>Were you ever a teacher?                      |
| lên don̄tri1 pen       | khun khəej <u>lên don̄tri1</u> pen máj<br>Did you used to be able to play music? |

t) Response Drill (Answers based on facts)

|        |                 |                                 |                                    |
|--------|-----------------|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| MODEL: | <u>Teacher:</u> | khun khəej paj<br>myan̄thaj máj | Have you ever been<br>to Thailand? |
|        | <u>Student:</u> | mâj khəej khráp<br>khəej khráp  | No, I haven't.<br>Yes, I have.     |

1. khun khəej thaan aahǎan thaj máj      Have you ever eaten Thai food?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 2. khun khəej rúucàk diin ras(k) máj                           | Have you ever met Dean Rusk?                 |
| 3. khun khəej paj thfaw júróop máj                             | Have you ever been to Europe?                |
| 4. khun khəej paj thamnaan kàp khun<br>(name of a student) máj | Have you ever worked with<br>_____?          |
| 5. khun khəej phûut phaasăa thaj<br>kàp khon thaj máj          | Have you ever talked Thai<br>with a Thai?    |
| 6. khun khəej phûut phaasăa ciin<br>dâj. máj                   | Did you used to be able to<br>speak Chinese? |

u) Combination Drill (Combine these sentences with dâj.)

1. kháw phûut phaasăa thaj
2. phanrajaa kháw paj thfaw
3. phûujĩŋ khon nán tênram
4. thahăan khon nán wâajnáam
5. nákrían khon níi àan nánsŷy thaj
6. khèek malajuu phûut phaasăa thaj
7. khruu farànsèet khon nán phûut phaasăa jèeraman
8. khun prasəet lèn dontrii
9. khun prapâat paj lèn kóof
10. faràŋ khon nán lèn dontrii thaj

v) Combination Drill (Combine the sentences in drill s with mâj dâj.)

w) Response Drill (Give an affirmative response to each questions.)

| <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>           |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1. kháw phûut phaasăa jĩipùn dâj máj<br>Can he speak Japanese? | dâj khráp<br>Yes, he can. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 2. phanrajaa kháw paj thĭaw dĭj mâj<br>Can his wife go out for pleasure?                                | dĭj khráp<br>Yes, she can.  |
| 3. khun pĕet nĕatĕan dĭj máj<br>Can you open the window?  | dĭj khráp<br>Yes, I can.    |
| 4. nákrĭan khon nán duu nánsŷy dĭj máj<br>Is that student able to look at<br>the book (or do homework)? | dĭj khráp<br>Yes, he is.    |
| 5. khon ciin phŭut phaasĕa ciin dĭj máj<br>Can Chinese people speak Chinese?                            | dĭj khráp<br>Yes, they can. |
| 6. chŭaj sŏn dĭnsŏ hĭj phŏm dĭj máj<br>Can you hand me the pencil, please?                              | dĭj khráp<br>Yes, I can     |
| 7. khruu phĭan khun sŏn phaasĕa ankrĭt dĭj máj<br>Can your friend's teacher teach English?              | dĭj khráp<br>Yes, she can.  |
| 8. kháw paj sŷy khŏn dĭj máj<br>Can she go shopping?  | dĭj khráp<br>Yes, she can.  |
| 9. khun jŭu tĕanprathĕet dĭj máj<br>Can you live abroad?  | dĭj khráp<br>Yes, I can.    |
| 10. kháw rĭan phaasĕa phamĕa dĭj máj<br>Is he able to study Burmese?                                    | dĭj khráp<br>Yes, he is.    |
- x) Response Drill. (Give negative responses to the questions in drill u.)

y) Combination Drill (Combine the following sentences with pen.)

1. kháw khàp rót
2. phǒm lên dontrií
3. phanrajaa kháw tham kàpkhâaw
4. kháw khĩan phaasǎa ciin
5. khun thǎawoon phim nánsǎy
6. phũuchĩawchaan khon nán lên tennít
7. nákrían khon nán phũut phaasǎa tàanprathêet
8. phyan khun kêe rót
9. khruu kháw sǎon nánsǎy
10. phǒm phũut phaasǎa rátsia

z) Combination Drill (Combine the sentences in drill w with mâj pen.)

aa) Response Drill

Respond to the following questions affirmatively or negatively as the situation indicates using pen or mâj pen.

1. khun tham kàpkhâaw pen máj
2. khèek india phũut phaasǎa juan pen máj
3. nákrían thĩnĩi wâaj náam pen máj
4. khon juan phũut phaasǎa phamâa pen máj
5. khruu khun sǎon nánsǎy pen máj
6. khun lên dontrií pen máj
7. phyan khon thaj khǎon khun kêe rót pen máj
8. faràn khon nán phũut phaasǎa thaj pen máj
9. sǎamii khun mǎerĩi sýy aahǎan pen máj
10. phyan khun khàp rya pen máj

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### ab) Situation Response Drill

Listen to the description of the situation and to the cue words, then one student forms a question with pen or dâj and another answers it. Both the question and the answer should fit the situation.

|    | <u>Situation</u>  | <u>Cue words</u>                               | <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>                    |
|----|---|--|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. | kháw mâj sabaaj<br><br>He's ill.  | khàp rôt<br><br>drive<br>(a car)               | kháw khàp rôt<br>dâj máj<br>Can he drive?                                | mâj dâj khráp<br><br>No, he can't. |
| 2. | kháw mâj khœaj<br>lên dontrii<br><br>He's never<br>played music           | lên dontrii<br><br>play music                  | kháw lên<br>dontrii pen<br>máj<br>Can he play<br>music?                  | mâj pen<br><br>No, he can't.       |
| 3. | khun malícan<br>tham kàpkhâaw<br>thúk wan<br>Malichanh cooks<br>everyday. | tham kàpkhâaw<br><br>cook                      | kháw tham<br>kàpkhâaw<br>pen máj<br>Can she cook?                        | pen khráp<br><br>Yes, she can.     |
| 4. | kháw pen khon<br>farànsèet<br><br>He's French.                            | phûut phaasăa<br>farànsèet<br><br>speak French | kháw phûut<br>phaasăa<br>farànsèet<br>dâj máj<br>Can he speak<br>French? | dâj khráp<br><br>Yes, he can.      |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |     |   |   |   |                                    |
|-----|---|---|---|------------------------------------|
| 5.  | kháw pen phôokháa<br><br>He's a merchant.   | khǎaj khǒŋ<br><br>sell things           | kháw khǎaj<br>khǒŋ pen<br>máj<br>Can he sell<br>things?                     | pen khráp<br><br>Yes, he can.      |
| 6.  | kháw mâj khəej<br>rian phaasǎa<br>thaj<br><br>He has never<br>studied Thai.                                     | khǎan phaasǎa<br>thaj<br><br>write Thai | kháw khǎan<br>phaasǎa thaj<br>dâj máj<br>Can he write<br>Thai?              | mâj dâj khráp<br><br>No, he can't. |
| 7.  | kháw pen thahǎan<br>rya<br><br>He's a sailor.   | wâaj náam<br><br>swim                   | kháw wâaj náam<br>pen máj<br>Can he swim?                                   | pen khráp<br><br>Yes, he can.      |
| 8.  | kháw khəej pen<br>khruu phaasaǎ<br>ciin<br><br>He used to be a<br>Chinese teacher.                              | phûut phaasǎa<br>ciin<br><br>speak      | kháw phûut<br>phaasǎa ciin<br>dâj máj<br>Can he speak<br>Chinese?           | dâj khráp<br><br>Yes, he can.      |
| 9.  | phǎan khǒŋ phǒm<br>mâj khəej khàp<br>rót læj<br><br>My friend has<br>never driven a<br>car at all.              | khàprót<br><br>drive a car              | kháw khàp rót<br>pen máj<br>Can he drive<br>a car?                          | mâj pen khráp<br><br>No, he can't. |
| 10. | saamǎi khun<br>nonkhraan paj<br>talàat thúk wan<br><br>Nongkran's<br>husband goes<br>to the market<br>everyday. | sýy kàpkhâaw<br><br>buy food            | kháw sýy<br>kàpkhâaw<br>pen máj<br>Does he know<br>how to shop<br>for food? | pen khráp<br><br>Yes, he does.     |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 7.4 EXERCISES

- a) Find out what section and province different instructors come from.
- b) Find out which students in the class know how to:
- |                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. drive a car | 5. dance        |
| 2. cook        | 6. type         |
| 3. play tennis | 7. play music   |
| 4. swim        | 8. repair a car |

Find out if they do the above things well.

- c) Ask a student if he is able to:
- |                             |                        |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. close the classroom door | 4. turn off the lights |
| 2. open the window          | 5. open the door       |
| 3. open his book            | 6. close his notebook  |

If he says he is able to do so, ask him to do it.  
If he says he is unable to do so, tell him not to do it.

- d) Find out if different student in the class have ever:
1. been to various countries
  2. lived in different provinces in Thailand
  3. been to different cities and countries on pleasure trips
  4. lived in various cities and states in the U.S.

- e) Give each student in the class an index card, on which he is to write 6 items of information taken from the following categories:

- I. Name: self, wife, relations, teacher, friend, etc.
- II. Occupation
- III. Location of occupation: place, city, country, part of country, etc.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- IV. Nationality: country, state, province, etc.
- V. Language speaking ability: native, others, dialects of languages
- VI. Travel experience: Travel or residence, for pleasure or business
- VII. Skills: driving a car, playing tennis, playing music, etc.

The students take turns asking questions so as to find out what has been written on the card. All students take notes.

As soon as the information on a card has been discovered, another student is quizzed about the information on his card. Continue this until all cards have been examined.

### 7.5 VOCABULARY

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| ajútthajaa       | Ayuthaya (city in Central Thailand)      |
| eerawan          | Erawan (name of hotel)                   |
| isǎan            | northeast (in Thailand)                  |
| ubon             | Ubon (city in Northeast Thailand)        |
| udoon            | Udorn (city in Northeast Thailand)       |
| ùttaradìt        | Uttaradit (city in North Thailand)       |
| bâan (lǎn)       | house, home                              |
| caṇwàt           | province                                 |
| chaaw (khon)     | resident, native                         |
| chianmàj         | Chiangmai (city in North Thailand)       |
| còtmǎaj (chabàp) | letter (to mail)                         |
| diin ras(k)      | Dean Rusk                                |
| dontrii          | music                                    |
| hǎa              | (to go) to see, visit, to look for, seek |
| jalaa            | Yala (city in South Thailand)            |

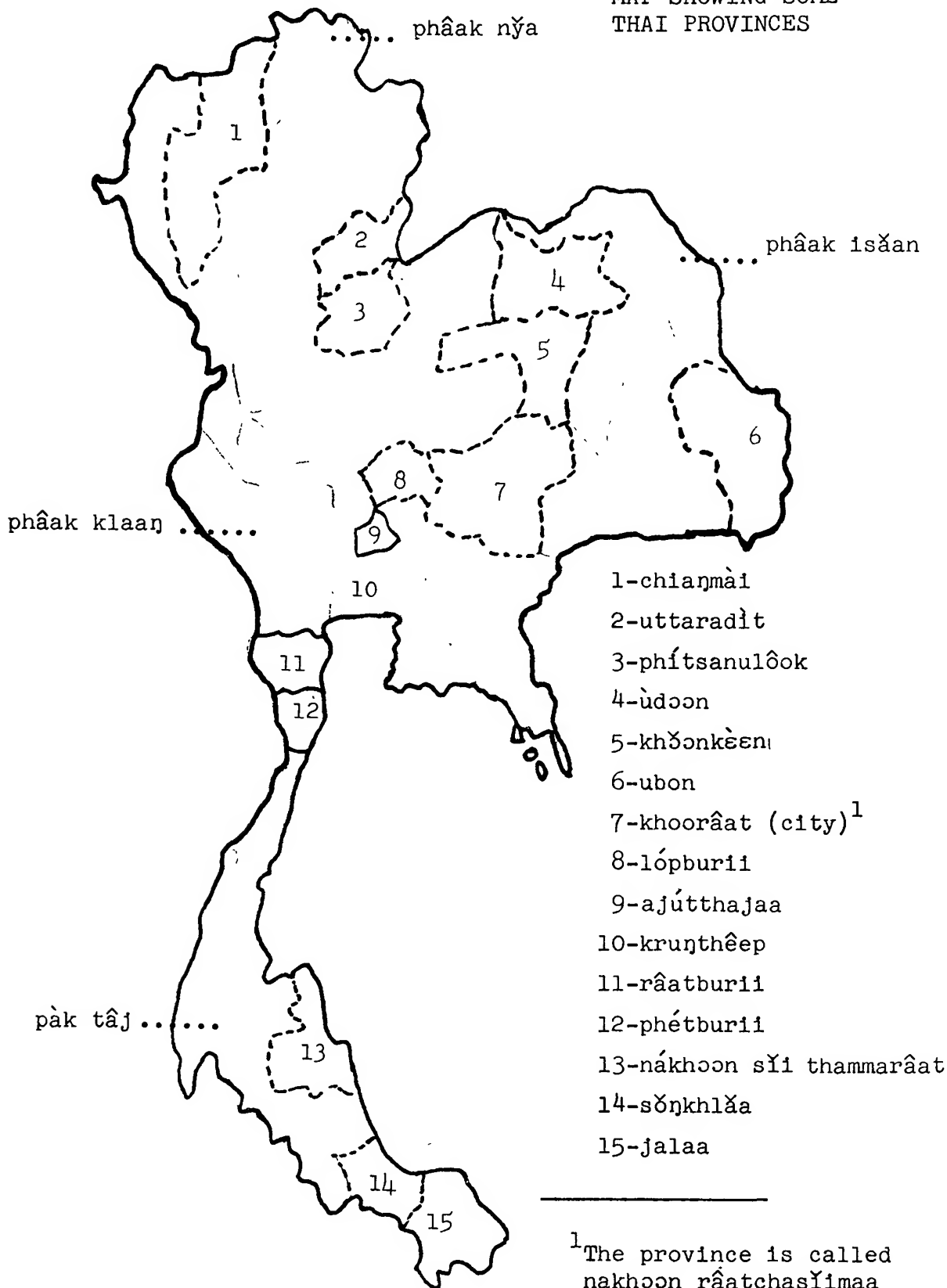
## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| jùu                   | to live, stay; to be located at  |
| júròop                | Europe   |
| kaafɛɛ                | coffee   |
| kàp, ka-              | with   |
| kàpkhâaw              | food, something to eat with rice   |
| kêɛ                   | to fix, correct (something)  |
| khâaw                 | rice   |
| khàp rôt              | to drive a car   |
| khəəj                 | to have ever (done something) used to<br>(be something, etc.)                |
| khǝnkɛɛn              | Khonkaen (city in Northeastern Thailand)                                     |
| khǝŋ                  | thing, object, of, belonging to  |
| kin                   | to eat or drink something (common usage)                                     |
| klaan                 | central, middle, neutral   |
| klàp... (paj/maa)     | to go back (return), to come back  |
| lên                   | to play (games, music, etc.)   |
| lópburii              | Lopburi (city in Central Thailand)   |
| mǝɔ (khon)            | doctor (medical)   |
| nakhòon râatchasimaa  | Korat (Nakorn rachasima) (city in<br>Northeastern Thailand)                  |
| nakhòonsǝi thammarâat | Nakorn Sri Thammarat (city in Southern<br>Thailand)                          |
| nǝa                   | north, above   |
| pàk                   | part (with <u>pàk tǝj</u> 'Southern Part' only)                              |
| phâak (phâak)         | part, region, section  |
| phétburii             | Phetburi (city in Central Thailand)  |
| phim (dǝit)           | to typewrite   |
| phítsanulôok          | Pitsanuloke (city in Northern Thailand)                                      |
| phránakòon            | Bangkok (official name of the province<br>the city of Bangkok is located in) |
| prajsanii             | the post office  |

|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| raamâa                    | the Rama (name of a hotel in Bangkok)                                |
| ráan (hèn, ráan)          | shop, store  |
| ráanaahăan (ráan)         | restaurant   |
| ráankhăajkhǎon (ráan)     | shop, store  |
| râatburii                 | Ratburi (city in Central Thailand)                                   |
| roonphajabaan (roon, hèn) | hospital   |
| roonrĕem (roonrĕem-hèn)   | hotel  |
| rót (khan)                | car  |
| rýplàaw                   | question word (negative)   |
| săathoon                  | Sathorn (street in Bangkok)  |
| sathăanthûut (hèn)        | embassy  |
| sǎnkhlăa                  | Songkla (city in South Thailand)                                     |
| sýy                       | to buy, (with <u>khǎon</u> 'to shop')                                |
| tàanĉanwát                | in the provinces, out-of-town  |
| tâj                       | South, under   |
| talàat (hèn)              | market   |
| talàat nát (hèn)          | a special kind of market which is<br>open regularly on a certain day |
| tennít                    | tennis   |
| tênram                    | to dance (Western style)   |
| thaan                     | to eat, drink (elegant term)   |
| tham                      | to do, make  |
| thamĉaan                  | to work  |
| thanaakhaan (hèn)         | bank   |
| thĭithamĉaan (hèn, thĭi)  | office   |
| thĭp thǎop                | Tip Top (name of a coffee shop)                                      |
| thoorasàp                 | to telephone, a telephone  |
| wâajnáam                  | to swim  |

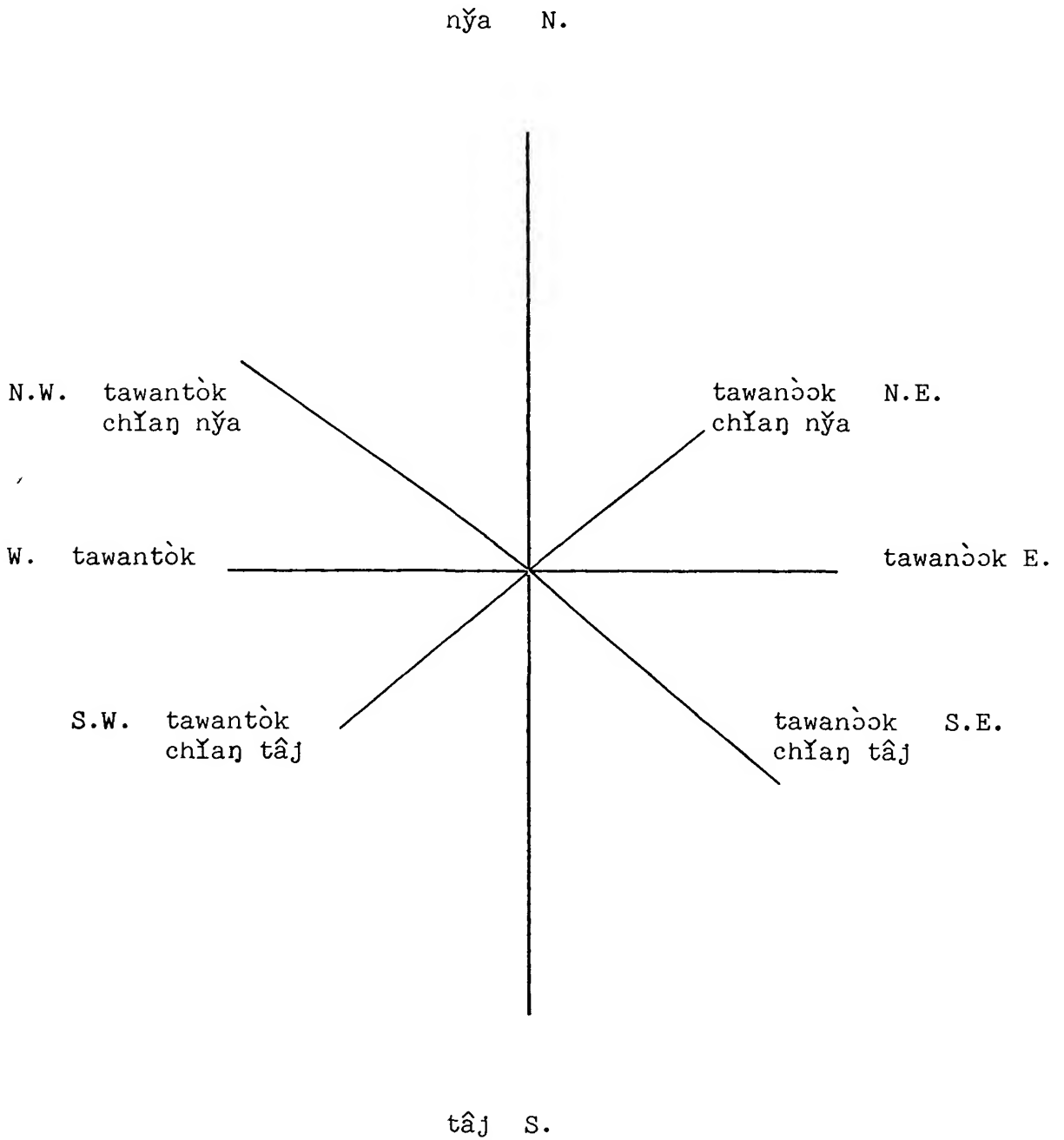
MAP SHOWING SOME  
THAI PROVINCES



THAI BASIC COURSE

---

CHART SHOWING COMPASS POINTS



# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON EIGHT

### 8.0 BASIC DIALOG: Americans at Work in Bangkok.

- A: paj năj khráp                      Where are you going?  
B: paj thamṇaan khráp                  I'm going to work.
- A: khun thamṇaan thīinăj khráp        Where do you work?  
B: phǒm thamṇaan thīi sathăanthûut     I work at the American  
    ameerikan khráp                      Embassy.
- A: phŷan khṓṓṇ khun thamṇaan thīi     Does your friend work  
    sathăanthûut mŷankan răkhráp        at the Embassy too?  
B: plàaw khráp                              No, he doesn't.
- A: kháw thamṇaan araj khráp              What does he do?  
B: kháw pen cāwnâathīi juusít khráp     He's a USIS officer.
- A: thīithamṇaan khṓṓṇ kháw jùu         Where's his office?  
    thīinăj khráp  
B: jùu thīi thanǒn săathoon tâj          On South Sathorn Street.  
    khráp

### 8.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

#### a) Thai Compounds

Thai compounds like those of any other language can be explained in terms of the regular rules of syntax of the language. If asked, the native speaker can provide a derivation for any particular compound. For example, if asked to explain (provide a derivation) for the compound Parking permit, a native speaker of English would probably say 'It's a permit for parking your car', or 'It's a permit needed for parking your car', or something like that. Although there is an obvious meaning relationship between these derivations and the compound, the syntax is not the same.



The relationship between a compound and any of its derivations in Thai reveals the same kind of similarities and differences. If you do not know the meaning of a Thai compound, ask any of your instructors. They will provide you with a derivation that should make the meaning clear. If you decide to originate Thai compounds, you will find that you have only limited success. This should not inhibit you from doing this, but you should check your efforts with the native speaker before using them.

In this text compounds will be analyzed into their constituent parts and the meaning of each part will be given, and the meaning of the compound as a whole will be given. In some cases the form class of the parts will be given, thus: Noun + Noun: sathǎan 'place' + thûut 'Ambassador', This will be done to illustrate the different kinds of compounds in Thai.

1. Noun Compound: Noun + Noun

sathǎanthûut 'embassy': sathǎan 'place' + thûut 'ambassador'

câwnâathîi 'official, officer, staff member': câw 'ruler' + nâathîi 'duty'. This word is normally followed by a particular office, as in câwnâathîi tamruàt 'police official', etc.

thahǎanbòk 'soldier': thahǎan 'military person' + bòk 'earth'; rya 'boat', aakaat 'air', thus thahǎanrya 'sailor' and thahǎanaakaat 'airman'.

khâarâatchakaan 'government employee'. khâa 'servant' + râatcha- 'pertaining to the king' + kaan 'work, affairs' khâarâatchakaan thahǎan 'military government employee' khâarâatchakaan phonlaryan 'civilian government employee', krasuan taan prathêet 'Ministry of Foreign Affairs': krasuan 'ministry' + taan 'different, other' + prathêet 'country'. krasuan + kalaahôm 'defense' means 'Ministry of Defense'.

krom tamruàt 'police Department': krom 'department' (major subdivision of a ministry) + tamruàt 'police'.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

kooŋ tháp bók 'The Army': kooŋ tháp 'military forces' + bók 'land'; kooŋ tháp rya 'The Navy': kooŋ tháp + rya 'boat'; kooŋ tháp akaat 'The Air Forces': kooŋ tháp + akaat 'air'.

nítsít was used originally to refer to students who lived in. Now only part of the students live at Chulalongkorn, Kasetsart, and the Fine Arts University, but students at those universities are still called nítsít. Students at Thammasart University are called náksýksǎa. Other students are called nákrián.

chaawnaa 'rice farmer'; chaawsǎan 'gardener, orchardist', or 'person who works on a rubber plantation'; chaawráj 'an upland farmer who grows crops like tobacco, tapioca, corn, etc. phôokháa 'merchant'; phôo 'male engaged in' + kháa 'trade'. roonphajabaan 'hospital': roon 'building' + phajabaan 'to nurse'.

naanphajabaan 'female nurse': naan 'woman' + phajabaan

### 2. Noun Compound: Noun + Verb

phûuchíawchaan 'expert': phûu 'person, one who' + chíawchaan 'to be expert, experienced.'

náksýksǎa 'student (in college or university)': nák- 'one who (agent noun) + sýksǎa 'to study'

phûu occurs before a large number of verbs to form agent noun compounds (like -er in English farmer). It rarely occurs alone.

nák- 'expert, authority' occurs before a limited number of verbs to form agent nouns. It can not occur alone. Other examples are nákkhǎan 'author', nákdontrií 'musician', etc.

- b) Noun compounds (like those just described) take the same position as single nouns in compounds, for example:

câwnâathíi tamrát khon níi 'This police official'

náksýksǎa sìi khon nán 'Those 4 students'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- c) jùu 'to be located at, live at' is normally followed by place expressions:

juusôm jùu thîi thanôn phétburi 'USOM is on Petburi Street'.

- d) The question khun thamnaan araj 'What do you do?' can be answered in either of the following ways:

phôm pen (câwnâathîi juusít, etc.) 'I am a USIS officer, etc.'

phôm thamnaan thîi (sathăanthût ameerikan, etc.) 'I work at the American Embassy, etc.'

- e) Although both paj năj (see 7.2b) and paj thîinăj mean 'Where are (you) going?', they are used in different situations and receive different answers:

Q: paj năj 'Where are you going?'

A: paj thaan khâaw 'I'm going to eat.'

Q: ca paj thaan thîinăj 'Where are you going to eat?'

A: (thîi) ráanaahăan sôn dɛɛŋ 'at the Red Arrow Restaurant'.

paj thîinăj is used when you wish to specify the place.

### 8.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |                            |                    |
|----------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. kháw pen khruu.         | He's a teacher.    |
| 2. kháw pen nákrían.       | He's a student.    |
| 3. kháw pen mǎo.           | He's a doctor.     |
| 4. kháw pen mĕɛbâan.       | She's a housewife. |
| 5. kháw pen naanphajabaan. | She's a nurse.     |
| 6. kháw pen thahăan        | He's a             |
| { rya                      | { sailor           |
| { bók                      | { soldier.         |
| { aakàat                   | { airman           |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |     |                           |   |
|-----|---------------------------|---|
| 7.  | kháw pen phôokháa.        | He's a merchant.                          |
| 8.  | kháw pen phûuchfawchaan.  | He's an expert<br>(or specialist).        |
| 9.  | kháw pen wítsawákoon.     | He's an engineer.                         |
| 10. | kháw pen phátthanaakoon.  | He's a community develop-<br>ment worker. |
| 11. | kháw pen khâarâatchakaan. | They're government<br>employees.          |
| 12. | kháw pen tamrùat.         | He's a policeman.                         |
| 13. | kháw pen chaawnaa.        | He's a rice farmer.                       |
| 14. | kháw pen chaawsŭan.       | He's a gardener.                          |
| 15. | kháw pen chaawrâj.        | He's a crop farmer.                       |

### b) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>     | <u>Pattern</u>                 |   |
|----------------|--------------------------------|---|
|                | kháw pen khruu                 | He's a teacher.                         |
| phôm           | <u>phôm</u> pen khruu          | I'm a teacher.                          |
| tamrùat        | phôm pen <u>tamrùat</u>        | I'm a policeman.                        |
| mǔo            | phôm pen <u>mǔo</u>            | I'm a doctor.                           |
| thahǎan rya    | phôm pen <u>thahǎan rya</u>    | I'm a sailor.                           |
| phôokháa       | phôm pen <u>phôokháa</u>       | I'm a merchant.                         |
| kháw           | <u>kháw</u> pen phôokháa       | He's a merchant.                        |
| chaawnaa       | kháw pen <u>chaawnaa</u>       | He's a farmer.                          |
| naanphajabaan  | kháw pen <u>naanphajabaan</u>  | She's a nurse.                          |
| phátthanaakoon | kháw pen <u>phátthanaakoon</u> | He's a community<br>development worker. |
| phôm           | <u>phôm</u> pen phátthanaakoon | I'm a community<br>development worker.  |
| wítsawákoon    | phôm pen <u>wítsawákoon</u>    | I'm an engineer.                        |
| tamrùat        | phôm pen <u>tamrùat</u>        | I'm a policeman.                        |
| khun           | <u>khun</u> pen tamrùat        | You are a policeman.                    |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                     |                                 |                                |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| kháw                | <u>kháw</u> pen tamrùat         | He's a policeman.              |
| thahǎanbòk          | kháw pen <u>thahǎanbòk</u>      | He's a soldier.                |
| phûuchíawchaan      | kháw pen <u>phûuchíawchaan</u>  | He's an expert.                |
| khâarâat<br>chakaan | kháw pen <u>khâarâatchakaan</u> | They are government employees. |

### c) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>   | <u>Pattern</u>                          |                                |
|--------------|---|--------------------------------|
|              | khun thamñaan araj khráp                | What do you do (for a living?) |
| kháw         | <u>kháw</u> thamñaan araj khráp         | What does he do?               |
| khon níi     | <u>khon níi</u> thamñaan araj khráp     | What does this person do?      |
| khon nán     | <u>khon nán</u> thamñaan araj khráp     | What does that person do?      |
| khun prichaa | <u>khun prichaa</u> thamñaan araj khráp | What does Prichaa do?          |

### d) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>   | <u>Pattern</u>                          |
|--------------|---|
|              | khun thamñaan araj khráp                |
| khun prichaa | <u>khun prichaa</u> thamñaan araj khráp |
| khun coon    | <u>khun coon</u> thamñaan araj khráp    |
| khon nán     | <u>khon nán</u> thamñaan araj khráp     |
| khon níi     | <u>khon níi</u> thamñaan araj khráp     |
| khun         | <u>khun</u> thamñaan araj khráp         |
| kháw         | <u>kháw</u> thamñaan araj khráp         |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u>                        | <u>Question</u>    | <u>Response</u>                          |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------|--|
| teacher                           | khun thamṇaan araj | phǒm pen khruu                           |
| nurse                             | khun thamṇaan araj | dichán pen naanṇphajabaan                |
| doctor                            | khun thamṇaan araj | phǒm pen mǎo                             |
| soldier                           | khun thamṇaan araj | phǒm pen thahǎan bók                     |
| engineer                          | khun thamṇaan araj | phǒm pen wítsawákoon                     |
| civilian government<br>employee   | khun thamṇaan araj | dichán pen khâarâatchakaan<br>phonlaryan |
| rice farmer                       | khun thamṇaan araj | phǒm pen chaawnaa                        |
| community develop-<br>ment worker | khun thamṇaan araj | phǒm pen phátthanaakoon                  |
| merchant                          | khun thamṇaan araj | phǒm pen phôokháa                        |
| airman                            | khun thamṇaan araj | phǒm pen thahǎan aakàat                  |
| expert                            | khun thamṇaan araj | phǒm pen phûuchṇawchaan                  |
| university student                | khun thamṇaan araj | dichán pen náksýksǎa                     |

### f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. phǒm thamṇaan thǐi roonṇphajabaan.           | I work at the hospital.               |
| 2. phǒm thamṇaan thǐi roonṇrian.                | I work at the school.                 |
| 3. phǒm thamṇaan thǐi juusít.                   | I work at USIS.                       |
| 4. phǒm thamṇaan thǐi juusôm.                   | I work at USOM.                       |
| 5. phǒm thamṇaan thǐi ee-aj-dii.                | I work at AID.                        |
| 6. phǒm thamṇaan thǐi cát-sa-mèek               | I work at JUSMAG.                     |
| 7. phǒm thamṇaan thǐi sathǎan thûut.            | I work at the Embassy.                |
| 8. phǒm thamṇaan thǐi krasuaṇ tàaṇ<br>prathêet. | I work at the State<br>Department.    |
| 9. phǒm thamṇaan thǐi krasuaṇ kalaahǒm          | I work at the Ministry<br>of Defense. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### g) Substitution Drill

MODEL: Teacher: phǒm thamṇaan thîi roonphajabaan.  
(éʻf-és-àj)

Student: phǒm thamṇaan thîi éʻf-és-aj.

Continue substitution using the following words:

- |                       |                           |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. juusít             | 4. juusǒom                |
| 2. cátsamèek          | 5. sathǎanthûut ameerikan |
| 3. krasuaṇ kalaa hǒom | 6. krasuaṇ tàaṇ prathêet  |

### h) Response Drill

MODEL: Teacher: khun thamṇaan thîinǎj      Where do you work?

Student: phǒm thamṇaan thîi \_\_\_\_ (Actual place of work)

Continue until all students have responded.

### i) Response Drill

MODEL: Teacher: khun thamṇaan thîi \_\_\_\_, You work at \_\_\_\_,  
châj máj khráp      don't you?

Student: mâj châj, phǒm thamṇaan No, I don't.  
thîi \_\_\_\_ I work at \_\_\_\_.

or: khráp      Yes, I do.  
(whichever answer is correct.)

Continue until all students have responded at least once.





## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                         |  |   |
|-------------------------|--|---|
| krasuaŋ<br>kalaahǒm     | phǒm pen khruu thǐi<br><u>krasuaŋ kalaahǒm</u>               | I'm a teacher at<br>the Ministry of<br>Defense. |
| thahǎan rya             | phǒm pen <u>thahǎan rya</u> thǐi<br>krasuaŋ kalaahǒm         | I'm a sailor at<br>the Ministry of<br>Defense.  |
| mǒɔ                     | phǒm pen <u>mǒɔ</u> thǐi krasuaŋ<br>kalaahǒm                 | I'm a doctor at the<br>Ministry of Defense.     |
| krasuaŋ<br>tàanprathêet | phǒm pen mǒɔ thǐi <u>krasuaŋ</u><br><u>tàanprathêet</u>      | I'm a doctor at the<br>Foreign Ministry.        |
| khâarâatchakaan         | phǒm pen <u>khâarâatchakaan</u><br>thǐi krasuaŋ tàanprathêet | I'm an employee of<br>the Foreign Ministry.     |
| juusít                  | phǒm pen khâarâatchakaan<br>thǐi <u>juusít</u>               | I'm an employee of<br>USIS                      |
| câwnâathǐi              | phǒm pen <u>câwnâathǐi</u> thǐi<br>juusít                    | I'm an official of<br>USIS.                     |
| sathǎanthûut            | phǒm pen câwnâathǐi thǐi<br><u>sathǎanthûut</u>              | I'm an official at<br>the Embassy.              |

### m) Transformation Drill

Combine the two sentences on the left to form one sentence.

#### Sentences 1 and 2

#### Sentence 3

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. kháw pen náksỳksǎa<br>kháw rian thǐi<br>mahǎawítthajaalaj thammaasàat | kháw pen náksỳksǎa thammaasàat.<br>'He's a student at Thammasart.      |
| 2. kháw pen khâarâatchakaan<br>kháw thammaan thǐi<br>sathǎanthûut        | kháw pen khâarâatchakaan<br>sathǎanthûut<br>'He's an Embassy employee. |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>3. phǒm pen khâarâatchakaan<br/>phǒm thamnaan thîi<br/>krasuanj tãanprathêet</p> | <p>phǒm pen khâarâatchakaan<br/>krasuanj tãanprathêet<br/>I'm an employee of the<br/>Foreign Ministry</p> |
| <p>4. kháw pen khâarâatchakaan<br/>kháw thamnaan thîi<br/>krasuanj mahàatthaj</p>   | <p>kháw pen khâarâatchakaan<br/>krasuanj mahàatthaj<br/>He's an employee of the<br/>Interior Ministry</p> |
| <p>5. kháw pen nákrían<br/>kháw rian thîi roonrianníi</p>                           | <p>kháw pen nákrían roonrianníi<br/>He's a student of this<br/>school.</p>                                |
| <p>6. kháw pen nítstít<br/>kháw rian thîi culaa</p>                                 | <p>kháw pen nítstít culaa<br/>He's a Chula student.</p>   |

n) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

kháw maa càak juusít  
kháw maa càak cátsamèek  
khon nán maa càak krasuanj  
tãanprathêet  
phátthanaakoon khon nán maa  
càak krasuanj mahàatthaj  
phǒm maa càak sathãanthûut  
ameerikan  
phûuchiâwchaan khon nán maa  
càak juusôm

Pattern 2

kháw pen câwnâathîi juusít  
kháw pen câwnâathîi cátsamèek  
khon nán pen câwnâathîi krasuanj  
tãanprathêet  
phátthanaakoon khon nán pen  
câwnâathîi krasuanj mahàatthaj  
phǒm pen câwnâathîi sathãanthûut  
ameerikan  
phûuthîawchaan khon nán pen  
câwnâathîi juusôm

thahǎan khon nán maa càak  
koonthápbòk ameerikan

thahǎan khon nán pen cawnâathîi  
koonthápbòk ameerikan

phûuchaaĵ khon nán maa càak  
krom tamrùat

phûuchaaĵ khon nán pen  
cawnâathîi tamrùat

o) Transformation Drill (Combine Sentences 1 and 2 into 3)

1. kháw pen khâarâatchakaan  
phonlaryan

kháw pen khâarâatchakaan  
phonlaryan jùu thîi  
krasuanĵ kalaahǒm

kháw jùu thîi krasuanĵ  
kalaahǒm

2. kháw pen khruu phaasǎa thaj

kháw pen khruu phaasǎa thaj  
jùu thîi éf és aj

kháw jùu thîi éf és aj

3. kháw pen khâarâatchakaan  
thahǎan

kháw pen khâarâatchakaan  
thahǎan jùu thîi pentakoon

kháw jùu thîi pentaakoon

4. kháw pen mǒothahǎan

kháw pen mǒothahǎan jùu  
thîi roonphajabaan nán

kháw jùu thîi roonphajabaan  
nán

5. kháw pen phûuchíawchaan  
thaanĵ kasèt

kháw pen phûuchíawchaan thaanĵ  
kasèt jùu thîi juusǒm

kháw jùu thîi juusǒm

6. kháw pen cawnâathîi tamrùat

kháw pen cawnâathîi tamrùat  
jùu thîi (caŋwàt) udoon

kháw jùu thîi (caŋwàt) udoon

p) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. sathǎaniirótfaj jùu thǎi thanǎn phráraam sǐi  
The train station is on Rama 4 Street.
2. hǎalamphooŋ jùu thǎi thanǎn phráraam sǐi  
Hualamphong is on Rama 4 Street.
3. sathǎaniirótfaj hǎalamphooŋ jùu thǎi thanǎn phráraam sǐi  
Hualamphong station is on Rama 4 Street.
4. sathǎanthûut jùu thǎi thanǎn wítthajú  
The Embassy is on Wireless Road.
5. sathǎanthûut ameerikan jùu thǎi thanǎn wítthajú  
The American Embassy is on Wireless Road.
6. sǎalaa ameerikan jùu thǎi thanǎn phát phoŋ  
The USIS auditorium is on Pat Pong Street.
7. juusôm jùu thǎi thanǎn phétburii  
USOM is on Petburi Street.
8. juusít jùu thǎi thanǎn sǎathoon tâj  
USIS is on South Sathorn Street.
9. cáat-sa-mèek jùu thǎi thanǎn sǎathoon tâj  
JUSMAG is on South Sathorn Street.
10. thanaakhaan ameerikan jùu thǎi thanǎn suriwon  
The Bank of America is on Suriwong Street.
11. phii-éks jùu thǎi khlooŋ tœj  
The PX is at Klong Toei.
12. sapòot khláp jùu thǎi thanǎn sanǎam máa  
The Sports Club is on Race Track Road.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

13. prajsanii klaan jùu thîi thanŏn careen krun  
The Main Post Office is on Charoen Krung Street.

q) Substitution Drill

Cue

|                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
|                                | <u>juusŏm</u> jùu thîinǎj khráp<br>Where is USOM?   |
| juusít                         | <u>juusít</u> jùu thîinǎj khráp<br>Where is USIS?   |
| sathǎanii rótfaj<br>hǎalamphoŋ | <u>sathǎanii rótfaj hǎalamphoŋ</u> jùu thîinǎj khráp<br>Where is Hualampong Railroad Station? |
| sathǎanthûut<br>ameerikan      | <u>sathǎanthûut ameerikan</u> jùu thîinǎj khráp<br>Where is the American Embassy?             |
| thanaakhaan thaj               | <u>thanaakhaan thaj</u> jùu thîinǎj khráp<br>Where is the Thai Bank?                          |
| sapŏot khláp                   | <u>sapŏot khláp</u> jùu thîinǎj khráp<br>Where is the Sports Club?                            |
| cátsamèek                      | <u>cátsamèek</u> jùu thîinǎj khráp<br>Where is JUSMAG?  |
| roŋrɛɛm eerawan                | <u>roŋrɛɛm eerawan</u> jùu thîinǎj khráp<br>Where is the Erawan Hotel?                        |
| sǎalaa ameerikan               | <u>sǎalaa ameerikan</u> jùu thîinǎj khráp<br>Where is the USIS Auditorium?                    |
| juusŏm                         | <u>juusŏm</u> jùu thîinǎj khráp<br>Where is USOM?   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### r) Response Drill

MODEL:

Teacher: juusôm jùu thîi năj khráp      Where is USOM?  
                  thanôn phétburii                      Petburi Street

Student: juu sôm jùu thanôn                      USOM is on Petburi  
                  phétburii                                      Street.

The teacher will continue the drill using real names and places on the map of Bangkok accompanying this lesson as the cues.

s) Variations on the Dialog:      (Repeat the basic dialog using the following sets.)

1. krom tamruat, câwnâathîi krasuan mahàatthaj, thanôn rachadamnœn
2. roonphajabaan jĭn, mŏo thîi roonphajabaan faràn, thanôn phétburii
3. juusît, câwnâathîi thanaakhan ameerikan, thanôn suriwon
4. ee-aj-dii, nĭtsît kasetsàat, thanôn phahônjoothin
5. cátsamèek, naanphajabaan thîi roonphajabaan jĭn, thanôn râatchawĭthĭi

### 8.3 EXERCISES

a) Find out where various kinds of buildings in the neighborhood are located.

For example:

|                 |                    |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1. banks        | 4. hotels          |
| 2. universities | 5. schools         |
| 3. embassies    | 6. the Post Office |

b) Find out the occupations and places of work of the students, the wives of students, and the friends of the students.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 8.4 VOCABULARY

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| ee aj dii                         | A.I.D. (Agency for International Development)                          |
| ee juu ee                         | A.U.A. (American University Association)                               |
| bòk                               | land (as opposed to sea)   |
| carəən krun                       | Charoen Krung (name of a street in Bangkok)                            |
| cátsamèək                         | JUSMAG (Joint Military Assistance Group)                               |
| câw                               | ruler (literally 'prince')   |
| câwnâathîi (khon)                 | official, officer, staff member  |
| chaawnaa (khon)                   | rice farmer  |
| chaawrâj (khon)                   | a crop farmer  |
| chaawsŭan (khon)                  | gardener, orchardist   |
| culaa                             | Chula (an abbreviation for Chulalongkorn University)                   |
| éf és aj                          | F.S.I. (Foreign Service Institute)                                     |
| hŭalamphoon                       | Hualampong (name of the main train station in Bangkok)                 |
| juusít                            | U.S.I.S. (United States Information Service)                           |
| juusŏm                            | U.S.O.M. (United States Operations Mission)                            |
| kasètsàat                         | agriculture; also the name of the university of agriculture in Bangkok |
| kháa                              | to trade, engage in trade  |
| khâarâatchakaan (khon)            | government employee  |
| khâarâatchakaan<br>phonlaryan     | civilian government employee   |
| khâarâatchakaan<br>thahăan (khon) | military government employee   |
| khlooŋ téej                       | Klong Toei (Section of Bangkok)  |
| koon                              | division (subdivision of a <u>krom</u> )                               |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| koontháp              | the armed forces (of a country)  |
| koontháp aakàat       | the Air Forces   |
| koontháp bòk          | the Army   |
| koontháp rya          | the Navy   |
| kaan                  | work, affairs  |
| krasuaŋ kalaahǒm      | Ministry of Defense  |
| krasuaŋ mahàatthaj    | Ministry of the Interior   |
| krasuaŋ tàanprathêet  | Ministry of Foreign Affairs  |
| krom                  | department (major subdivision of a<br>ministry)                          |
| krom tamrùat          | police department  |
| mahǎawítthajaalaj     | university   |
| mêebâan (khon)        | housewife  |
| mýankan               | too, also  |
| naaŋ (khon)           | female, Mrs.   |
| naaŋphajaabaan (khon) | female nurse   |
| nâathîi               | duty   |
| náksýksǎa (khon)      | student  |
| nítsit (khon)         | student (at Chulalongkorn, Kasetsart,<br>and the Fine Arts Universities) |
| ŋaan                  | work   |
| pentaakoon            | the Pentagon   |
| phahǒnjoothin         | Phahonyothin Road (in Bangkok)   |
| phát phoŋ             | Pát Pong Street (in Bangkok)   |
| phátthanaakoon (khon) | a community development worker   |
| phii-éks              | the PX (Post Exchange)   |
| phonlaryan (khon)     | civilian   |
| phôo (khon)           | father, male engaged in...   |
| phôo kháa             | merchant   |
| phráaathít            | Pra-aathit Street (in Bangkok)   |
| phráraam sîi          | Rama the Fourth (street)   |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

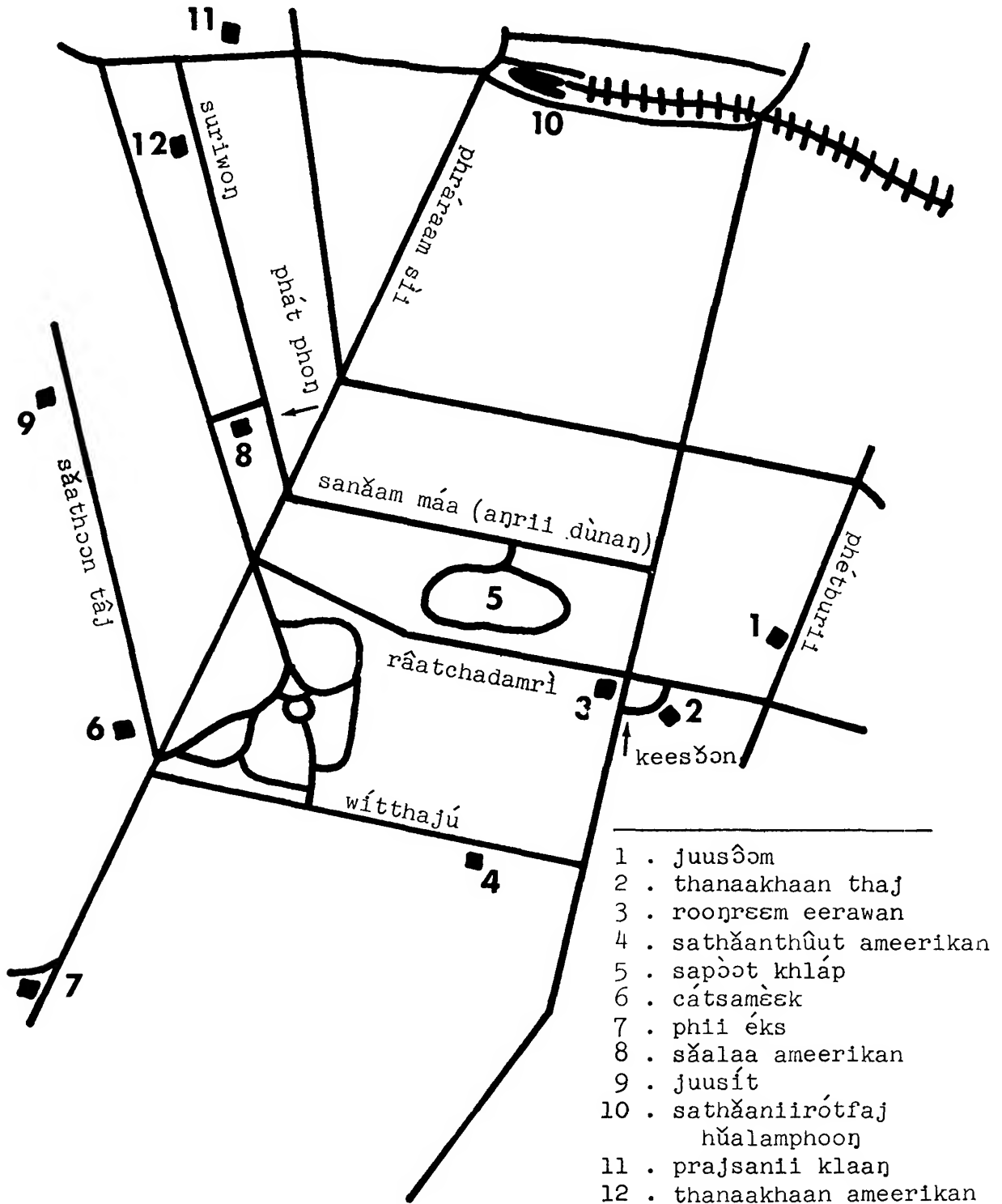
---

|                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| prajsanii klaaŋ         | the main post office                        |
| phûuchŋawchaan (khon)   | an expert                                   |
| rótfaj (khabuan)        | a train                                     |
| săalaa (lăŋ)            | a pavilion, a hall, a public building       |
| săalaa ameerikan        | the USIS auditorium                         |
| râatchadamnœn           | Rachadamnoen (Road)                         |
| râatchadamri            | Rachadamri (Road)                           |
| râatchawithŋi           | Rajawithee (Road)                           |
| rooŋ                    | building                                    |
| rya (lam)               | boat  |
| sanăam máa              | race track (name of a street in Bangkok)    |
| sapòot khláp            | The Royal Bangkok Sports Club               |
| sathăan (hènŋ)          | place, location                             |
| sathăanii (hènŋ)        | station                                     |
| sathăanii rótfaj (hènŋ) | the railroad station                        |
| săathoon tâj            | South Sathorn (street in Bangkok)           |
| sìi                     | four  |
| sŋon dœŋ                | Red Arrow (name of a restaurant in Bangkok) |
| suriwoŋ                 | Suriwong (street in Bangkok)                |
| sŋksăa                  | to study, learn                             |
| tamruat (khon)          | police                                      |
| thaan kasèt             | agricultural                                |
| thahăan aakàat (khon)   | airman                                      |
| thahăan bøk (khon)      | soldier                                     |
| thahăan rya (khon)      | sailor                                      |
| thammasàat              | Thammasart (university in Bangkok)          |
| thanaakhaan ameerikan   | the Bank of America (the American bank)     |
| thanaakhaan thaj        | the Bank of Thailand                        |
| thanŋn (săaj)           | street, road                                |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| thîi nǎj           | where (as question word); anywhere<br>(in negative statement)    |
| thîi nîi           | here   |
| thûut (khon)       | the ambassador (common usage)                                    |
| wítsawákoon (khon) | an engineer  |
| wítthajú           | Withayu (Thai name of a street),<br>Wireless Road (English name) |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON NINE

#### 9.0 BASIC DIALOG: Going to Don Muang to Pick up a Friend.

- A: paj nǎj maa khráp                     Where have you been?  
B: paj duu nǎj maa                         To a movie.  
    khun kamlan ca paj nǎj                 Where are you about to  
  go to?
- A: paj doon myan                             To Don Muang (airport).  
    paj dûajkan máj                         Want to go along?  
B: mǎj ahá                                     No, (thanks)  
    khun ca paj thammaj                     Why are you going?
- A: paj ráp phyan                             To pick up a friend.  
B: mserfi mǎj jùu lǎ                         Mary isn't home?
- A: jùu   She is.  
B: kháv mǎj dâj paj ajútthajaa lǎ         She didn't go to Ayuthaya?
- A: khráp                                     That's right.  
    mǎj dâj paj                                 She didn't go.  
B: kháv kamlan tham araj                     What's she doing?
- A: duu nǎjsǎy                                 She's studying.

#### 9.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) Thai verbs do not have tense, i.e. there are no changes in form that correlate with time as in English (see, saw, etc.) The time or state of an action is indicated by the use of time (ca, etc.) and aspect (kamlan, etc.) particles. The use and meaning of these particles and various words relating to time and frequency of occurrence are illustrated on the chart on the next page, which is arranged in normal sentence word order.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

| Time Words                            | Subject | Time and aspect Particles |    | Verb Phrases      | Freq. Word  | Meaning   |
|---------------------------------------|---------|---------------------------|----|-------------------|-------------|---|
|                                       | (phǒm)  |                           |    | paj talàat        |             | Time Unspecified(1)                             |
|                                       | (phǒm)  |                           |    | paj talàat        | thúk wan(2) | Repeated action                                 |
| weelaa níi<br>khanàníi<br>(3)         | (phǒm)  | kamlaŋ                    |    | paj talàat        |             | Present time action in progress                 |
|                                       | (phǒm)  | kamlaŋ                    | ca | paj talàat        |             | Action imminent                                 |
|                                       | (phǒm)  |                           | ca | paj talàat        |             | Future  |
| dĭaw<br>wanníi<br>phrûŋníi(4)         | (phǒm)  |                           | ca | paj talàat        |             | Future  |
| mýawaanníi<br>mýa kĭnĭi<br>wanníi (5) | (phǒm)  |                           |    | paj talàat        |             | Past  |
|                                       | (phǒm)  | khəej                     |    | paj talàat        |             | Indefinite Past                                 |
|                                       | (phǒm)  |                           |    | paj talàat<br>maa |             | Action just completed, returned to former place |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- NOTES: 1) 'Time unspecified' means only that there is no formal indication of time in the sentence.
- 2) thúk wan 'everyday'
- 3) weelaa níi 'at this time', khanà níi 'at present'
- 4) dǎaw 'soon', wanníi 'today', phrûnníi 'tomorrow'
- 5) mýawaanníi 'yesterday', mýakîiníi 'a short time ago'

- b) In questions the question word may play a role in the indication of time or of the state of the action. For example,

Future time: ca paj máj 'Will you go?'

Past time: paj rýplàaw 'Did you go?'

Habitual action: paj thúk wan rýplàaw 'Do you go everyday?'

The question word may also serve to signify the speaker's purpose in asking the question: seeking information, issuing an invitation, asking for confirmation of something he is more or less sure about, indicating surprise, etc. The chart below illustrates the meaning and use of various question words.

| Sentence Type | Question Word | Meaning    | Response         |                      |
|---------------|---------------|------------|------------------|----------------------|
|               |               |            | Affirm-<br>ative | Negative             |
| paj           | máj           | Invitation | paj              | mâj { ahá<br>lakhráp |
| ca paj        | máj           | Future     | paj              | { mâj<br>mâj paj     |
| paj thúk wan  | rýplàaw       | Habitual   | thúk<br>wan      | mâj thúkwan          |

THAI BASIC COURSE

| Sentence Type   | Question Word | Meaning   | Response                   |                            |
|---|---------------|---|----------------------------|----------------------------|
|   |               |   | Affirm-<br>ative           | Negative                   |
| m̄yawaanníi...<br>paj   | rýplàaw       | Past  | paj                        | { plàaw<br>{ m̄aj d̄aj paj |
| kháw ca paj<br>sýy khǒŋ<br>m̄yawaanníi kháw<br>paj sýy khǒŋ<br>kháw paj sýy<br>khǒŋ maa | châj máj      | Confirm-<br>ation of<br>what one<br>is very<br>sure about | { h̄y<br>{ khráp<br>{ châj | { m̄aj châj<br>{ plàaw     |
| kháw { ca<br>{kamlan ca<br>paj sýy khǒŋ   | lǎ<br>lǎhá    | Confirm-<br>ation of<br>what one<br>is less<br>sure about | { khráp<br>{ h̄y           | plàaw                      |
| kháw kamlan<br>paj sýy khǒŋ   | rýy khráp     |   |                            |                            |
| m̄yawaanníi<br>kháw paj<br>sýy khǒŋ   | lǎ<br>lǎhá    | Confirm-<br>ation of<br>what one<br>is less<br>sure about | { khráp<br>{ h̄y           | { plàaw<br>{ m̄aj d̄aj paj |
| kháw paj sýy<br>khǒŋ maa  | rýy khráp     |   |                            |                            |

NEGATIVE QUESTIONS

|  |     |           |     |                                 |
|--|-----|-----------|-----|---------------------------------|
| kháw ca m̄aj<br>paj sýy khǒŋ               | lǎ  | Future    | paj | { h̄y, khráp<br>{ m̄aj paj      |
| khun m̄aj paj<br>sýy khǒŋ                  |     | Intention | paj | { h̄y, khráp<br>{ m̄aj (paj)    |
| (m̄yaaaanníi)<br>m̄aj d̄aj paj<br>sýy khǒŋ | rýy | Past      | paj | { h̄y, khráp<br>{ m̄aj d̄aj paj |

NOTE: Between intimates h̄y (pronounced with strong nasal quality) may replace khráp.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 9.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u><br>(Teacher) | <u>Question</u><br>(Student 1)      | <u>Response</u><br>(Student 2)                        |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| thúra                   | paj nǎj maa<br>Where have you been? | paj thúra maa<br>'Out on business.'                   |
| thĭaw ajútthajaa        | paj nǎj maa<br>Where have you been? | paj thĭaw ajútthajaa maa<br>On excursion to Ayuthaya. |
| duu nǎŋ                 | paj nǎj maa<br>Where have you been? | paj duu nǎŋ maa<br>To a movie.                        |
| thaan khâaw             | paj nǎj maa<br>Where have you been? | paj thaan khâaw maa<br>To eat.                        |
| sýy khǒŋ                | paj nǎj maa<br>Where have you been? | paj sýy khǒŋ maa<br>Shopping.                         |
| hôn̄samùt               | paj nǎj maa<br>Where have you been? | paj hôn̄samùt maa<br>To the library.                  |



b) Substitution Drill

Cue

1. hōṅsamùt                      dǐaw (khun) ca paj hōṅsamùt máj  
Are you going to the library soon?
2. hōṅlèep                        dǐaw ca paj hōṅlèep máj  
Are you going to the laboratory soon?
3. hōṅ aahǎan                    dǐaw ca paj hōṅaahǎan máj  
Are you going to the dining room soon?
4. hōṅnám                         dǐaw ca paj hōṅnám máj  
Are you going to the toilet soon?
5. hōṅrian                         dǐaw ca paj hōṅrian máj  
Are you going to the classroom soon?
6. hōṅrian phaasǎa thaj        dǐaw ca paj hōṅrian phaasǎa thaj máj  
Are you going to the Thai classroom soon?
7. hōṅthamṇaan                 dǐaw ca paj hōṅthamṇaan máj  
Are you going to the work room soon?
8. hōṅthabian                    dǐaw ca paj hōṅthabian máj  
Are you going to the registrar's soon?
9. hōṅthoorasàp                 dǐaw ca paj hōṅthoorasàp máj  
Are you going to the telephone room soon?
10. hōṅaahǎan                    dǐaw ca paj hōṅaahǎan máj  
Are you going to the dining hall soon?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

c) Response Drill (Respond according to situation.)

MODEL: Teacher: dĭaw (khun) ca paj hōŋlèɛp máj

Are you going to the laboratory soon?

Student: Affirmative: paj khráp I am.

Negative: māj paj khráp I am not.

1. dĭaw khun ca paj hōŋsamùt máj  
Are you going to the library soon?
2. dĭaw khun ca paj hōŋaahǎan máj  
Are you going to the dining room soon?
3. dĭaw khun ca paj hōŋnám máj  
Are you going to the toilet soon?
4. dĭaw khun ca paj hōŋrian máj  
Are you going to the classroom soon?
5. dĭaw khun ca paj hōŋrian phaasǎa thaj máj  
Are you going to the Thai classroom soon?
6. dĭaw khun ca paj hōŋthamŋaan máj  
Are you going to the work room soon?
7. dĭaw khun ca paj sathǎani rótfaj máj  
Are you going to the Railroad Station soon?
8. dĭaw khun ca paj rooŋrɛɛm raamāa máj  
Are you going to Hotel Rama soon?
9. dĭaw khun ca paj hōŋthabian máj  
Are you going to the registrar's room soon?
10. dĭaw khun ca paj sanǎambin máj  
Are you going to the Airport soon?

(Students ask each other the same questions.)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d) Response Drill

MODEL 1:            Cue: No

Question: wanníi (khun) ca paj ráanaahǎan máj

Response: mâj paj khráp

MODEL 2:            Cue: Yes.

Question: wanníi (khun) ca paj ráankhǎajkhǒŋ máj

Response: paj khráp

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern</u>                 | <u>Response</u> |
|------------|--------------------------------|-----------------|
| no         | wanníi ca paj ráankaafɛɛ máj   | mâj paj khráp   |
| yes        | wanníi ca paj thîithamŋaan máj | paj khráp       |
| no         | wanníi ca paj talàat máj       | mâj paj khráp   |
| yes        | wanníi ca paj hǒŋlèɛp máj      | paj khráp       |
| yes        | wanníi ca paj hǒŋsamùt máj     | paj khráp       |
| no         | wanníi ca paj thîaw máj        | mâj paj khráp   |
| no         | wanníi ca paj hǎa mǒɔ máj      | mâj paj khráp   |
| yes        | wanníi ca paj thurá máj        | paj khráp       |
| no         |                                | mâj paj khráp   |

### e) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

dǎaw (khun) ca paj roonŋrian máj

Are you going to school soon?

prajsanii

dǎaw (khun) ca paj prajsanii máj

Are you going to the post office soon?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| wanníi               | wanníi ca paj prajsanii máj<br>Are you going to the Post Office today?                    |
| sathǎanthûut         | wanníi ca paj sathǎanthûut máj<br>Are you going to the embassy today?                     |
| phrûṅníi             | phrûṅníi ca paj sathǎanthûut máj<br>Are you going to the embassy tomorrow?                |
| juusít               | phrûṅníi ca paj juusít máj<br>Are you going to USIS tomorrow?                             |
| dǎaw                 | dǎaw ca paj juusít máj<br>Are you going to USIS soon?                                     |
| thanakhaan ameerikan | dǎaw ca paj thanakhaan ameerikan máj<br>Are you going to the Bank of America soon?        |
| phrûṅníi             | phrûṅníi ca paj thanakhaan amerikan máj<br>Are you going to the Bank of America tomorrow? |

### f) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Question</u>   | <u>Response</u>                                 |
|------------|---|---|
| 1. no      | dǎaw mâj paj ráanaahǎan rǎkhráp<br>Aren't you going to the<br>restaurant soon?        | khráp<br>mâj (paj)<br>No, I don't<br>intend to. |
| 2. yes     | wanníi mâj paj hǎnṅlèep rǎkhráp<br>Aren't you going to the lab today?                 | paj khráp<br>Yes, I am.                         |
| 3. no      | phrûṅníi mâj paj sathǎanthûut rǎkhráp<br>Aren't you going to the embassy<br>tomorrow? | khráp<br>mâj (paj)<br>No, I don't<br>intend to. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |         |   |  |
|---------|---|--|
| 4. yes  | <p>phrûṅṅíí mâj paj juusít rěkháp<br/>Aren't you going to USIS tomorrow?</p>                              | <p>paj kháp<br/>Yes, I am.</p>                           |
| 5. no   | <p>wanníí mâj paj krasuaṅtàaṅ prathêet rěkháp<br/>Aren't you going to the State<br/>Department today?</p> | <p>kháp<br/>mâj (paj)<br/>No, I don't<br/>intend to.</p> |
| 6. yes  | <p>dĭaw mâj paj hṅṅsamùt rěkháp<br/>Aren't you going to the library soon?</p>                             | <p>paj kháp<br/>Yes, I am.</p>                           |
| 7. no   | <p>dĭaw mâj paj ráanaahăan rěkháp<br/>Aren't you going to the library soon?</p>                           | <p>kháp<br/>mâj (paj)<br/>No, I don't<br/>intend to.</p> |
| 8. yes  | <p>wanníí mâj paj hṅṅprachum rěkháp<br/>Aren't you going to the<br/>auditorium soon?</p>                  | <p>paj kháp<br/>Yes, I am.</p>                           |
| 9. no   | <p>wanníí mâj paj rooṅphajaabaan rěkháp<br/>Aren't you going to the hospital<br/>today?</p>               | <p>kháp<br/>mâj (paj)<br/>No, I don't<br/>intend to.</p> |
| 10. yes | <p>phrûṅṅíí mâj paj talàat rěkháp<br/>Aren't you going to the market<br/>tomorrow?</p>                    | <p>paj kháp<br/>Yes, I am.</p>                           |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### g) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>            | <u>Pattern</u>   |
|-----------------------|--|
| thîithamṇaan          | khun paj <u>thîithamṇaan</u> thúk wan rýplàaw<br>Do you go to the office every day?                          |
| thanakhaan            | khun paj <u>thanakhaan</u> thúk wan rýplàaw<br>Do you go to the bank every day?                              |
| ránaahǎan             | khun paj <u>ránaahǎan</u> thúk wan rýplàaw<br>Do you go to the restaurant every day?                         |
| krasuaṇ tàaṇ prathêet | khun paj <u>krasuaṇ</u> <u>tàaṇprathêet</u> thúk wan rýplàaw<br>Do you go to the State Department every day? |
| juusôm                | khun paj <u>juusôm</u> thúk wan rýplàaw<br>Do you go to USOM every day?                                      |
| juusít                | khun paj <u>juusít</u> thúk wan rýplàaw<br>Do you go to USIS every day?                                      |
| bâan                  | khun klàp <u>bâan</u> thúk wan rýplàaw<br>Do you go home every day?  |

THAI BASIC COURSE

---

h) Response Drill

MODEL:        Teacher:  khun paj thǎithamʒaan thúk wan rýplàaw  
   Do you go to the office everyday?

Affirmative Answer:  thúk wan khráp                  Yes, everyday.

Negative Answer:  mâj thúk wan khráp        No, not everyday.

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Question</u>   | <u>Response</u>                   |
|------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. yes     | khun paj thanakhaan thúk rýplàaw?<br>Do you go to the bank everyday?                                | thúk wan khráp<br>Yes, everyday.  |
| 2. no      | khun paj talàat thúk wan rýplàaw<br>Do you go to the market everyday?                               | mâj thúk wan<br>No, not everyday. |
| 3. yes     | khun paj krasuanʒàaŋ prathêet thúk<br>wan rýplàaw<br>Do you go to the Foreign Ministry<br>everyday? | thúk wan khráp<br>Yes, everyday.  |
| 4. yes     | khun paj roonʒrian thúk wan rýplàaw<br>Do you go to the school everyday?                            | thúk wan khráp<br>Yes, everyday.  |
| 5. no      | khun paj roonphajaabaan thúk wan<br>rýplàaw<br>Do you go to the hospital everyday?                  | mâj thúk wan<br>No, not everyday. |
| 6. no      | khun paj prajsanií thúk wan rýplàaw<br>Do you go to the post office<br>everyday?                    | mâj thúk wan<br>No, not everyday. |
| 7. yes     | khun paj thamʒaan thúk wan rýplàaw<br>Do you go to work everyday?                                   | thúk wan khráp<br>Yes, everyday.  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |     |     |  |                                     |
|-----|-----|--|-------------------------------------|
| 8.  | no  | khun paj sathǎanthûut thúk wan<br>rýplàaw<br>Do you go to the Embassy everyday?                        | mâj thúk wan<br>No, not everyday.   |
| 9.  | yes | khun paj krasuan tǎanprathêet thúk<br>wan rýplàaw<br>Do you go to the Department of<br>State everyday? | thúk wan khráp<br>Yes, everyday.    |
| 10. | yes | khun paj sýy kàpkhâw thúk wan rýplàaw<br>Do you go buy food everyday?                                  | thúk wan khráp<br>Yes, everyday.    |
| 11. | no  | khun paj sathǎankonṣǔn thúk wan<br>rýplàaw<br>Do you go to the Consulate everyday.                     | thúk wan khráp<br>No, not everyday. |
| 12. | yes | khun paj hǎnṣèp thúk wan rýplàaw<br>Do you go to the laboratory<br>everyday?                           | thúk wan khráp<br>Yes, everyday.    |

### 1) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. khun paj krasuan tǎanprathêet  
thúk wan rýplàaw

Do you go to the State  
Department every day?

2. khun paj roonṣrian thúk wan  
rýplàaw

Do you go to the school  
everyday?

#### Pattern 2

- khun mâj dâj paj krasuan  
tǎanprathêet thúk wan  
rǎkhráp

Don't you go to the State  
Department everyday?

- khun mâj dâj paj roonṣrian  
thúk wan rǎkhráp

Don't you go to the  
school everyday?



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 3. khun paj lēn kóof thúk wan<br>rýplàaw<br>Do you go play golf<br>everyday?          | khun mâj dâj pâj lēn kóof<br>thúk wan rěkháp<br>Don't you go play<br>golf everyday.           |
| 4. khun paj wâaj nám thúk wan<br>rěkháp<br>Do you go swimming everyday.               | khun mâj dâj paj wâaj nám<br>thúk wan rěkháp<br>Don't you go swimming<br>everyday?            |
| 5. khun paj ráankhăajkhǎon thúk<br>wan rýplàaw<br>Do you go to the shops<br>everyday? | khun mâj dâj paj ráankhăaj<br>khǎon thúk wan rěkháp<br>Don't you go to the<br>shops everyday? |
| 6. khun paj hōnlèep thúk wan<br>rýplàaw<br>Do you go to the laboratory<br>everyday?   | khun mâj dâj paj hōnlèep<br>thúk wan rěkháp<br>Don't you go to the<br>laboratory everyday?    |
| 7. khun paj sýy kàpkhâw thúk wan<br>rýplàaw<br>Do you go buy food everyday?           | khun mâj dâj paj sýy<br>kàpkhâaw thúk wan rěkháp<br>Don't you go buy food<br>everyday?        |
| 8. khun paj talàat thúk wan rýplàaw<br>Do you go to the market<br>everyday?           | khun mâj pâj paj talàat<br>thúk wan rěkháp<br>Don't you go to the<br>market everyday?         |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### j) Response Drill

MODEL:            Cue: Yes<sup>1</sup>

Question:    khun mâj dâj paj            Don't you go to the  
                  sathăanthûut thúk            Embassy everyday?  
                  wan rěkhráp

Response:    paj (thúk wan) khráp    Yes, I do.

Cue: No<sup>1</sup>

Question:    khun mâj dâj paj            Don't you go to the  
                  sathăanthûut thúk            Embassy everyday?  
                  wan rěkhráp

Response:    khráp  
                  mâj dâj paj (thúk            No, I don't.  
                  wan) khráp

### Cue

### Pattern

1. yes    khun mâj dâj paj juusôm thúk wan rěkhráp
2. no     khun mâj dâj paj thîi thamnaan thúk wan rěkhráp
3. yes    khun mâj dâj lēn thennít thúk wan rěkhráp
4. no     khun mâj dâj paj hăa mǎo thúk wan rěkhráp
5. yes    khun mâj dâj paj roonrian thúk wan rěkhráp
6. no     khun mâj dâj wâaj nám thúk wan rěkhráp
7. yes    khun mâj dâj paj sapòot khláp thúk wan rěkhráp
8. no     khun mâj dâj paj thanakhaan ameerikan thúk wan rěkhráp
9. yes    khun mâj dâj paj thurá thúk wan rěkhráp

---

<sup>1</sup>Yes indicates that the answer is in the affirmative; No, in the negative. However, since the question is in the negative, a No answer confirms the question; whereas, a Yes answer denies it.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### k) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

mýawaanníi phǒm paj sathǎanthûut

Yesterday I went to the embassy.

mýakíiníi

mýakíiníi phǒm paj sathǎanthûut

A short time ago I went to the embassy.

hǒnám

mýakíiníi phǒm paj hǒnám

A short time ago I went to the toilet.

hǒnsamùt

mýakíiníi phǒm paj hǒnsamùt

A short time ago I went to the library.

fan théep thîi  
hǒnlèep

mýakíiníi phǒm paj fan théep thîi hǒnlèep

A short time ago I went to listen to tapes  
in the language laboratory.

thaan aahǎan

mýakíiníi phǒm paj thaan aahǎan

A short time ago I went to eat.

sýy khǒn thîi  
talàat

mýakíiníi phǒm paj sýy khǒn thîi talàat

A short time ago I went shopping at the market.

mýawaanníi

mýawaanníi phǒm paj sýy khǒn thîi talàat

Yesterday I went shopping at the market.

prajsanii

mýawaanníi phǒm paj prajsanii

Yesterday I went to the Post Office.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1) Transformation Drill (Affirmative to Negative Statements)

#### Pattern 1

m̂yawaanníi phǒm paj talàat  
m̂yawaanníi phǒm paj thaan  
aahǎan thîi roonr̂eem eerawan  
m̂yawaanníi phǒm paj roonrian  
m̂yawaanníi phǒm paj sathǎan-  
thûut  
m̂yawaanníi phǒm paj thúra  
thîi prajsanii  
m̂yakíiníi phǒm paj hǒn̂lèep

#### Pattern 2

m̂yawaanníi phǒm mâj dâj paj talàat  
m̂yawaanníi phǒm mâj dâj paj thaan  
aahǎan thîi roonr̂eem eerawan  
m̂yawaanníi phǒm mâj dâj paj  
roonrian  
m̂yawaanníi phǒm mâj dâj paj  
sathǎanthûut  
m̂yawaanníi phǒm mâj dâj paj  
thurá thîi prajsanii  
m̂yakíiníi phǒm mâj dâj paj  
hǒn̂lèep

### m) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

sathǎanthûut  
m̂yakíiníi<sup>1</sup>  
hǒnsamùt  
hǒnthoorasàp

#### Pattern

m̂yawaanníi khun paj talàat rýplàaw khráp  
m̂yawaanníi khun paj sathǎanthûut rýplàaw khráp  
m̂yakíiníi khun paj sathǎanthûut rýplàaw khráp  
m̂yakíiníi khun paj hǒnsamùt rýplàaw khráp  
m̂yakíiníi khun paj hǒn̂ thoorasàp rýplàaw khráp

---

<sup>1</sup>m̂yakíiníi may be pronounced m̂yakíiníi or m̂yakíi or m̂yakíi.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| m̂yawaanníi    | m̂yawaanníi khun paj hōŋ thoorasàp rýplàaw khráp |
| sýy khōŋ       | m̂yawaanníi khun paj sýy khōŋ rýplàaw khráp      |
| hǎa mǎo        | m̂yawaanníi khun paj hǎa mǎo rýplàaw khráp       |
| ráp phýan thîi | m̂yawaanníi khun paj ráp phýan thîi dōon myaŋ    |
| dōon myaŋ      | rýplàaw khráp                                    |

### n) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>                                 |
|------------|--|---|
| no         | m̂yawaanníi khun paj talàat rýplàaw<br>Did you go to the market yesterday? | { māj dāj paj<br>{ plàaw khráp<br>No, I didn't. |
| yes        | m̂yawaanníi khun paj talàat rýplàaw<br>Did you go to the market yesterday? | paj khráp<br>Yes, I did.                        |
| no         | m̂yawaanníi khun paj thurá thîi thanaakhaan<br>rýplàaw                     | { māj dāj paj<br>{ plàaw khráp                  |
| yes        | m̂yawaanníi khun paj krasuaŋ tàaŋ prathêet<br>rýplàaw                      | paj khráp                                       |
| no         | m̂yawaanníi khun paj thamŋaan rýplàaw                                      | { māj dāj paj<br>{ plàaw khráp                  |
| yes        | m̂yawaanníi khun paj àan náŋsýy thîi<br>hōŋsamùt rýplàaw                   | paj khráp                                       |
| no         | m̂yawaanníi khun paj sōŋ cōtmǎaj rýplàaw                                   | { māj dāj paj<br>{ plàaw khráp                  |

yes    m̂yawaanníi khun paj fan théep tĥi ĥn                    m̂j d̂j paj  
           lèep r̂ylàaw    paj khráp

no      m̂yawaanníi khun paj l̂n thennít tĥi                    { m̂j d̂j paj  
           sapòot khláp r̂ylàaw    } plàaw khráp

o) Transformation Drill (Affirmative to Negative Question)

Pattern 1

Pattern 2

m̂yawaanníi khun paj tĥaw r̂ylàaw

m̂yawaanníi khun m̂j d̂j paj  
 tĥaw r̂khráp

m̂yawaanníi khun paj roonphajaabaan  
 r̂ylàaw

m̂yawaanníi khun m̂j d̂j paj  
 roonphajaabaan r̂khráp

m̂yawaanníi khun maa rian phaaŝa  
 thaj tĥi éf-és-aj r̂ylàaw

m̂yawaanníi khun m̂j d̂j maa  
 rian phaaŝathaj tĥi  
 éf-és-aj r̂khráp

m̂yawaanníi khun paj thamnaan  
 r̂ylàaw

m̂yawaanníi khun m̂j d̂j paj  
 thamnaan r̂khráp

m̂yawaanníi khun phóp kháv tĥi  
 satĥanii rótfaj r̂ylàaw

m̂yawaanníi khun m̂j d̂j phóp  
 kháv tĥi satĥanii rótfaj  
 r̂khráp

m̂yawaanníi khun paj kin aaĥan  
 thaj tĥi ráanaaĥan cenn̂i  
 r̂ylàaw

m̂yawaanníi khun m̂j d̂j paj  
 kin aaĥanthaj tĥi ráanaaĥan  
 cenn̂i r̂khráp

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

m̂yawaanníi khun paj ráp pĥyan tĥi  
san̂ambin n̂echanan r̂yplàaw

m̂yawaanníi khun m̂j d̂j paj  
ráp pĥyan tĥi san̂ambin  
n̂echanan r̂khráp

m̂yawaanníi khun tham k̂p kĥaw  
tĥi b̂an r̂yplàaw

m̂yawaanníi khun m̂j d̂j tham  
k̂p kĥaw tĥi b̂an r̂khráp

Ask each student one of the affirmative questions above, and then ask him the same question in the negative (or in reverse order). His answers should be based on the facts of the situation.

p) Response Drill (Give negative responses to the questions)

| <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. m̂yawaanníi khun m̂j d̂j paj<br/>ajútthajaa l̂khráp<br/>Didn't you go to Ayuthaya<br/>yesterday?</p> | <p>{ khráp (m̂j d̂j paj)<br/>{ m̂j d̂j paj<br/>No, I didn't.</p> |
| <p>2. khun m̂j d̂j paj duu n̂j l̂<br/>Did you go to the movies?</p>  | <p>{ khráp (m̂j d̂j paj)<br/>{ m̂j d̂j paj<br/>No, I didn't.</p> |
| <p>3. d̂law khun ca paj ĥnsamùt m̂j<br/>Are you going to the library soon?</p>                            | <p>{ m̂j<br/>{ m̂j paj<br/>No, I'm not.</p>                      |
| <p>4. wanníi khun ca paj l̂n thennít m̂j<br/>Are you going to play tennis today?</p>                       | <p>{ m̂j<br/>{ m̂j paj<br/>No, I'm not.</p>                      |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. phrûṇṇíi khun ca paj bâan kháw máj { mâj  
mâj paj  
 Are you going to his house tomorrow? No, I'm not.

q) Response Drill (Response negatively or affirmatively according to the cue word.)

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Question</u>   | <u>Response</u>   |
|------------|---|---|
| yes        | kháw mâj dâj paj ajútthajaa lǎ<br>He didn't go to Ayuthaya?                                   | paj<br>Yes, he went.                                    |
| yes        | kháw mâj dâj paj krasuan tãanprathêet lǎ<br>Didn't he go to the Ministry of Foreign Affairs?  | paj<br>Yes, he went.                                    |
| yes        | kháw mâj dâj paj ráp phÿan thîi doon myan lǎ<br>Didn't he go pick up his friend at Don Muang? | paj<br>Yes, he went.                                    |
| no         | mɛrīi mâj dâj paj ajúthajaa lǎ<br>Didn't Mary go to Ayuthaya?                                 | { khráp (mâj dâj paj)<br>mâj dâj paj<br>No, she didn't. |
| no         | khun mâj dâj paj hōṇlèep lǎ<br>Didn't you go to the lab?                                      | { khráp (mâj dâj paj)<br>mâj dâj paj<br>No, I didn't.   |
| no         | khun mâj dâj paj thaan khâaw maa lǎ<br>Haven't you been to eat?                               | { khráp (mâj dâj paj)<br>mâj dâj paj<br>No, I haven't.  |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- r) Substitution Drill (Student 2 is to supply an 'activity' that fits the location given.)

MODEL: Cue words: wanní... prajsanií

Student 1: wanní phǒm ca paj prajsanií

Student 2: khun ca paj sǒn còtmǎaj rǎkhráp

Student 1: khráp

1. dǎaw... ráanaahǎan
2. phrûnní... roonphajabaan
3. wanní... talàat
4. mǎwawaanní... thanakhaan (thurá)
5. dǎaw... hǒnthoorasàp
6. mǎyakí... hǒnsamùt
7. wanní... sanǎambin doon myan
8. dǎaw... hǒnlèep
9. mǎwawaanní... thǎithamnaan
10. dǎaw... ráankaafæ

Note to the instructor: If the students have difficulty supplying an activity to go with drill, the instructor may suggest one.

### 9.4 EXERCISES

Find out from other students:

a. If they went to any of the following places yesterday:

- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. school          | 4. market       |
| 2. post office     | 5. work         |
| 3. Bank of America | 6. a restaurant |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- b) Where they will go tomorrow.
- c) Where they did any of the following things:
- |                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. went to work           | 4. went to mail a letter |
| 2. went shopping          | 5. went for a walk       |
| 3. went to see the doctor | 6. played tennis         |
- d) If they went to the following places a short time ago.
- |               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. laboratory | 5. a restaurant |
| 2. library    | 6. to work      |
| 3. home       | 7. Boston       |
| 4. school     |                 |
- e) Who did any of the following things a short time ago.
- |                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. go to the bank     | 6. cook food         |
| 2. play golf          | 7. do some typing    |
| 3. go home            | 8. read a book       |
| 4. go to the hospital | 9. make a phone call |
| 5. repair a car       |                      |
- f) What they do everyday.
- g) If they didn't do any of the following things yesterday:
- |                  |                             |
|------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. drink coffee  | 6. go to the Registrar's    |
| 2. eat food      | 7. study (at home)          |
| 3. go shopping   | 8. speak English            |
| 4. go to the lab | 9. went to pick up a friend |
| 5. speak Thai    | 10. work                    |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

h) If they will do any of the following things today:

- |                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. go to the doctor's | 6. go to work        |
| 2. play music         | 7. go home           |
| 3. teach              | 8. go to the library |
| 4. go on business     | 9. swim              |
| 5. write a book       | 10. eat              |

### 9.5 VOCABULARY

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| bin                 | to fly   |
| ca                  | will, shall (future particle)                                  |
| cennîi              | Jenny (name)   |
| dǎaw                | soon   |
| doon myan           | Don Muang (The name of the main commercial airport in Bangkok) |
| fan                 | to listen  |
| hôn (hôn)           | room   |
| hôn aahǎan (hôn)    | dining room, dining hall                                       |
| hôn lèep (hôn)      | laboratory (English loan 'lab')                                |
| hôn nám (hôn)       | toilet   |
| hôn prachum (hôn)   | auditorium   |
| hôn samùt (hôn)     | library  |
| hôn thabian (hôn)   | registrar's (office)   |
| hôn thamnaan (hôn)  | work room  |
| hôn thoorasàp (hôn) | telephone room   |
| kamlan              | aspect particle indicating action in process                   |
| kàp, ka-            | with   |
| khǎaj               | to sell  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| koŋsŭn (khon)                     | the Consul  |
| kóof                              | golf  |
| lèep (hôn)                        | lab (English loan)  |
| m̄ya kíi níi, m̄yákíi,<br>m̄yákîi | a short time ago  |
| m̄yawaanníi                       | yesterday   |
| phrûnníi                          | tomorrow  |
| ráan kaafɛɛ (ráan)                | coffee shop   |
| ráp                               | to receive, accept  |
| (paj / maa) ráp                   | to go meet someone, to go get something                                     |
| samǎɛ                             | always, regularly, consistently   |
| sanǎam (hèn)                      | field (as in airfield, sports field,<br>etc.)                               |
| sanǎam bin (hèn)                  | airport   |
| sathǎan koŋsŭn (hèn)              | the Consulate   |
| sòn                               | to send or ship something; to see<br>someone off, to take someone somewhere |
| tèɛ                               | but   |
| thammaj                           | why (question word)   |
| théep                             | tape (English loan word)  |
| thúk                              | every, each   |
| wanníi                            | today   |

LESSON TEN  
(REVIEW)

10.0 BASIC EPISODE:

khun cɔɔn naamsakun samít pen khon amerikan. kháw thamnaan thîi sathǎanthûut amerikan. bâan khǎɔŋ kháw jùu thîi thanǎn wítthajú. bâan khǎɔŋ kháw jàj lé sabaaj.

khun cɔɔn maa càak myaŋ denwêe rát khoolooradóo. phanrajaa khǎɔŋ kháw chýy maaria, maa càak myaŋ sapriŋfil rát wæecinia. phanrajaa khun cɔɔn sǎaj mâak.

khun cɔɔn phûut phaasǎa thaj kèn mâak. kháw khœj rian phaasǎa thaj thîi roonrian sǎon phaasǎa khǎɔŋ krasuaŋ tàanprathêet. kháw àan phaasǎa thaj dâj dii tè kháw khǎan mâj pen. kháw chǎɔp phûut phaasǎa thaj kàp khon thaj samœe. phanrajaa khǎɔŋ kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj dii mýankan. kháw mâj khœj rian phaasǎa thaj thîi roonrian. kháw rian càak khon thaj naj talàat, ráankhǎajkhǎɔŋ lé taam thanǎn.

10.1 QUESTIONS ON BASIC EPISODE

1. khun cɔɔn naamsakun araj
2. kháw pen khon cháat araj
3. kháw thamnaan thîinǎj
4. bâan khǎɔŋ kháw jùu thîinǎj

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. khun cɔɔn maa càak rát araj, myaŋ araj
6. phanrajaa khɔɔŋ kháw chýy araj
7. phanrajaa khɔɔŋ kháw maa càak nǎj
8. khun cɔɔn phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj máj
9. kháw àan phaasǎa thaj dâj máj
10. kháw khŷan phaasǎa thaj dâj máj
11. phanrajaa khɔɔŋ kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj máj
12. kháw khəej rian thŷi roonrian máj
13. kháw rian phaasǎa thaj càak khraj

### 10.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS<sup>1</sup>

#### a) Response Drill

MODEL: Teacher: mi burii máj khráp

Do you have a cigarette?

Student: Affirmative: mi khráp                      Yes, I do.

Negative: mâj mi khráp                      No, I don't.

|                    |          |            |            |
|--------------------|----------|------------|------------|
| <u>Cue words</u> : | dinsɔɔ   | nǎŋsýy     | phěsenthŷi |
|                    | kâwŷi    | nǎŋsýyphim | rûup       |
|                    | kradàat  | ŋəən       | samùt      |
|                    | faj      | pàakkaa    | tó         |
|                    | naalikaa | phŷan      | khruu      |

Repeat the above drill using negative questions.

(mâj mi burii rýkhráp).

---

<sup>1</sup>The purpose of drills a through o is to improve fluency; therefore, they should be done rapidly, so that the student will learn to respond automatically.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Response Drill (Perform as in Drill a)

MODEL: Teacher: phěnthfi dii máj

Is the map good?

Student: Affirmative: dii khráp      Yes, it is.

Negative: mâj dii khráp      No, it isn't.

Cue words: nánsŷy      dīnsǒ  
kháw      naalikaa  
roonrian      samùt  
khruu      aakàat  
pàakkaa      kradàat

Repeat this drill using negative questions.

### c) Response Drill (As in Drill a)

MODEL: Teacher: aakàat dii máj

Is the weather good?

Student: Affirmative: dii khráp      Yes, it is.

Negative: mâj dii khráp      No, it isn't.

Cue words: nǎaw      dii  
khun      aahǎan  
sǎaj      rón  
rûup      kháw  
pàakkaa      dii

Repeat the drill using negative questions.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d) Response Drill

| <u>Question</u>                              | <u>Response</u> |
|--|-----------------|
| 1. nánŝy lêm nǎj dii                         | lêm nán         |
| 2. kâwîi tua nǎj dii                         | tua nán         |
| 3. phûuchaaĵ khon nǎj phûut phaasǎa thai kèn | khon nán        |
| 4. nanphajabaan khon nǎj sǔaj                | khon nán        |
| 5. dínŝo thên nǎj dii                        | thên nán        |
| 6. tó tua nǎj sǔaj                           | tua nán         |
| 7. câw nâathîi khon nǎj nǎaw                 | khon nán        |
| 8. rûup baj nǎj sǔaj                         | baj nán         |
| 9. phěnthîi phèn nǎj dii                     | phèn nán        |
| 10. khruu khon nǎj chýy coon                 | khon nán        |

Repeat this drill using nîi for nán in the responses.

### e) Response Drill

| <u>Question</u>                       | <u>Response</u> |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. khun khœĵ pen thahǎan máĵ          | khœĵ khráp      |
| 2. khun khœĵ paj parîit máĵ           | khœĵ khráp      |
| 3. khun khœĵ paj thîaw kruĵ room máĵ  | khœĵ khráp      |
| 4. khun khœĵ thamŋaan thîi juusít máĵ | khœĵ khráp      |
| 5. khun khœĵ rian phaasǎa phamâa máĵ  | khœĵ khráp      |
| 6. khun khœĵ jùu tàaĵ prathêet máĵ    | khœĵ khráp      |
| 7. khun khœĵ kin aahǎan thaj máĵ      | khœĵ khráp      |
| 8. khun khœĵ pen nítŝit culaa máĵ     | khœĵ khráp      |
| 9. khun khœĵ sŝon nánŝy máĵ           | khœĵ khráp      |
| 10. khun khœĵ miî rôt faràn máĵ       | khœĵ khráp      |

Repeat the above drill with negative responses: (mâĵ khœĵ).

Repeat the above drill using negative questions.



f) Response Drill

| <u>Question</u>                    | <u>Response</u> |
|------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. khun khàp rít pen máj           | pen khráp       |
| 2. khun tham kàp khâaw pen máj     | pen khráp       |
| 3. khun lên dontrií pen máj        | pen khráp       |
| 4. khun wâaj nám pen máj           | pen khráp       |
| 5. khun phím nánsŷy pen máj        | pen khráp       |
| 6. khun àan nánsŷy thaj pen máj    | pen khráp       |
| 7. khun phûut phaasăa juan pen máj | pen khráp       |

Repeat the drill with negative responses: (mâj pen).

g) Response Drill (Repeat drill f substituting dâj for pen in questions and responses).

h) Response Drill (Repeat drill f substituting kèn for pen in questions and responses.)

NOTE. In Drills f, g, and h, the questions may be asked in the negative, as in the following examples:

From drill f: khun khàp rít mâj pen rěkhráp

From drill g: khun khàp rít mâj dâj rěkhráp

From drill h: khun khàp rít mâj kèn rěkhráp

i) Response Drill (Repeat drill f substituting dâj dií for pen in the questions and dií for pen in answers.)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

j) Response Drill (Give a negative response to each question).

| <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1. m̂awaanníi paj thanaakhan rýplàaw<br>Did you go to the bank yesterday?          | m̂aj dâj paj<br>No, I didn't. |
| 2. m̂awaanníi paj duu nǎj rýplàaw<br>Did you go to the movies yesterday?           | m̂aj dâj paj<br>No, I didn't. |
| 3. m̂akíiníi paj thaan kaafɛɛ rýplàaw<br>Did you go drink coffee a short time ago? | m̂aj dâj paj<br>No, I didn't. |
| 4. m̂akhyynníi duu thii wii rýplàaw<br>Did you watch TV last night?                | m̂aj dâj duu<br>No, I didn't. |
| 5. m̂acháawníi maa roonriian rýplàaw<br>Did you come to school this morning?       | m̂aj dâj maa<br>No, I didn't. |
| 6. m̂awaanníi paj wâaj nám rýplàaw<br>Did you go swimming yesterday?               | m̂aj dâj paj<br>No, I didn't. |

k) Response Drill (Respond negatively to the questions.)

| <u>Question</u>                               | <u>Response</u>            |
|---|----------------------------|
| 1. kháw jùu máj<br>Is he in?                  | m̂aj jùu<br>No, he isn't.  |
| 2. khruu jùu máj<br>Is the teacher in?        | m̂aj jùu<br>No, she isn't. |
| 3. phanrajaa khun jùu máj<br>Is your wife in? | m̂aj jùu<br>No, she isn't. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| 4. mǎo jùu máj<br>Is the doctor in?                    | mâj jùu<br>No, he isn't.  |
| 5. nǒonsǎaw khun jùu máj<br>Is your younger sister in? | mâj jùu<br>No, she isn't. |

Respond affirmatively to the questions above.

1) Response Drill (Respond negatively to these questions.)<sup>1</sup>

| <u>Question</u>   | <u>Response</u>              |
|---|------------------------------|
| 1. roonrian nán jùu nâj krunthêep rýplàaw<br>Is that school in Bangkok?                             | mâj dâj jùu<br>No, it isn't. |
| 2. udoon jùu pháak isǎan rýplàaw<br>Is Udorn in N.E. Thailand?                                      | mâj dâj jùu<br>No, it isn't. |
| 3. sathǎan kǒnsǔn thaj jùu thǎi myan njuu<br>jók rýplàaw<br>Is the Thai consulate in New York city? | mâj dâj jùu<br>No, it isn't. |
| 4. juusôm jùu thanǒn sǐlom rýplàaw<br>Is USOM on Silom Street?                                      | mâj dâj jùu<br>No, it isn't. |
| 5. bâan khun jùu thanǒn sǎathoon rýplàaw<br>Is your house on Sathorn Street?                        | mâj dâj jùu<br>No, it isn't. |

NOTE: Respond affirmatively to the questions above.

---

<sup>1</sup>In drill K the subject of the sentence is an animate noun; in drill L it is an inanimate noun. Observe the contrast in usage:

Drill K: Question: ...jùu máj Answer: mâj jùu

Drill L: Question: ...jùu... rýplàaw Answer: mâj dâj jùu

m) Response Drill (Respond affirmatively to the invitations.)

| <u>Invitation</u>  | <u>Response</u>                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. paj kin khâaw dûajkan máj<br>Shall we go eat together?  | paj khráp<br>Yes, let's.         |
| 2. paj thîaw myan thaj dûajkan máj<br>Shall we take a pleasure trip to Thailand?                               | paj khráp<br>Yes, let's do that. |
| 3. paj duu nǎn dûajkan máj<br>Shall we go to a movie?  | paj khráp<br>Yes, let's go.      |
| 4. paj sýy khǒon dûajkan máj<br>Shall we go shopping?  | paj khráp<br>Yes, let's.         |
| 5. paj ráp phyan thîi sathǎani rótfaj<br>dûajkan máj<br>Shall we go pick up (our) friend at the train station? | paj khráp<br>Yes, let's go.      |

(Respond negatively to the above invitations (mâj paj).

n) Response Drill (Give negative responses to the questions.)

| <u>Questions</u>                                     | <u>Response</u>              |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1. kháw ca paj sýy khǒon lǎ<br>Is he going shopping? | plàaw khráp<br>No, he isn't. |
| 2. kháw ca paj thîaw lǎ<br>Is he going out?          | plàaw khráp<br>No, he isn't. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 3. khun ca tham aahǎan lǎ<br>Are you going to cook?                    | plàaw khráp<br>No, I'm not.   |
| 4. khun ca khǎan còtmǎj lǎ<br>Are you going to write a letter?         | plàaw khráp<br>No, I'm not.   |
| 5. phanrajaa khun ca paj wíatnaam lǎ<br>Is your wife going to Vietnam? | plàaw khráp<br>No, she isn't. |

Give affirmative answers (khráp) to the above questions.

o) Response Drill (Give affirmative answers.)

| <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>         |
|--|-------------------------|
| 1. khun kamlaŋ ca paj sýy khǒŋ rýkhráp<br>Are you on the point of going shopping?                    | khráp<br>Yes, I am.     |
| 2. phanrajaa khun kamlaŋ ca paj duu nǎŋ rýkhráp<br>Is your wife just about ready to go to a movie?   | khráp<br>Yes, she is.   |
| 3. khun kamlaŋ ca sǒŋ nánsýy rýkhráp<br>Are you about to begin teaching?                             | khráp<br>Yes, I am.     |
| 4. lûuk khun kamlaŋ ca paj roonrian rýkhráp<br>Are your children just about to leave for school?     | khráp<br>Yes, they are. |
| 5. khruu kamlaŋ ca paj hǒŋ lèep rýkhráp<br>Is the teacher on the point of going to the language lab? | khráp<br>Yes, he is.    |

Respond negatively to the above questions.

p) Sentence Combination Drill

Using tèe 'but' as a linking word combine the two sentences to form a new one, as in the example below:

Sentence 1: kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj pen  
He can speak Thai.

Sentence 2: kháw khǎan (phaasǎa thaj) mâj pen  
He can't write Thai.

New Sentence: kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj pen tèe khǎan mâj pen  
He can speak Thai, but (he) can't write it.

Sentences 1 and 2

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. kháw pen khondi1<br>kháw pen khon mâj sǔaj              | kháw pen khondi1 tèe mâj sǔaj                       |
| 2. kháw pen khonsǔaj<br>kháw pen khon mâj di1              | kháw pen khonsǔaj tèe mâj di1                       |
| 3. kháw phûut kèn<br>kháw thamnaan mâj kèn                 | kháw phûut kèn tèe thamnaan<br>mâj kèn              |
| 4. kháw pen khonthaj<br>kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj<br>mâj pen | kháw pen khonthaj tèe phûut<br>phaasǎa thaj mâj pen |
| 5. kháw nǎaw<br>phǎm rǎon                                  | kháw nǎaw tèe phǎm rǎon                             |
| 6. kháw di1<br>phanrajaa kháw mâj di1                      | kháw di1 tèe phanrajaa kháw<br>mâj di1              |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7. phǒm phûut wâa 'chûaj sòŋ  
nâŋsǎy nòɔj'  
kháw sòŋ pàakkaa                      phǒm phûut wâa 'chûaj sòŋ  
nâŋsǎy nòɔj' tɛɛ kháw  
sòŋ pàakkaa
8. naaŋphajabaan jùu                      naaŋphajabaan jùu tɛɛ mǎɔ  
mǎɔ mâj jùu                                      mâj jùu
9. phǒm tham aahǎan faràŋsèet dâj      phǒm tham aahǎan faràŋsèet  
phǒm tham aahǎan faràŋsèet              dâj tɛɛ mâj kèn  
mâj kèn
10. kháw lèn thennít dâj                      kháw lèn thennít dâj tɛɛ  
kháw lèn thennít mâj kèn                      mâj kèn

### 10.3 EXERCISE

- a) Have each student tell his own life story in the manner of the Basic Episode (10.0).
- b) When student A has finished his short biography, student B will ask student C questions about it. This procedure should continue until each student has taken all three roles.

### 10.4 VOCABULARY

|              |                         |
|--------------|-------------------------|
| àan          | to read                 |
| chôɔp        | to like, be fond of     |
| khoolooradôo | Colorado                |
| saprinfil    | Springfield             |
| taam         | along, after; to follow |
| wæcinia      | Virginia                |

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON ELEVEN

### 11.0 BASIC DIALOG: At the Language School

- A: thîi roonriian sǒon phaasǎa  
thîi khun rian mii khonthaj  
lǎaj khon mǎj At the language school  
where you studied are  
there many Thais?
- B: lǎaj khon Yes, many.
- A: mii nákrían phaasǎa thaj thâwraj How many Thai language  
students are there?
- B: mâj sâap khráp I don't know.
- A: naj chán khun mii nákrían How many students are  
kîi khon there in your class?
- B: hâa khon khráp Five.
- A: khun rian araj kan bâan What (things) are you  
studying?
- B: àan, phûut, khǎan lé plæ Reading, speaking,  
writing, and translating.
- A: kháw sǒon phaasǎa araj bâan What languages do they  
teach?
- B: lǎaj phaasǎa khráp. mii phaasǎa Many languages. Viet-  
juan, laaw, farànsèet, sapeen, nameese, Lao, French,  
lé phaasǎa òyn òyn Spanish, and other  
languages.
- A: mii khruu châat tàan tàan Altogether how many  
(thánmòt) thâwraj khráp teachers of different  
nationalities are there?
- B: lǎaj sǐp khon khráp Several tens (less than  
a hundred).



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 11.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) kan 'each other, mutually, as a group' can be used
1. As a pluralizer of the subject of the sentence:  
pít pratuu kan 'you (plural) shut the door' or
  2. to indicate that two or more persons or things are mutually involved in some activity or are related in some other way.

|        |   |             |                    |                               |
|--------|---|-------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| A:     | khruu   |             | phûut phaasăa thaj | kàp nákrian                   |
| B:     |   | nákrian     | phûut phaasăa thaj | kàp khruu                     |
| A + B: | khruu   | { lĕ<br>kàp | nákrian            | phûut phaasăa thaj <u>kan</u> |
| A:     | 'The teacher speaks Thai with the student'.           |             |                    |                               |
| B:     | 'The student speaks Thai with the teacher'.           |             |                    |                               |
| A + B: | 'The teacher and student speak Thai with each other'. |             |                    |                               |

- b) araj, khraj, and năj all have interrogative and indefinite meaning (neither singular or plural). When used in negative sentences the meaning is indefinite:

phôm mâj dâj duu araj

'I didn't see anything.'

mâj mi khraj sâap

(There is no one that knows.)

'No one knows.'

khun mâj dâj paj năj rĕ

'Didn't you go anywhere?'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

araj, khraj, and nǎj can be made plural by the addition of bâaŋ. (Here they have interrogative meaning.)

|  |  |
|--|--|
| mii nánsǎy <u>araj</u> <u>bâaŋ</u>                             | 'What books are there?'                |
| khun ca paj <u>nǎj</u> <u>bâaŋ</u>                             | 'What places are you going to?'        |
| khun phûut phaasǎa thaj<br><u>kàp</u> <u>khraj</u> <u>bâaŋ</u> | 'Who all do you speak Thai with with?' |

- c) Numerals<sup>1</sup> include all of the cardinal numbers plus some other quantity words. Numerals occur in constructions before classifiers. Some of the quantity words are lǎaj 'many, several', baaŋ 'some', kìi 'how many?', thúk 'each, every', nóoj 'few', and mâj-kìi 'not many'.

|                      |                    |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| khruu lǎaj khon      | 'several teachers' |
| nánsǎy baaŋ lêm      | 'some books'       |
| tó kìi tua           | 'how many books?'  |
| dínsǎo mâj-kìi thêeŋ | 'not many pencils' |
| nákrian nóoj khon    | 'few students'     |

The Thai numerical system is a decimal system, and with a few exceptions compound numbers are made by multiplying by and / or adding to the numbers from 1 to 10.

The numbers from 1 to 10 are: nỳn '1', sǎoŋ '2', sǎam '3', sìi '4', hâa '5', hòk '6', cèt '7', pèet '8', kâaw '9', sìp '10'.

Multiples of ten (except 20) are made by putting the multiplier in front of ten, thus 30 is sǎam sìp (3 x 10),

---

<sup>1</sup>For a full treatment of numerals, see Noss, 109 ff.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

70 is cèt sịp (7 x 10), etc. Numbers to be added to 10 or multiples of 10 occur afterwards, thus 13 is sịp sǎam (1 x 10 + 3), 34 is sǎam sịp sịi (3 x 10 + 4), etc. 20 is jfi sịp; 22 is jfi sịp sỏ๓.

Except for the number 'one' itself, èt is used for 'one', thus 21 is jfi sịp èt; 51 is hâa sịp èt, etc.

100 is nỳn rỏ๓ or rỏ๓, but 101 is rỏ๓ èt. 400 is sịi rỏ๓; 423 is sịi rỏ๓ jfi sịp sǎam, etc.

1000 is nỳn phan or phan; 10,000 is nỳn mỳyn or mỳyn.

100,000 is nỳn sến or sến, and 1,000,000 is nỳn láan or láan.

15,000 is (nỳn) mỳyn hâa phan (1 x 10,000 plus 5 x 1000). sịp hâa phan (15 x 1,000) is not acceptable.

450,000 is sịi sến hâa mỳyn (4 x 100,000 plus 5 x 10,000), sịi rỏ๓ hâa sịp phan (450 x 1,000) is not acceptable.

- d) One sentence may be included in another and serve as a modifier or specifier of some part of that sentence. thfi may serve as a connector between the main sentence and the included sentence.

|                     |            |           |     |
|---------------------|------------|-----------|-----|
| Main sentence:      | nánsỷ      |           | dii |
| Included sentence:  |            | kháw khǎn |     |
| Resultant sentence: | nánsỷ thfi | kháw khǎn | dii |

'The books he writes are good.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

thīi kháw khǎan serves as a modifier of nánsǎy. A response to the question nánsǎy araj dii 'what books are good?' could be nánsǎy thīi kháw khǎan 'the books he writes'.

|                     |                 |            |     |
|---------------------|-----------------|------------|-----|
| Main sentence:      | nánsǎy lêm nán  |            | dii |
| Included sentence:  |                 | kháw khǎan |     |
| Resultant sentence: | nánsǎy lêm thīi | kháw khǎan | dii |

'The book he wrote is good'.

thīi kháw khǎan serves as a specifier of (nánsǎy) lêm. A response to the question nánsǎy lêm nǎj dii 'Which book is good?' could be lêm thīi kháw khǎan 'the one he wrote'.

- e) ỳyn means 'other' in the sense of a different one not an additional one of the same kind. ỳyn ỳyn means 'others'; it acts as a pluralizer after nouns.

phaasǎa ỳyn            'another (different) language'

phaasǎa ỳyn ỳyn      'other (different) languages'

.... lǎ ỳyn ỳyn      (lit. 'and others') 'et cetera'

### 11.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. kháw phûut phaasǎathaj kàp phǎm<br>phǎm phûut phaasǎathaj kàp kháw<br>raw phûut phaasǎathaj <u>kan</u> | He speaks Thai with me.<br>I speak Thai with him.<br>We speak Thai <u>together</u> . |
| 2. kháw rúucàk khon nán<br>khon nán rúucàk kháw<br>kháw rúucàk <u>kan</u>                                 | He knows that person.<br>That person knows him.<br>They know <u>each other</u> .     |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                                  |                            |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 3. phǒm rian phaasǎa thaj        | I study Thai.              |
| phŷan phǒm rian phaasǎa thaj     | My friend studies Thai.    |
| raw rian phaasǎa thaj <u>kan</u> | We <u>both</u> study Thai. |

### b) Combination Drill

#### Patterns 1 and 2

1. phǒm phŷut phaasǎa aᅇkrìt kàp kháw }  
kháw phŷut phaasǎa aᅇkrìt kàp phǒm }
2. khruu phŷut phaasǎa thaj kàp nákrìan }  
nakrìan phŷut phaasǎa thaj kàp khruu }
3. khun cǝᅇn phŷut phaasǎa jǝeramán }  
khun cim phŷut phaasǎa jǝeramán }
4. phŷan phǒm rúucàk khun }  
khun rúucàk phŷan phǒm }
5. khun mǝrŷi paj talàat kàp khun ceennŷi }  
khun ceennŷi paj talàat kàp khun mǝrŷi }
6. khun cǝᅇn paj rooᅇrian }  
khun cim paj rooᅇrian }

#### Pattern 3

- raw phŷut phaasǎa  
aᅇkrìt kan
- khruu lé nákrìan phŷut  
phaasǎa thaj kan
- khun cǝᅇn lé khun  
cim phŷut phaasǎa  
jǝeramán kan
- khun kàp phŷan phǒm  
rúucàk kan
- khun mǝrŷi lé khun  
ceennŷi paj talàat  
kan
- khun cǝᅇn kàp khun  
cim paj rooᅇrian  
kan

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khon nán phûut phaasăa araj  
dâj bâaŋ  
kháw phûut phaasăa aŋkrít,  
farànsèet, lé thaj  
What languages does  
that person speak?  
He speaks English,  
French, and Thai.
2. khon nán phûut phaasăa araj  
kháw phûut phaasăa thaj  
What language does  
that person speak?  
He speaks Thai.
3. thîinfi mii khraj  
thîinfi mii nákrían  
Who is here?  
There are students here.
4. thîinfi mii khraj bâaŋ  
thîinfi mii khruu, nákrían lé  
nákphaasăa  
Who is here?  
There are teachers,  
students, and linguists.
5. naj eesia mii prathêet araj bâaŋ  
naj eesia mii prathêet india, ciin,  
jîipùn, thaj lé prathêet òyn òyn  
What are some of the  
countries in Asia?  
In Asia there are India,  
China, Japan, Thailand,  
and other countries.
6. naj júróop mii prathêet araj bâaŋ  
naj júróop mii prathêet farànsèet,  
sapeen, italîi, jæraman, lé  
prathêet òyn òyn  
What are some of the  
countries in Europe?  
In Europe there are  
France, Spain, Italy,  
Germany, and other  
countries.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7. naj ameerikaa mii rát araj bâaŋ  
What are some of the states in America?  
naj ameerikaa mii rát njuu jóok,  
In America there are the states of New York, mesachusèt, michiksen, khelifoonia, Massachusetts, Michigan, California, and other states.  
lé rát ỳn ỳn.
8. th̄i sàhàprachaachâat mii khon  
What are some of the nationalities in the U.N.?  
châat araj bâaŋ  
th̄i sàhàprachaachâat mii khon aŋkrít  
In the U.N. there are Englishmen, Frenchmen, faràŋseèt, khon eesia lé châat ỳn ỳn  
Asians, and other nationalities.
9. khun tham araj pen bâaŋ  
What do you know how to do?  
phǒm khĩan lé phũut phaasǎa  
I can write and speak English.  
aŋkrít pen
10. kháw tham araj pen baãŋ  
What does she know how to do?  
kháw tham aahãan lé líaŋ dèk pen  
She can cook and take care of children.
11. kháw kèn araj baãŋ  
What things is he good at?  
kháw rian náŋsǎy kèn, lèn kiilaa  
He's a good student, a good athlete, and a good worker.  
kèn lé thamŋaan kèn

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u>                            | <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>   |
|---------------------------------------|--|---|
| an̄krìt                               | kháw phûut phaasǎa araj<br>What language does he speak?  | kháw phûut phaasǎa an̄krìt<br>He speaks English.                                |
| thaj lé<br>an̄krìt                    | kháw phûut phaasǎa araj<br>bâaŋ<br>What languages does he speak?                               | kháw phûut phaasǎa<br>thaj lé an̄krìt<br>He speaks Thai and English.            |
| nákrian                               | naj hôŋnán mii khraj<br>Who's in that room?  | mii nákrian<br>Students.  |
| khruu lé<br>nákrian                   | naj hôŋnán mii khraj bâaŋ<br>Who is in that room?  | mii khruu lé nákrian<br>. Teachers and students.                                |
| lǎaj châat                            | thîi sahàprachaachâat mii<br>khon châat araj bâaŋ<br>What nationalities are there at the U.N.? | mii khon châat lǎaj<br>châat<br>There are many.                                 |
| thîithamŋaan                          | wanníi khun ca paj nǎj<br>Where are you going today?   | paj thîithamŋaan<br>To the office.  |
| talàat,<br>prajsanii                  | wanníi khun ca paj nǎj bâaŋ<br>Where (all) are you going today?                                | paj talàat lé prajsanii<br>To the market and the Post Office.                   |
| khelifoonia,<br>njuujóok,<br>floridâa | naj ameerikaa mii rát araj<br>bâaŋ<br>What are some of the states in America?                  | mii rát khelifoonia<br>njuujóok lé floridâa<br>California, New York and Florida |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| <p>thaj, ciin,<br/>jġipùn, lé<br/>prathêet<br/>ỳyn ỳyn</p> | <p>naj eesia mii prathêet<br/>araj bâan</p> <p>What are some of the<br/>countries in Asia?</p>                | <p>mii prathêet thaj, ciin,<br/>jġipùn, lé prathêet<br/>ỳyn ỳyn</p> <p>Thailand, China,<br/>Japan, etc.</p> |
| <p>phránakhoon,<br/>ubon,<br/>chianmaj</p>                 | <p>myan thaj mii canwàt araj<br/>bâan</p> <p>What are some of the<br/>provinces in Thailand?</p>              | <p>mii canwàt phránakhoon,<br/>ubon, lé chianmaj</p> <p>Phranakorn, Ubol,<br/>and Chiangmai.</p>            |
| <p>chianmaj,<br/>ùttaradit</p>                             | <p>phâak nÿa mii canwàt<br/>araj bâan</p> <p>What are some of the<br/>provinces in Northern<br/>Thailand?</p> | <p>mii canwàt chianmaj<br/>lé ùttaradit</p> <p>Chiangmai and<br/>Uttaradit.</p>                             |
| <p>ubon lé udoon</p>                                       | <p>phâak isăan mii canwàt<br/>araj bâan</p> <p>What are some of the<br/>provinces in N. E.<br/>Thailand?</p>  | <p>mii canwàt ubon lè<br/>udoon</p> <p>Ubol and Udorn.</p>  |
| <p>krunthêep</p>   | <p>khon phâak klaan phûut<br/>phaasăa araj</p> <p>What language do Central<br/>Thai speak?</p>                | <p>kháw phûut phaasăa<br/>krunthêep</p> <p>Bangkok Thai.</p>  |
| <p>krunthêep lé<br/>pàk tâj</p>                            | <p>khon pàk tâj phûut phaasăa<br/>araj bâan</p> <p>What languages do Southern<br/>(Thai) people speak?</p>    | <p>kháw phûut phaasăa<br/>krunthêep lè phaasăa<br/>pàk tâj</p> <p>Bangkok Thai and<br/>Southern Thai.</p>   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>      | <u>Pattern</u>                  |              |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|--------------|
| nákrian         | <u>nákrian</u> hâa khon         | 5 students   |
| khruu           | <u>khruu</u> hâa khon           | 5 teachers   |
| nỳn             | khruu <u>nỳn</u> khon           | 1 teacher    |
| mố              | <u>mố</u> nỳn khon              | 1 doctor     |
| hòk             | mố <u>hòk</u> khon              | 6 doctors    |
| chaaw ameerikan | <u>chaaw ameerikan</u> hòk khon | 6 Americans  |
| sìp             | chaaw ameerikan <u>sìp</u> khon | 10 Americans |
| thahǎan bòk     | <u>thahǎanbòk</u> sìp khon      | 10 soldiers  |
| rốj             | thahǎanbòk <u>rốj</u> khon      | 100 soldiers |
| khon            | ( <u>khon</u> ) rốj khon        | 100 people   |

### f) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>     | <u>Pattern</u>                      |  |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| lǎaj           | nákrian <u>lǎaj</u> khon            | many students                              |
| khruu          | <u>khruu</u> lǎaj khon              | many teachers                              |
| lǎaj sìp       | khruu <u>lǎaj sìp</u> khon          | many tens of teachers                      |
| thahǎan        | <u>thahǎan</u> lǎaj sìp khon        | many tens of soldiers                      |
| phátthanaakoon | <u>phátthanaakoon</u> lǎaj sìp khon | many tens of community Development workers |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                         |  |  |
|-------------------------|--|--|
| lǎaj rǒɔj               | phátthanaakɔɔn <u>lǎaj</u> <u>rǒɔj</u><br>khon       | many hundreds of<br>Community Develop-<br>ment workers |
| khâarâatchakaan<br>thaj | <u>khâarâatchakaan thaj</u> lǎaj<br>rǒɔj khon        | many hundreds of<br>Thai government<br>employees       |
| lǎaj phan               | khâarâatchakaan thaj <u>lǎaj</u><br><u>phan</u> khon | many thousands of<br>Thai government<br>employees      |

### g) Substitution Drill

|        |                                   |                          |
|--------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| MODEL: | A: khun sýy <u>nánsýy</u> rýkhráp | 'You bought some books?' |
|        | B: khráp                          | 'Yes, I did.'            |
|        | A: (sýy) kii lêm khráp            | 'How many?'              |
|        | B: <u>hòk</u> lêm khráp           | 'Six.'                   |

Pairs of students are to go through the exchange above substituting the following cue words for those underlined and making other changes where appropriate:

- |                  |                    |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. naalika, nỳn  | 5. phěnthîi, sîi   |
| 2. dinsɔɔ, sǎam  | 6. nánsýyphim, hâa |
| 3. pàakkaa, sɔɔn | 7. rûup, cèt       |
| 4. kâwîi, síp    | 8. samùt, kâw      |

Repeat the drill above using khǎaj and mi for sýy .

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### h) Substitution Drill

|        |                          |                        |
|--------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| MODEL: | A: nákrían paj rýplàaw   | 'Did the students go?' |
|        | B: paj khráp             | 'Yes, they did.'       |
|        | A. (paj) kîi khon khráp  | 'How many (went)?'     |
|        | B. <u>hòk</u> khon khráp | 'Six.'                 |

Substitute the following cue words for the underlined words above:

- |                            |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. khruu, 3                | 5. tamrùat, 40         |
| 2. mǎo, 11                 | 6. khâarâatchakaan, 25 |
| 3. chaaw ameerikaan, 5,000 | 7. phôokháa, 100       |
| 4. thahǎanbòk, 5,000       |                        |

### i) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>   | <u>Pattern</u>                 |               |
|--------------|--------------------------------|---------------|
| khruu        | <u>khruu</u> baaj khon         | some teachers |
| jîi-síp sǎoŋ | khruu <u>jîi-síp sǎoŋ</u> khon | 22 teachers   |
| síp pèet     | khruu <u>síp pèet</u> khon     | 18 teachers   |
| sîi-síp      | khruu <u>sîi-síp</u> khon      | 40 teachers   |
| hòk-síp cèt  | khruu <u>hòk-síp cèt</u> khon  | 67 teachers   |
| sǎam rǎoj    | khruu <u>sǎam rǎoj</u> khon    | 300 teachers  |
| kâw-síp èt   | khruu <u>kâw-síp èt</u> khon   | 91 teachers   |
| sǎam-síp sîi | khruu <u>sǎam-síp sîi</u> khon | 34 teachers   |
| nǎoj         | khruu <u>nǎoj</u> khon         | few teachers  |
| thúk         | khruu <u>thúk</u> khon         | every teacher |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. roonrian thîi khun rian mii khruu phaasăa thaj lăaj khon  
The school you're studying at has many Thai language teachers.
2. khâarâatchakaan thîi ca paj myan̄thaj tōon rian phaasăa thaj  
Government employees that are going to Thailand must study Thai.
3. năkrian thîi rian thîinfi pen khon ameerikan..  
Students who study here are Americans.
4. khon thîi tham rāatchakaan rīak wāa khâarâatchakaan.  
People who do government work are government employees.
5. khon thîi jūu bēan nán pen phyan phǒm  
The people who live in that house are my friends.
6. phūujŷn̄ thîi paj kàp khun sŷaj  
The girl who goes with you is pretty.
7. khon thîi ca rian phaasăa dāj dii tōon phūut phaasăa nán samǎe  
People who are going to learn a language well must speak it constantly.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

k) Expansion Drill (Combine Sentences 1 and 2 and form Sentence 3.)

| <u>Sentence 1</u>                           | <u>Sentence 2</u>  | <u>Sentence 3</u>   |
|---|--|---|
| bâan sǔaj<br>the house is<br>pretty         | thîi khun jùu<br>that you live in                        | bâan thîi khun jùu sǔaj<br>The house you live in<br>is pretty.                          |
| nânsǔy dii<br>book is good                  | thîi khun sýy<br>that you bought                         | nânsǔy thîi khun sýy dii<br>The book you bought is<br>is good.                          |
| roonriian dii<br><br>school is good         | thîi kháw khæj<br>riian<br>that he used to<br>study (at) | roonriian thîi kháw khæj<br>riian dii<br>The school he used to<br>study at is good.     |
| nânsǔy dii<br>book is good                  | thîi kháw khǎan<br>that he wrote                         | nânsǔy thîi kháw khǎan dii<br>The book he wrote is<br>good.                             |
| râanaahǎan dii<br><br>restaurant is<br>good | thîi khun bòok<br>that you told<br>(about)               | râanaahǎan thîi khun bòok<br>dii<br>The restaurant that you<br>told (me about) is good. |
| caṅwàt dii<br><br>province is good          | thîi khun ca paj<br>that you are<br>going (to)           | caṅwàt thîi khun ca paj<br>dii<br>The province you are<br>going to is good.             |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|   |                        |   |
|---|------------------------|---|
| mii khruu thaj lăaj<br>khon thîi roonrian | thîi khun rian<br>(at) | mii khruu thaj lăaj khon<br>thîi roonrian thîi khun<br>rian |
|---|------------------------|---|

|   |                        |  |
|---|------------------------|--|
| There are many<br>Thai teachers at<br>the school. | that you study<br>(at) | There are many Thai<br>teachers at the school<br>where you study at. |
|---|------------------------|--|

|                           |   |  |
|---------------------------|---|--|
| rôt sŭaj<br>car is pretty | thîi phŭujĭn<br>khonnán khàp<br>that that woman<br>is driving | rôt thîi phŭujĭn khonnán<br>khàp sŭaj<br>The car that woman is<br>driving is pretty. |
|---------------------------|---|--|

1) Sentence Combination Drill (Combine sentences 1, 2, 3 to form sentence 4.)

Sentences 1, 2, 3

1. kháw pen khruu  
 kháw sŏn phaasăathaj  
 kháw pen khonthaj
2. kháw pen phŭujĭn  
 kháw paj kàp khun  
 kháw sŭaj
3. kháw pen nákrían  
 kháw rian thĭnĭi  
 kháw pen khon ameerikan

Sentence 4<sup>1</sup>

- |  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| khruu thîi sŏn phaasăathaj<br>pen khonthaj     | phŭujĭn thîi paj kàp khun sŭaj |
| nákrían thîi rian thĭnĭi pen<br>khon ameerikan |                                |

---

<sup>1</sup>The student may give an acceptable response which differs from the one given here.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>4. kháw pen nákrían<br/>kháw jàak phûut phaasǎa<br/>tàanprathêet kèn<br/>kháw tǔn phûut samǎe</p>                | <p>nákrían thîi jàak phûut phaasǎa<br/>tàanprathêet kèn tǔn phûut<br/>samǎe</p>                |
| <p>5. kháw pen khâarâatchakaan<br/>krasuan tàanprathêet<br/>kháw ca paj myan thaj<br/>kháw tǔn rian phaasǎathaj</p> | <p>khâarâatchakaan krasuan<br/>tàanprathêet thîi ca paj myan<br/>thaj tǔn rian phaasǎathaj</p> |

### m) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u>  | <u>Question</u>                                       | <u>Response</u>   |
|---|---|---|
| 1. thîi kháw khĭan<br>that he wrote                 | nánsŷy lêm nǎj dii<br>Which book is good?             | lêm thîi kháw khĭan<br>The one he wrote.                  |
| 2. thîi chŷy phimphaa<br>who is named<br>Pimpa      | phûujĭn khon nǎj<br>sǔaj<br>Which woman is<br>pretty? | khon thîi chŷy<br>phimphaa<br>The one named<br>Pimpa.     |
| 3. thîi maa càak<br>juusít<br>who came from<br>USIS | nákrían khon nǎj<br>kèn<br>Which student is<br>smart? | khon thîi maa càak<br>juusít<br>The one from USIS.        |
| 4. thîi khun sòn<br>hâj phǎm<br>that you sent<br>me | pàakkaa dâam nǎj<br>dii<br>Which pen is<br>good?      | dâam thîi khun sòn<br>hâj phǎm<br>The one you sent<br>me. |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |    |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|
| 5. | thîi kamlaŋ phûut<br>who is speaking                  | khun thăawoon, khon<br>năj<br>Which person is<br>Thaworn? | khon thîi kamlaŋ<br>phûut<br>The one who is<br>speaking.            |
| 6. | thîi phûut rew<br>that speaks fast                    | khun mæsrîi, khon năj<br>Which person is<br>Mary?         | khon thîi phûut rew<br>The one who speaks<br>fast.                  |
| 7. | thîi thamŋaan thîi<br>juusôom<br>who works at<br>USOM | khun coon, khonnăj<br>Which person is<br>John?            | khon thîi thamŋaan<br>thîi juusôom<br>The one who works<br>at USOM. |

### 11.3 EXERCISES

- a) Find out what some of the activities are that students engage in with their wives, friends, and others.
- b) Ask questions about the number of various kinds of objects (windows, pencils, etc.) there are in your classroom.
- c) Ask and answer questions concerning the number of people employed in various institutions (egs. State Department, etc.)
- d) Ask and answer questions about the following:
  1. countries in Asia and Europe
  2. provinces in Thailand
  3. cities in the U.S., and in Thailand
  4. nationalities in the U.N., in Asia, in Europe, and in Thailand
  5. provinces and cities in various parts of Thailand

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- e) Find out how many people in the classroom have various skills, such as the ability to drive a car, play tennis, etc.
- f) Find out which objects in the classroom are considered to be good by other students.
- g) The instructor will put problems in addition on the board beginning with easy ones and proceeding to more difficult ones, thus

6 + 7 = ? The students are to read the problems and supply the correct answers.

### 11.4 VOCABULARY

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| eesia       | Asia                                      |
| ỳyn ỳyn     | other, others, other ones                 |
| bòk         | to tell                                   |
| cèt         | seven                                     |
| chán        | class, rank, grade, floor (in a building) |
| floridâa    | Florida                                   |
| hâa         | five                                      |
| hòk         | six                                       |
| hòk-sìp     | sixty                                     |
| jàak        | to want to                                |
| jfi-sìp     | twenty                                    |
| kâaw        | nine                                      |
| kâw-sìp     | ninety                                    |
| kâw-sìp èt  | ninety one                                |
| khelifoonia | California                                |
| kìi         | how many, how much (question word)        |
| kiilaa      | sport(s), athletics                       |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| lǎaj             | many, several                               |
| láan             | million                                     |
| lɛ́              | and   |
| líaj dèk         | to take care of children, to raise children |
| michikɛɛn        | Michigan                                    |
| mɛsachusɛ̀t      | Massachusetts                               |
| mýyn             | ten thousand                                |
| naj              | in, inside                                  |
| nákphaasǎa       | linguistic scientist                        |
| nóoj             | few   |
| nỳn (nyŋ)        | one   |
| pèet             | eight                                       |
| phan             | thousand                                    |
| phimphaa         | Pimpa (female first name)                   |
| rew              | fast, soon                                  |
| róoj             | hundred                                     |
| sàhàprachaachâat | The United Nations                          |
| sǎam             | three                                       |
| sǎam-sìp         | thirty                                      |
| sɛ̀ɛn            | hundred thousand                            |
| sìi-sìp          | forty                                       |
| sìp              | ten   |
| thánmòt          | altogether                                  |
| thâwraj          | how many, how much (question word)          |
| thîinân          | there                                       |
| tôn              | must, have to                               |

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON TWELVE

### 12.0 BASIC DIALOG: My Family

- A: khun mii phĩnóoŋ lǎaj  
khon máj khráp      Do you have many brothers  
and sisters?
- B: khun phôo khun mĕe phǎm  
mii lûuk nĕa khon khráp      My parents have five children.
- A: khun pen khon thĩi  
thĕwràj      Which are you?
- B: phǎm pen khon klaan  
mii phĩichaaj sǎoŋ khon,  
nóoŋsǎaw sóoŋ khon      I'm the middle one.  
There are two older brothers,  
two younger sisters.
- A: phĩichaaj khǎoŋ khun  
tĕŋŋaan rýjan      Are your older brothers  
married (yet)?
- B: tĕŋ léew khon nyŋ, ìik  
khon nyŋ jan pen sòot      One is married, and one is  
(still) single.
- A: khǎothòot léew khun la  
khráp      And you?
- B: phǎm mii khrǎopkhrua  
léew khráp      I have a family.
- A: khǎothòot, khun mii bùt  
rýplàaw khráp      Do you have children?
- B: mii khon diaw khráp  
pen phũuchaaj      I have only one.  
He's a boy.
- A: aajú thĕwràj khráp      How old is he?
- B: hòk khùap khráp      Six.

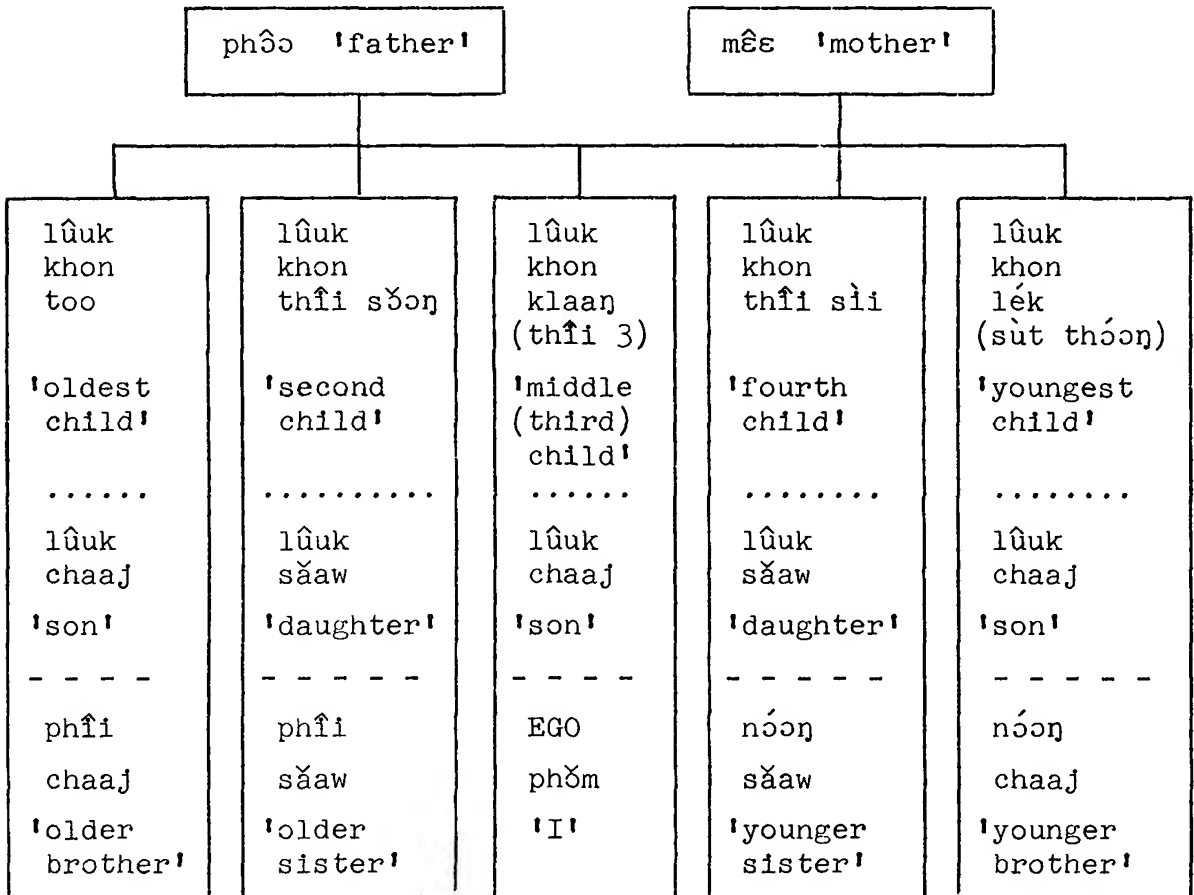
# THAI BASIC COURSE

## 12.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) The chart below gives the terms used in Thai for different members of the immediate family in terms of age, sex, and relationship to the speaker (Ego):

khrôpkhrua phôm

'My Family'



1. nóᅇᅇ alone means: 'younger brothers and/or sisters'
- phîi alone means: 'older brothers and/or sisters'
- phîinóᅇᅇ alone means: 'older and younger brothers and/or sisters'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. bùt = lûuk 'child' bùt is more elegant;  
lûuk is more common.

3. lûuk khon nyṇ means 'a child'  
lûuk nyṇ khon means 'one child'  
lûuk khon diaw means 'only one child'.

b) tèṇṇaan 'to marry'; tèṇ 'decorate, adorn' + ṇaan 'ceremony' tèṇ is a verb and ṇaan is its noun complement. In responses to questions only the verb is necessary.

### 12.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) Ordinal number constructions consist of thîi + cardinal numbers (or question word replacements for them)<sup>1</sup>.

|                      |                   |   |                        |             |
|----------------------|-------------------|---|------------------------|-------------|
| <u>thîi sîi</u>      | 'fourth'          | : | <u>thîi + sîi</u>      | '4'         |
| <u>thîi cèt</u>      | 'seventh'         | : | <u>thîi + cèt</u>      | '7'         |
| <u>thîi nyṇ rǒoj</u> | 'hundredth'       | : | <u>thîi + nyṇ rǒoj</u> | '100', etc. |
| <u>thîi thâwràj</u>  | 'the how manyeth' | : | <u>thîi + thâwràj</u>  | 'how many'  |

b) rêek means 'to be first in time, quality, in a series or sequence, or from point of origin.'

phǒm pen lûuksít khon                    'I was his first student.'  
rêek khǒṇ kháw

thîi nyṇ refers to the first item in a numbered series of lessons, floors (in a building), etc.

chán thîi nyṇ                    'the first floor'  
bòt thîi nyṇ                    'lesson one'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- c) Ordinal numbers occur immediately after classifiers and in construction with them.

lûuk khon thîi săam                    'the third child'  
 nânsŷy lêm thîi cèt                    'the seventh book'

- d) aajú 'age' is a noun and is used in equational sentences like the following:

| Noun Phrase | =    | Noun Phrase        |
|-------------|------|--------------------|
| kháw        |      | aajú jfi-síp pii   |
| 'He         | (is) | 20 (age-20-year).' |

In questions aajú thâwràj is used generally for asking someone's age but aajú kii pii may be used for younger persons. The response is usually (number of years) + pii but for persons under 12, (number of years) + khuap is used.

For example:

Q: lûuk khon lék aajú kii pii                    'How old is your youngest?'

A: hòk khuap                    '(He's) six.'

Q: khun phôo khun aajú thâwràj                    'How old is your father?'

A: hâa-síp săam pii                    '53'

- e) lésw rý jan 'or not yet?' is used in questions to find out the state of an action (complete or not complete). lésw is often omitted or occurs in reduced form in lýjan or léjan. It may occur as ýjan or éjan in very rapid speech. The responses to it are either:

1. jan 'not yet' (or) 2. Verb + lésw 'Action completed'.

Q: khun thaان khâaw lésw rýjan                    'Have you eaten yet?'

R:        Negative: jan khráp                    'No.' (lit. 'not yet.')

Affirmative: thaان lésw khráp                    '(Yes), I have.'

f) Observe the use of jaŋ mâj and jaŋ mâj dâj in the examples below:

- |                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. kháw jaŋ jùu thîini..  | 'She's still here.     |
| kháw <u>jaŋ mâj</u> paj.  | 'She hasn't gone yet.' |
| 2. phǒm khít wâa kháw paj | 'I thought he had gone |
| thurá lɛ́ɛw tɛɛ kháw      | on business already,   |
| <u>jaŋ mâj dâj</u> paj    | but he hadn't.'        |

The meaning of the first example is 'He hasn't gone yet (because he doesn't want or need to), but he may go yet'. The meaning of the second example is 'He could (or should) have gone, but he didn't. (See 5.2a).

g) When classifier phrases with diaw or lǎaj refer to the pronoun subject of the sentence, they occur after the main verb, usually at the end of the sentence.

- |                               |                                  |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| kháw paj <u>khon diaw</u>     | 'He went by himself.'            |
| kháw paj kan <u>lǎaj khon</u> | 'Several of them went together.' |

### 12.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

Pattern 2

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. kháw pen phîichaj phǒm<br>He is my older brother.                  | phǒm pen nóŋchaaaj kháw<br>I am his younger brother.                |
| 2. thâan pen khun phôo phǒm<br>He is my father.                       | phǒm pen lûukchaaaj thâan<br>I am his son.                          |
| 3. kháw pen khun phôo phûujĩŋ<br>khon nán<br>He's that girl's father. | phûujĩŋ khon nán pen<br>lûuksăaw kháw<br>That girl is his daughter. |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>4. kháw pen nóŋchaaj phǒm<br/>He is my younger brother.</p>  | <p>phǒm pen phǐichaaaj kháw<br/>I'm his older brother.</p> |
| <p>5. kháw pen nóŋsǎaw phǒm<br/>She's my younger sister.</p>    | <p>phǒm pen phǐichaaaj kháw<br/>I'm her older brother.</p> |
| <p>6. kháw pen nóŋsǎaw dichán<br/>She is my younger sister.</p> | <p>dichán pen phǐisǎaw kháw<br/>I'm her older sister.</p>  |
| <p>7. kháw pen phǐisǎaw phǒm<br/>She's my older sister.</p>     | <p>phǒm pen nóŋchaaj kháw<br/>I'm her younger brother.</p> |
| <p>8. kháw pen phǐichaaaj phǒm<br/>He's my older brother.</p>   | <p>phǒm pen nóŋchaaj kháw<br/>I'm his younger brother.</p> |
| <p>9. kháw pen nóŋchaaj dichán<br/>He's my younger brother.</p> | <p>dichán pen phǐisǎaw kháw<br/>I'm his older sister.</p>  |
| <p>10. thâan pen khun mĕe phǒm<br/>She's my mother.</p>         | <p>phǒm pen lûukchaaj thâan<br/>I'm her son.</p>           |

### b) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern</u>                      |   |
|------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| too        | kháw pen lûuk khon <u>too</u>       | He's the oldest child.                  |
| sǒŋ        | kháw pen lûuk khon thĭi <u>sǒŋ</u>  | She's the second child.                 |
| rĕek       | kháw pen lûuk khon <u>rĕek</u>      | He's the first child.                   |
| sǎam       | kháw pen lûuk khon thĭi <u>sǎam</u> | She's the third child.                  |
| klaaŋ      | kháw pen lûuk khon <u>klaaŋ</u>     | He's the middle child.                  |
| hâa        | kháw pen lûuk khon thĭi <u>hâa</u>  | He's the fifth child.                   |
| lék        | kháw pen lûuk khon <u>lék</u>       | She's the smallest child.<br>(youngest) |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|     |                                    |                          |
|-----|------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| sìi | kháw pen lûuk khon thîi <u>sìi</u> | He's the fourth child.   |
| cèt | kháw pen lûuk khon thîi <u>cèt</u> | She's the seventh child. |
| too | kháw pen lûuk khon <u>too</u>      | He's the oldest child.   |

### c) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Question</u>                                     | <u>Response</u>                                 |
|------------|---|---|
| 1. sǎam    | lûukchaaj khon thîi thâwràj<br>Which son (is it)?   | (lûukchaaj) khon thîi <u>sǎam</u><br>The third. |
| 2. sìi     | nákrian khon thîi thâwràj<br>Which student (is it)? | (nákrian) khon thîi <u>sìi</u><br>The fourth.   |
| 3. hòk     | khruu khon thîi thâwràj<br>Which teacher (is it)?   | (khruu) khon thîi <u>hòk</u><br>The sixth.      |
| 4. sǒɔŋ    | mǒɔ khon thîi thâwràj<br>Which doctor (is it)?      | (mǒɔ) khon thîi <u>sǒɔŋ</u><br>The second.      |
| 5. sǎam    | chaawnaa khon thîi thâwràj<br>Which farmer (is it)? | (chaawnaa) khon thîi <u>sǎam</u><br>The third.  |
| 6. nỳn     | nànsỳy lêm thîi thâwràj<br>Which book (is it)?      | (nànsỳy) lêm thîi <u>nỳn</u><br>The first.      |
| 7. sǒɔŋ    | pàakkaa dâam thîi thâwràj<br>Which pen (is it)?     | (pàakkaa) dâam thîi <u>sǒɔŋ</u><br>The second.  |
| 8. pèet    | rót khan thîi thâwràj<br>Which car (is it)?         | (rót) khan thîi <u>pèet</u><br>The eighth.      |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

9. cèt      kradaat phèn thîi thâwràj      (kradaat) phèn thîi cèt  
             Which sheet of paper              The first.  
             (is it)?

10. nỳn      bòtnán bòt thîi thâwràj      (bòtnán) bòt thîi nỳn  
             Which lesson (is it)?              The first.

### d) Response Drill

1. lék      kháw pen lûuk khon thîi      kháw pen lûuk khon lék  
             thâwràj  
             Which child is he?              He's the youngest (child).

2. too      kháw pen lûukchaaj khon      kháw pen lûukchaaj khon  
             thîi thâwràj                      too  
             Which son is he?              He's the oldest (son).

3. klaaŋ    khun pen lûuk khon thîi      phôm pen lûuk khon klaaŋ  
             thâwràj  
             Which child are you?              I'm the middle child.

4. too      kháw pen lûuksăaw khon      kháw pen lûuksăaw khon  
             thîi thâwràj                      too  
             Which daughter is she?              She's the oldest daughter.

5. lék      khun pen lûukchaaj khon      phôm pen lûukchaaj khon  
             thîi thâwràj                      lék  
             Which son are you?              I'm the youngest son.

6. klaaŋ    dèk khon nán pen lûuk khon      dèk khon nán pen lûuk khon  
             thîi thâwràj khōŋ kháw      klaaŋ khōŋ kháw  
             Which of his children              That child is his  
             is that child?                      middle child.

**THAI BASIC COURSE**

---

- |    |     |   |  |  |  |
|----|-----|---|--|--|--|
| 7. | lék | dèk khonníi pen nǒɔŋ khon<br>thǐi thâwràj khǒɔŋ kháw<br>Which of his younger<br>siblings is this child? |  |  | dèk khonníi pen nǒɔŋ<br>khon lék khǒɔŋ kháw<br>That child is the<br>youngest of his<br>siblings. |
| 8. | too | khun pen lôuk khon thǐi<br>thâwràj<br>Which child are you?  |  |  | phǒm pen lôuk khon too<br>I'm the oldest (child).  |

e) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |    |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|--|--|--|--|--|
| 1. |  | phǒm pen <u>lôuksìt khon rĕek</u><br>khǒɔŋ kháw                              |  |  | I was his first student.                         |
| 2. |  | kháw pen <u>khruu phaasǎathaj khon</u><br><u>rĕek khǒɔŋ éf-és-aj</u>         |  |  | She was the first Thai<br>teacher at FSI.        |
| 3. |  | náŋsǎy lĕm níi pen <u>náŋsǎy lĕm</u><br>rĕek thǐi kháw khǎn                  |  |  | This book was the first<br>book he wrote.        |
| 4. |  | rót khan níi pen <u>rót khan rĕek</u><br>khǒɔŋ phǒm                          |  |  | This car is my first car.                        |
| 5. |  | phaasǎathaj pen phaasǎa<br>tàanprathĕet <u>phaasǎarĕek</u><br>thǐi phǒm rian |  |  | Thai is the first foreign<br>language I studied. |
| 6. |  | kháw pen <u>khon rĕek</u> thǐi phǒm<br>rúucàk                                |  |  | He is the first person<br>I met.                 |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>7. mǎo khon nán pen <u>mǎo khon rĕk</u><br/>naj caŋwàt níi</p>                                | <p>That doctor was the first<br/>doctor in this province.</p>         |
| <p>8. prathaanaathípbadii wəochintān<br/>pen prathaanaathípbadii khon<br/>rĕk khǒŋ ameerikaa</p> | <p>President Washington was<br/>the first American<br/>president.</p> |

### f) Response Drill

| <u>Cues</u>                         | <u>Question</u>   | <u>Response</u>                            |
|-------------------------------------|---|--|
| 1. phūujǐŋ khonnán<br>kìi pii       | phūujǐŋ khonnán aajú<br>kìi pii<br>How old is that<br>woman?        | kháw aajú sĭp hòk pii<br>She's 16.         |
| 2. khun phōo khun,<br>thâwràj (50)  | khun phōokhun aajú<br>thâwràj<br>How old is your<br>father?         | thāan aajú<br>nāa sĭp pii<br>He's 50.      |
| 3. phŷan khun,<br>thâwràj (30)      | phŷan khun aajú<br>thâwràj<br>How old is your<br>friend?            | kháw aajú sǎam-sĭp<br>pii<br>She's thirty. |
| 4. phŷichaaŋ khun,<br>thâwràj (29)  | phŷichaaŋ khun<br>aajú thâwràj<br>How old is your<br>older brother? | kháw aajú jŷi-sĭp<br>kâw pii<br>He's 29.   |
| 5. lŷukchaaŋ khun,<br>kìi khùap (2) | lŷukchaaŋ khun aajú<br>kìi khùap<br>How old is your<br>son?         | kháw aajú sǒŋ<br>khùap<br>He's 2.          |

6.    nó๓sǎaw khun,      nó๓sǎaw khun aajú      kháw aajú sǐp  
       thâwràj (10)        thâwràj                   khùap  
                                   How old is your                She's 10.  
                                   sister?

g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |                         |   |  |
|-------------------------|---|--|
| 1.   kháw mii lûuk      | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{khon diaw} \\ \text{khon ny๓} \\ \text{ny๓ khon} \end{array} \right.$ | <p>He has <u>only one</u> child.</p> <p>He has <u>a</u> child.</p> <p>He has <u>one</u> child.</p> |
| 2.   kháw mii phanrajaa | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{khon diaw} \\ \text{khon ny๓} \\ \text{ny๓ khon} \end{array} \right.$ | <p>He has only one wife.</p> <p>He has a wife.</p> <p>He has one wife.</p>                         |
| 3.   phǎm mii ná๓sǎy    | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{lêm diaw} \\ \text{lêm ny๓} \\ \text{ny๓ lêm} \end{array} \right.$    | <p>I have only one book.</p> <p>I have a book</p> <p>I have one book.</p>                          |
| 4.   phǎm mii pàakkaa   | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{dâam diaw} \\ \text{dâam ny๓} \\ \text{ny๓ dâam} \end{array} \right.$ | <p>I have only one pen.</p> <p>I have a pen.</p> <p>I have one pen.</p>                            |
| 5.   kháw mii nákrían   | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{khon diaw} \\ \text{khon ny๓} \\ \text{ny๓ khon} \end{array} \right.$ | <p>He has only one student.</p> <p>He has a student.</p> <p>He has one student.</p>                |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### h) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Question</u>   | <u>Response</u>  |
|------------|---|--|
| 1. diaw    | kháw mii lûuk kîi khon<br>How many children does<br>he have?                | kháw mii lûuk khon diaw<br>He has only one child.                        |
| 2. lăaj    | kháw mii phÿan kîi khon<br>How many friends does<br>he have?                | kháw mii phÿan lăaj khon<br>He has many friends.                         |
| 3. diaw    | kháw mii nánsÿy kîi lêm<br>How many books does<br>he have?                  | kháw mii nánsÿy lêm diaw<br>He has only one book.                        |
| 4. diaw    | kháw sÿy samùt kîi lêm<br>How many notebooks did<br>he buy?                 | kháw sÿy samùt lêm diaw<br>He bought only one<br>notebook.               |
| 5. lăaj    | kháw rúucàk khon thaj kîi<br>khon<br>How many Thais does he<br>know?        | kháw rúucàk khon thaj<br>lăaj khon<br>He knows many Thais.               |
| 6. diaw    | kháw rúucàk khon aṅkrìt<br>kîi khon<br>How many Englishmen does<br>he know? | kháw rúucàk khon aṅkrìt<br>khon diaw<br>He knows only one<br>Englishman. |
| 7. diaw    | kháw paj kàp khraj<br>Who did he go with?                                   | kháw paj khon diaw<br>He went by himself.                                |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

8. lǎaj kháw paj kàp khraj kháw paj kan lǎaj khon  
Who did they go with? Several of them went together.
9. diaw kháw thaan khâaw kàp khraj kháw thaan khon diaw  
Who does he eat with? He eats alone.

### 1) Substitution Drill

- | <u>Cue</u>                                  | <u>Pattern</u>   |
|---|--|
| 1. chýy cim, coon                           | khon nyɲ <u>chýy cim</u> , ìik khon nyɲ chýy <u>coon</u><br>One person is named Jim; another, John.                              |
| 2. pen thaj, ameerikan                      | khon nyɲ <u>pen thaj</u> , ìik khon nyɲ pen <u>ameerikan</u><br>One person is Thai; another, American.                           |
| 3. pen khruu, thahǎan                       | khon nyɲ <u>pen khruu</u> , ìik khon nyɲ pen <u>thahǎan</u><br>One person is a teacher; another, a soldier.                      |
| 4. pen phîi, nóon                           | khon nyɲ <u>pen phîi</u> , ìik khon nyɲ pen <u>nóon</u><br>One is an older sibling; another is a younger sibling.                |
| 5. sǎaj, mâj sǎaj                           | khon nyɲ <u>sǎaj</u> , ìik khon nyɲ <u>mâj sǎaj</u><br>One person is pretty; another, not.                                       |
| 6. kèn, mâj kèn                             | khon nyɲ <u>kèn</u> , ìik khon nyɲ <u>mâj kèn</u><br>One person is skillful; another isn't.                                      |
| 7. phûut phaasǎa<br>an̄krít dâj,<br>mâj dâj | khon nyɲ <u>phûut phaasǎa an̄krít dâj</u> ,<br>ìik khon nyɲ phûut <u>mâj dâj</u><br>One person can speak English; another can't. |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

8. jùu myaη thaj, khon nyη jùu myaη thaj, ìik khon nyη jùu  
 jùu ameerikaa ameerikaa  
 One person is in Thailand; another in  
 America.
9. tènŋaan lésw khon nyη tènŋaan lésw, ìik khon nyη jaη  
 jaη pen sòot pen sòot  
 One person is married; another is  
 still single.
10. paj lésw, jaη jùu khon nyη paj lésw, ìik khon nyη jaη jùu  
 One person has gone; another is still  
 here.

### j) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u>                         | <u>Question</u>   | <u>Response</u>   |
|------------------------------------|---|---|
| 1. cim, cɔɔn                       | sɔɔŋ khon nán chÿy<br>araj<br>What are those two<br>people named?                                     | chÿy <u>cim</u> khon nyη, ìik<br>khon nyη chÿy <u>cɔɔn</u><br>One is named Jim,<br>the other John.                                      |
| 2. tènŋ lésw, jaη<br>pen sòot      | nóɔŋchaaj khun tènŋaan<br>lésw rýjaη<br>Are your younger<br>brothers married yet?                     | <u>tènŋ lésw</u> khon nyη, ìik<br>khon nyη <u>jaη pen sòot</u><br>One is; one isn't.  |
| 3. pen mɔɔ, pen<br>khâarâatchakaan | phÿan khun sɔɔŋ khon<br>nán thamŋaan araj<br>khráp<br>What do your two<br>friends do for a<br>living? | <u>pen mɔɔ</u> khon nyη,<br>ìik khon nyη <u>pen</u><br><u>khâarâatchakaan</u><br>One's a doctor; the<br>other a government<br>employee. |

4. phûut dâj sǒŋ khon nán phûut phûut mâj dâj phaasǎa aŋkrít dâj phûut dâj khon nyŋ lik khon nyŋ phûut mâj dâj

5. dii, mâj dii náŋsǎy sǒŋ lêm nán dii lêm nyŋ, lik dii máj lêm nyŋ mâj dii  
 Are those two One is good; the  
 books good? other isn't.

k) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

1. rúucàk phŷan phǒm khun rúucàk phŷan phǒm léew rýjaŋ khráp  
 Have you met my friend yet?
2. kháw rúucàk kháw rúucàk phŷan phǒm léew rýjaŋ khráp  
 Has he met my friend yet?
3. paj thamŋaan kháw paj thamŋaan léew rýjaŋ khráp  
 Has he gone to work yet?
4. phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj léew rýjaŋ khráp  
 Can he speak Thai yet?
5. khun khun phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj léew rýjaŋ khráp  
 Can you speak Thai yet?
6. sýy náŋsǎy khun sýy náŋsǎy léew rýjaŋ khráp  
 Have you bought the books yet?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7. thaan khâaw                      khun thaan khâaw léew rýjaŋ khráp  
Have you eaten yet?
8. mií khrôpkhrua                      khun mií khrôpkhrua léew rýjaŋ khráp  
Do you have a family yet?
9. àan náŋsýy lêm nán      khun àan náŋsýy lêm nán léew rýjaŋ khráp  
Have you read that book yet?
10. rian bòt thîi sîp      khun rian bòt thîi sîp léew rýjaŋ khráp  
Have you studied lesson 10 yet?

### 1) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>                  |
|------------|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. yes     | khun rian bòt thîi sîp léew rýjaŋ khráp<br>Have you studied lesson 10 already? | rian léew khráp<br>Yes, we have. |
| 2. no      | khun thaan khâaw léew rýjaŋ khráp<br>Have you eaten yet?                       | jaŋ khráp<br>Not yet.            |
| 3. yes     | kháw paj thamŋaan léew rýjaŋ khráp<br>Has he gone to work yet?                 | paj léew khráp<br>Yes, he has.   |
| 4. no      | khun sŏŋ khon rúucàk kan léew rýjaŋ<br>khráp<br>Have you two met yet?          | jaŋ khráp<br>Not yet.            |
| 5. no      | kháw mií náŋsýy léew rýjaŋ khráp<br>Does he have the books yet?                | jaŋ khráp<br>Not yet.            |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |     |     |  |                                 |
|-----|-----|--|---------------------------------|
| 6.  | yes | thīnān aakàat nǎaw rýjaŋ<br>Is it cold there yet?                          | nǎaw léɛw khráp<br>Yes, it is.  |
| 7.  | no  | khun phūut kàp kháw léɛw rýjaŋ khráp<br>Have you spoken with him yet?      | jaŋ khráp<br>Not yet.           |
| 8.  | yes | khun phūut phaasǎa thaj dāj léɛw rýjaŋ<br>khráp<br>Can you speak Thai yet? | dāj léɛw<br>Yes, I can.         |
| 9.  | no  | khun khīan phaasǎa thaj dāj léɛw rýjaŋ<br>khráp<br>Can you write Thai yet? | jaŋ khráp<br>Not yet.           |
| 10. | yes | kháw khàp rót pen léɛw rýjaŋ khráp<br>Does he know how to drive yet?       | pen léɛw khráp<br>Yes, he does. |
| 11. | no  | kháw wāaj nám pen léɛw rýjaŋ<br>Can he swim yet?                           | jaŋ khráp<br>Not yet.           |

m) Transformation Drill (Add a negative statement with jaŋ to the affirmative statement.)

| <u>Affirmative Statement</u>                            | <u>Negative Statement</u>                                       |
|---|---|
| 1. phǒm maa léɛw<br>I've come already                   | tèɛ kháw jaŋ mâj maa<br>but he hasn't yet.                      |
| 2. phǒm mii náŋsǎy léɛw<br>I have books already         | tèɛ kháw jaŋ mâj mii<br>but he doesn't yet.                     |
| 3. phaasǎa thaj phǒm dii léɛw<br>My Thai's good already | tèɛ phaasǎa thaj khǒŋ kháw jaŋ<br>mâj dii<br>but his isn't yet. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>4. khun kèn lếsw<br/>         You are already good<br/>         (at something)</p> | <p>tềe kháw jaŋ mâj kèn<br/>         but he isn't yet.</p>     |
| <p>5. phỏm khөөj paj myaŋ thaŋ lếsw<br/>         I've already been to Thailand</p>    | <p>tềe kháw jaŋ mâj khөөj<br/>         but he hasn't yet.</p>  |
| <p>6. phỏm khàp rỏt pen lếsw<br/>         I already know how to drive</p>             | <p>tềe kháw jaŋ mâj pen<br/>         but he doesn't yet.</p>   |
| <p>7. phỏm rúucàk khun lếsw<br/>         I've already met you</p>                     | <p>tềe kháw jaŋ mâj rúucàk<br/>         but he hasn't yet.</p> |

### n) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. klàp bầan</p>                            | <p>kháw jaŋ mâj <u>klàp bầan</u><br/>         He hasn't gone home yet.</p>  |
| <p>2. khөөj thaan<br/>         aahầan thaŋ</p> | <p>kháw jaŋ mâj <u>khөөj thaan aahầan thaŋ</u><br/>         He hasn't ever eaten Thai food.</p>   |
| <p>3. kèn</p>                                  | <p>kháw jaŋ mâj <u>kèn</u><br/>         He isn't good (at doing something) yet.</p>   |
| <p>4. phũut phaasầathaj</p>                    | <p>kháw { <u>phũut phaasầa thaŋ</u> jaŋ mâj kèn<br/>         { jaŋ <u>phũut phaasầa thaŋ</u> mâj kèn<br/>         He doesn't speak Thai well yet.</p> |
| <p>5. pen</p>                                  | <p>kháw jaŋ mâj <u>pen</u><br/>         He doesn't know how to do it yet.</p>   |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. phǒm khít wâa kháw sǒn khun léew tɛɛ kháw jaŋ mâj dâj sǒn  
I thought he had already taught  
it to you, but he hadn't.
7. phǒm khít wâa kháw àan nǎnsǎy lêm tɛɛ kháw jaŋ mâj dâj àan  
níi léew  
I thought he had already read  
this book, but he hadn't.
8. phǒm khít wâa kháw phim còtmǎaj tɛɛ kháw jaŋ mâj dâj phim  
léew  
I thought he had already typed  
the letter , but he hadn't.
9. phǒm khít wâa kháw sýy nǎnsǎy lêm tɛɛ kháw jaŋ mâj dâj sýy  
nán léew  
I thought he had already  
bought that book , but he hadn't.
10. phǒm khít wâa kháw faŋ théep an tɛɛ kháw jaŋ mâj dâj faŋ  
níi léew  
I thought he had already listened  
to this tape , but he hadn't.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### p) Sentence Construction Drill

One student forms a sentence like Sentence 1 and another forms a question like Sentence 2 from the cues given. The first student answers the question.

| <u>Cue</u>                   | <u>Sentence 1</u>   | <u>Sentence 2</u>  |
|------------------------------|---|--|
| 1. paj sòŋ còtmǎaj           | phǒm jaŋ mâj dâj paj<br>sòŋ còtmǎaj<br>I haven't mailed<br>the letters yet.   | khun jaŋ mâj dâj paj<br>sòŋ còtmǎaj rěkh ráp<br>Haven't you mailed<br>the letters yet? |
| 2. tha an aahǎan<br>klaanwan | phǒm jaŋ mâj dâj tha an<br>aahǎan klaanwan<br>I haven't eaten<br>lunch yet.   | khun jaŋ mâj dâj tha an<br>aahǎan klaanwan rěkh ráp<br>Haven't you eaten<br>lunch yet? |
| 3. kèn                       | phǒm jaŋ mâj kèn<br>I'm not good yet.   | khun jaŋ mâj kèn<br>rěkh ráp<br>Aren't you good yet?                                   |
| 4. phûut phaasǎathaj         | phǒm phûut phaasǎa<br>thaj jaŋ mâj dâj<br>(phǒm jaŋ phûut<br>phaasǎa thaj mâj<br>dâj)<br>I can't speak Thai<br>yet. | khun phûut phaasǎa<br>thaj jaŋ mâj dâj<br>rěkh ráp<br>Can't you speak<br>Thai yet?     |
| 5. rúucàk kháw               | phǒm jaŋ mâj rúucàk<br>kháw<br>I haven't met her<br>yet.  | khun jaŋ mâj rúucàk<br>kháw rěkh ráp<br>Haven't you met<br>her yet?                    |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|    |           |                                |                                       |
|----|-----------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 6. | sý nánsýy | phǒm jaŋ mâj dâj sýy<br>nánsýy | khun jaŋ mâj dâj sýy<br>nánsýy rěkháp |
|    |           | I haven't bought<br>books yet. | Haven't you bought<br>books yet?      |

### 12.4 EXERCISES

- a) Make up a family chart (like the one in 12.1) for each member of the class and the tutor.
- b) Ask questions about each member of the family in order to find out the following information:
  1. name
  2. age
  3. present and past occupations
  4. residence
  5. place of work
  6. travel experience
  7. languages spoken
  8. skill in sports and other activities
- c) If some of the people in the class have children, find out the name, sex, and age of them.

### 12.5 VOCABULARY

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| aahǎan klaaŋwan | lunch, noontime meal                            |
| aajú            | age (in years)                                  |
| an              | classifiers of things                           |
| bòt (bòt)       | lesson (in a textbook)                          |
| bùt (khon)      | child (elegant usage) (one's direct descendant) |
| dèk (khon)      | child (immature person)                         |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| diaw             | one only, only  |
| jaŋ              | still, not yet  |
| khan             | classifier for cars, and other vehicles                 |
| khít             | to think  |
| khon klaaŋ       | the middle one (of children)                            |
| khon lék         | the youngest one (of children)                          |
| khon sùt thóŋ    | the youngest one (of children)                          |
| khon too         | the oldest one (of children)                            |
| khrôŋpkhrua      | the family  |
| (khrôŋpkhrua)    |   |
| khùap            | year (of age for people under 14 years)                 |
| khun phô         | parents (polite usage)                                  |
| khun mĕe (khon)  |   |
| klaaŋwan         | in the daytime, by day                                  |
| lék              | small, little (in size)                                 |
| léew             | already (used to indicate completed action)             |
| léew rý jaŋ      | or not yet? (used in questions)                         |
| léew lý jaŋ      |   |
| léew lé jaŋ      |   |
| léew ý jaŋ       |   |
| léew é jaŋ       |   |
| lûuk (khon)      | child (common usage, refers to one's direct descendant) |
| lûuksít (khon)   | student, pupil  |
| mĕe (khon)       | mother  |
| nóŋ (khon)       | younger brothers and/or sisters                         |
| nóŋ chaaj (khon) | younger brother(s)                                      |
| nóŋ sǎaw (khon)  | younger sister(s)                                       |
| ŋaan             | ceremony  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| phîi (khon)         | older brother(s) and/or sister(s)   |
| phîi chaaj (khon)   | older brother(s)  |
| phîi nǎw (khon)     | brother(s) and sister(s)  |
| phîi sǎaw (khon)    | older sister(s)   |
| phǎw (khon)         | father  |
| pii                 | year  |
| prathan             |   |
| aathǐpboodii (khon) | the president of a country  |
| rǎek                | to be first   |
| rýjaŋ               | yet (question word)   |
| sòot                | to be single, unmarried   |
| tèŋ                 | to decorate, adorn (the verb in <u>tèŋ naan</u> )   |
| tèŋ naan            | to marry, to get married, to be married   |
| thîi                | form that is used with numerals to form ordinal numbers, hence <u>thîi sǎam</u> 'third', etc. |
| too                 | big, large, mature  |

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON THIRTEEN

### 13.0 BASIC DIALOG: Telling Time

- A: kîi moon lếw khráp                      What time is it?  
B: hâa moon cháaw kwàa lếw khráp        It's after 11 a.m.  
    naalikaa khố๓ khun weelaa            What time is it  
    thâwràj khráp                            by your watch?
- A: naalikaa phỏm ìik hâa naathii        By my watch it's five  
    ca hâa moon cháaw                      minutes to 11 a.m.  
B: naalikaa khun cháa paj síp hâa        Your watch is fifteen  
    naathii khráp                            minutes slow.
- A: nán, phỏm hẻn ca tồ๓ ríp              In that case, it seems  
    paj dểawníi                                I will have to hurry.  
B: khun ca ríp paj nắj khráp              Where are you hurrying to?  
A: ca paj aw ๓๓n thủi thanaakaan        I'll go get some money at  
    kỏ๓, lếw ca paj prajsanii              the bank first, then go  
    to the Post Office.  
B: ca klàp mỷaràj khráp                    When will you return?  
A: tỏ๓ bàaj bàaj khráp                    Sometime in the afternoon.

### 13.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) kwàa 'more than, to a greater extent or degree'

    hâa              moon      cháaw      kwàa      lếw  
(11 (lit. 5) o'clock a.m. more than already)

'It's after 11 a.m.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

b) khrȳn 'half'

sǎn            moon      cháaw          khrȳn  
 (8 [lit. 2]) o'clock a.m. half [hour]

'8:30 a.m.'

c) tron 'exactly, sharp (of time)'

hâa            moon      cháaw          tron  
 (11 [lit. 5]) o'clock a.m. sharp)

'11 a.m. sharp'

### 13.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) ik... ca is used to indicate time in the future.

| ik                            | Period of Time           | ca            | Clock Time                 |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|---------------|----------------------------|
| ik<br>(additional             | hâa naathii<br>5 minutes | ca<br>will be | sǎam moon cháaw<br>9 a.m.) |
| 'It's five minutes to 9 a.m.' |                          |               |                            |

b) To indicate the extent of error of a timepiece the following construction is used:

| Direction of Error               | Excess          | Amount of Time            |
|----------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------|
| cháa / rew<br>(slow / fast       | paj<br>too much | hâa naathii<br>5 minutes) |
| '(It's) five minutes slow/fast.' |                 |                           |

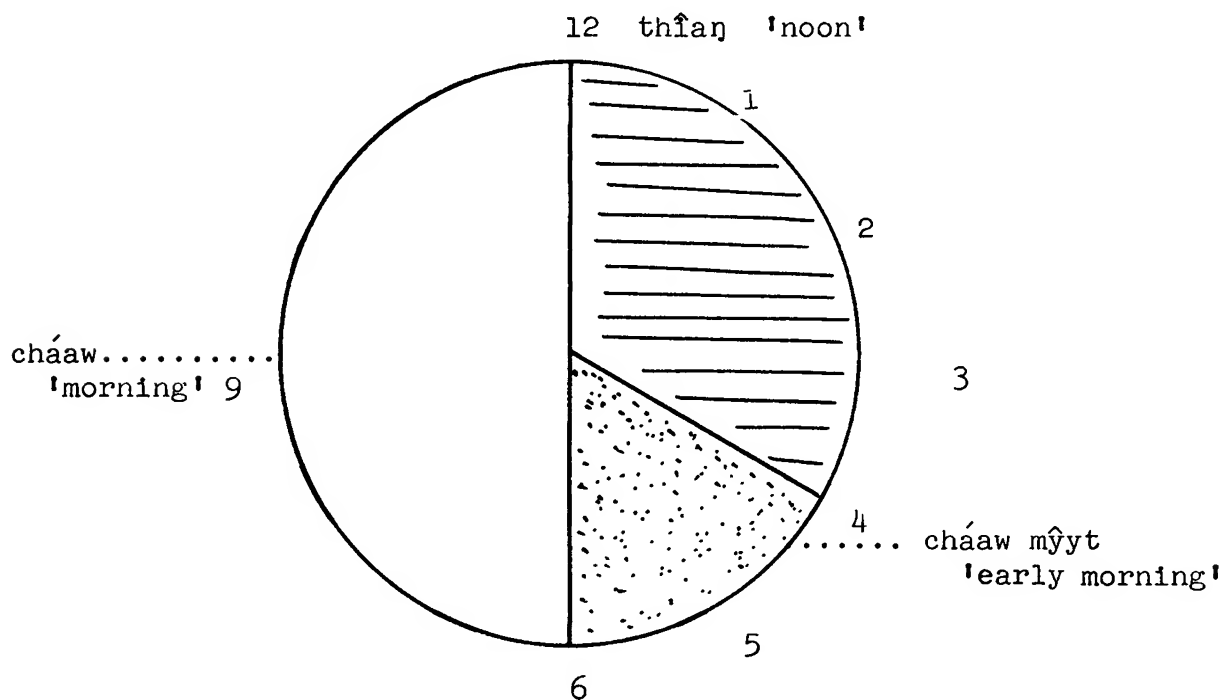
# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## 13.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

klaanwan 'daytime'



|        |                         |           |            |                  |
|--------|-------------------------|-----------|------------|------------------|
| cháaw: | hòk moon cháaw          | ' 6 a.m.' | cháaw mýt: | tii sîi '4 a.m.' |
|        | moon cháaw <sup>1</sup> | ' 7 a.m.' |            | tii hâa '5 a.m.' |
|        | sǒn moon cháaw          | ' 8 a.m.' |            |                  |
|        | sǎam moon cháaw         | ' 9 a.m.' |            |                  |
|        | sîi moon cháaw          | '10 a.m.' |            |                  |
|        | hâa moon cháaw          | '11 a.m.' |            |                  |
|        | thian                   | 'noon'    |            |                  |

---

<sup>1</sup>Bangkok speakers prefer moon cháaw, but many other persons say cèt moon cháaw.

Note to the Instructor: A real clock or a facsimile clock face should be used in performing many of the drills in this lesson.

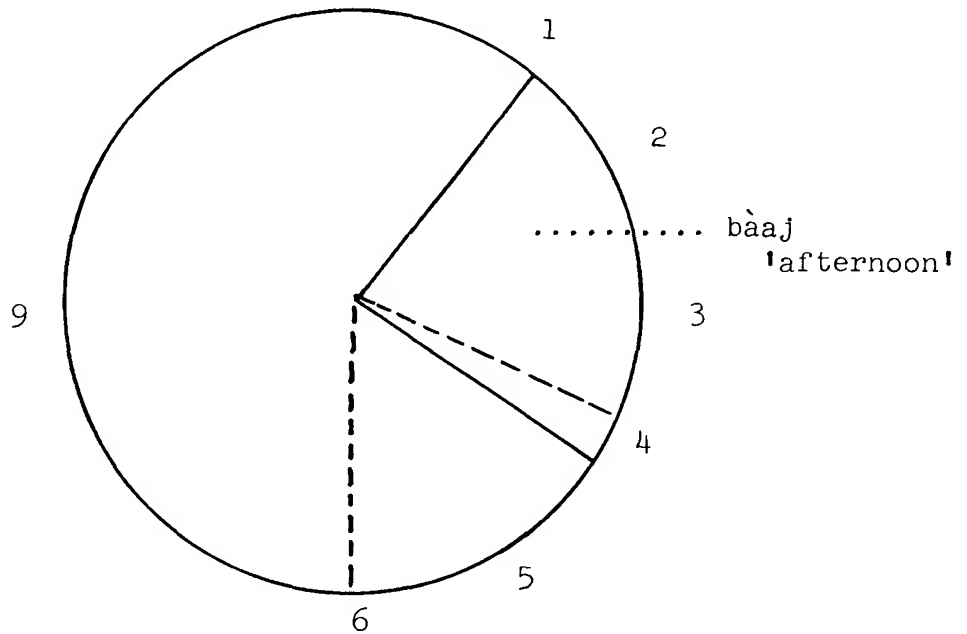
# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

klaanwan 'daytime'

12 thian 'noon'



|       |                |                        |
|-------|----------------|------------------------|
| bàaj: | bàaj moon      | '1 p.m.'               |
|       | bàaj sǎam moon | '2 p.m.'               |
|       | bàaj sǎam moon | '3 p.m.'               |
|       | bàaj sì moon   | '4 p.m. <sup>1</sup> ' |
| jən:  | sì moon jən    | '4 p.m.'               |
|       | hâa moon jən   | '5 p.m.'               |
|       | hòk moon jən   | '6 p.m.'               |

---

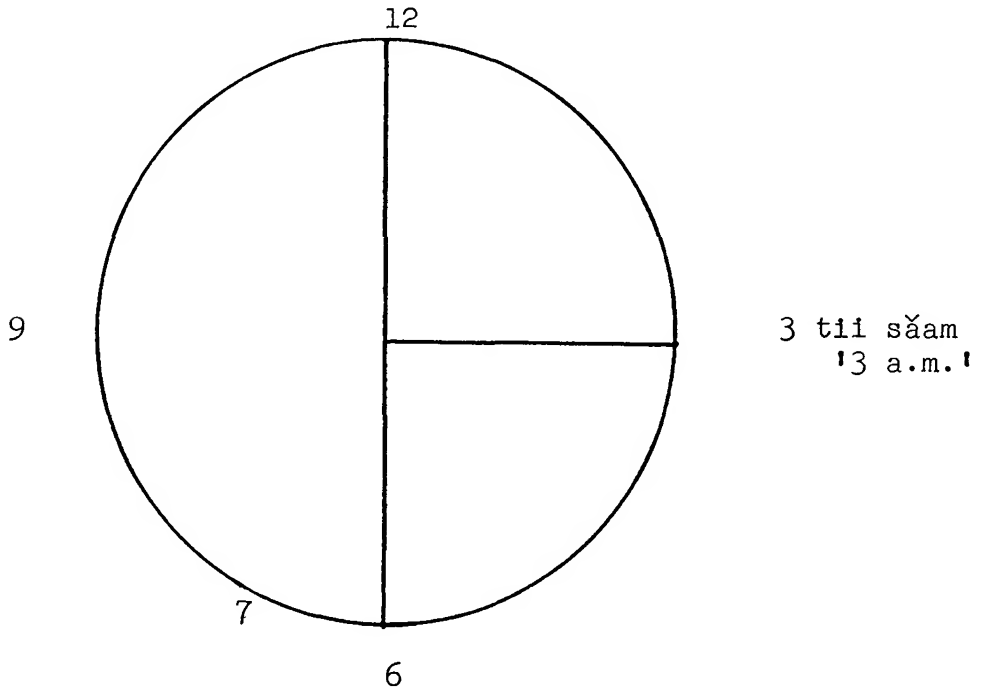
<sup>1</sup>Both bàaj sì moon and sì moon jən are used for 4 p.m.

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

klaaṅkhyyn 'nighttime'



|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| nỳṅ thûm    | ' 7 p.m. '      |
| sǎṅ thûm    | ' 8 p.m. '      |
| sǎam thûm   | ' 9 p.m. '      |
| sìi thûm    | '10 p.m. '      |
| hâa thûm    | '11 p.m. '      |
| thîaṅ khyyn | '12' (midnight) |
| tii nỳṅ     | ' 1 a.m. '      |
| tii sǎṅ     | ' 2 a.m. '      |
| tii sǎam    | ' 3 a.m. '      |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d) Response Drill (Point at the time on the clock face.)

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Question</u>                        | <u>Response</u>                     |
|------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. 11 a.m. | kìi moon lếw khráp<br>What time is it? | hâa moon cháaw lếw khráp<br>11 a.m. |
| 2. 9 a.m.  | kìi moon lếw khráp<br>What time is it? | săam moon cháaw khráp<br>9 a.m.     |
| 3. 10 a.m. | kìi moon lếw khráp<br>What time is it? | sìi moon cháaw khráp<br>10 a.m.     |
| 4. 12 a.m. | kìi moon lếw khráp<br>What time is it? | thiạng lếw khráp<br>It's noon.      |
| 5. 1 p.m.  | kìi moon lếw khráp<br>What time is it? | bàaj moon khráp<br>1 p.m.           |
| 6. 3 p.m.  | kìi moon lếw khráp<br>What time is it? | bàaj sảam moon khráp<br>3 p.m.      |
| 7. 4 p.m.  | kìi moon lếw khráp<br>What time is it? | sìi moon jen khráp<br>4 p.m.        |
| 8. 6 p.m.  | kìi moon lếw khráp<br>What time is it? | hòk moon jen khráp<br>6 p.m.        |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u>  | <u>Question</u>                         | <u>Response</u>                 |
|-------------|---|---------------------------------|
| 1. 7 p.m.   | kìi thûm léew khráp<br>What time is it? | nỳn thûm (léew) khráp<br>7 p.m. |
| 2. 8 p.m.   | kìi thûm léew khráp<br>What time is it? | sǒɔŋ thûm khráp<br>8 p.m.       |
| 3. 10 p.m.  | kìi thûm léew khráp<br>What time is it? | sǐi thûm khráp<br>10 p.m.       |
| 4. 11 p.m.  | kìi thûm léew khráp<br>What time is it? | hâa thûm khráp<br>11 p.m.       |
| 5. Midnight | kìi thûm léew khráp<br>What time is it? | thîaŋ khyyn<br>Midnight.        |
| 6. 2 a.m.   | kìi thûm léew khráp<br>What time is it? | tii sǒɔŋ khráp<br>2 a.m.        |

### f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| 1. tii sǐi sǎam naathii                | 4:03 a.m.  |
| 2. tii hâa sǒɔŋ naathii                | 5:02 a.m.  |
| 3. hòk moon cháaw sǐp hâa naathii      | 6:15 a.m.  |
| 4. moon cháaw jǐi-sǐp naathii          | 7:20 a.m.  |
| 5. sǒɔŋ moon cháaw khrỳn               | 8:30 a.m.  |
| 6. sǎam moon cháaw sǐi sǐp hâa naathii | 9:45 a.m.  |
| 7. hâa moon cháaw tron                 | 11:00 a.m. |
| 8. thîaŋ khrỳn                         | 12:30 p.m. |
| 9. bàaj moon hâa-sǐp naathii           | 1:50 p.m.  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

10. hâa moon jen jîi-síp hâa naathii 5:25 p.m.
11. thûm khrÿn 7:30 p.m.
12. thîaŋ khyyn hâa naathii 12:05 a.m.

### g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. ìik jîi-síp naathii ca sǎam moon cháaw 8:40 a.m.
2. ìik síp hâa naathii ca hâa moon cháaw 10:45 a.m.
3. ìik síp sǒn naathii ca thîaŋ 11:48 a.m.
4. ìik cèt naathii ca bàaj moon 12:53 p.m.
5. ìik hâa naathii ca sîi moon jen 3:55 p.m.
6. ìik pèet naathii ca hâa moon khrÿn 11:22 a.m.
7. ìik jîi-síp hâa naathii ca thîaŋ khyyn 11:35 p.m.

### h) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

1. síp cèt                      naalikaá phǒm cháa paj síp cèt naathii  
My watch is seventeen minutes slow.
2. khun                        naalikaá khun cháa paj síp cèt naathii  
Your watch is 17 minutes slow.
3. khrÿn chûamoon        naalikaá khun cháa paj khrÿn chûamoon  
Your watch is half an hour slow.
4. jîi síp sǒn                naalikaá khun cháa paj jîi-síp sǒn naathii  
naathii                      Your watch is 22 minutes slow.
5. phǒm                        naalikaá phǒm cháa paj jîi-síp sǒn naathii  
My watch is 22 minutes slow.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### i) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>         | <u>Pattern</u>   |
|--------------------|--|
| 1. kâaw            | naalikaá phǒm rew paj <u>kâaw</u> naathii<br>My watch is 9 minutes fast.       |
| 2. khrÿŋ chûamoon  | naalikaá phǒm rew paj <u>khrÿŋ chûamoon</u><br>My watch is half an hour fast.  |
| 3. kháw            | naalikaá <u>kháw</u> rew paj khrÿŋ chûamoon<br>His watch is half an hour fast. |
| 4. sĭp hâa naathii | naalikaá kháw rew paj <u>sĭp hâa naathii</u><br>His watch is 15 minutes fast.  |

### j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (Parts of the Day)

|                 |                                      |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. toon cháaw   | 5 a.m. to 9:00 a.m. <sup>1</sup>     |
| 2. toon sǎaj    | 9 a.m. to 11:59 a.m.                 |
| 3. toon thĭaŋ   | 12 a.m. to 12:50 p.m.                |
| 4. toon bàaj    | 1 p.m. to 4:00 p.m.                  |
| 5. toon jen     | 4 p.m. to 6:30 p.m.                  |
| 6. toon khâm    | From 6:30 p.m. until around midnight |
| 7. toon hŭakhâm | 6:30 p.m. to 9 p.m.                  |
| 8. toon dÿk     | 10:00 p.m. to 3 a.m.                 |

---

1. Time periods are approximate only.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- k) Transformation Drill      Change from one pattern to the other.

|                         |              |
|-------------------------|--------------|
| tɔɔn cháaw <sup>1</sup> | weelaa cháaw |
| tɔɔn sǎaj               | weelaa sǎaj  |
| tɔɔn thǎan              | weelaa thǎan |
| tɔɔn bàaj               | weelaa bàaj  |
| tɔɔn jen                | weelaa jen   |
| tɔɔn khâm               | weelaa khâm  |

- l) Transformation Drill      (Change from Pattern 1 to Pattern 2.)

Pattern 1:    cháaw                      'In the morning'  
                  tɔɔn cháaw

Pattern 2:    cháaw cháaw                      'Sometime in the morning'  
                  tɔɔn cháaw cháaw

Pattern 1

tɔɔn cháaw  
In the morning.

tɔɔn sǎaj  
In the late morning.

tɔɔn thǎan  
At noon.

Pattern 2

tɔɔn cháaw cháaw  
Sometime in the morning.

tɔɔn sǎaj sǎaj  
Sometime in the late morning.

tɔɔn thǎan thǎan  
Sometime around noon.

---

<sup>1</sup>The meaning of these two patterns is the same. They are given in drill 'j'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>tɔɔn bàaj<br/>In the afternoon.</p>     | <p>tɔɔn bàaj bàaj<br/>Sometime in the afternoon.</p>    |
| <p>tɔɔn jen<br/>In the late afternoon.</p> | <p>tɔɔn jen jen<br/>Sometime in the late afternoon.</p> |
| <p>tɔɔn khâm khâm<br/>In the evening.</p>  | <p>tɔɔn khâm khâm<br/>Sometime in the evening.</p>      |
| <p>tɔɔn dỳk<br/>Late at night.</p>         | <p>tɔɔn dỳk dỳk<br/>Sometime late at night.</p>         |

### m) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u>          | <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>   |
|---------------------|--|---|
| 1. tɔɔn bàaj bàaj   | khun ca klàp mỳaràj<br><br>When will you<br>return?                      | (klàp) tɔɔn bàaj<br>bàaj khráp<br>Sometime in the<br>afternoon.   |
| 2. tɔɔn khâm khâm   | khun ca duu nànsǎy<br>mỳaràj<br><br>When will you<br>study?              | (duu) tɔɔn khâm khâm<br>khráp<br>In the evening.                  |
| 3. tɔɔn thian thian | khun ca thaان khâaw<br>mỳaràj<br><br>When will you eat?                  | (thaan) tɔɔn thian<br>thian khráp<br>Sometime around noon.        |
| 4. tɔɔn jen jen     | khun ca paj bâan<br>kháw mỳaràj<br><br>When will you go<br>to his house? | (paj) tɔɔn jen<br>jen khráp<br>Sometime in the<br>late afternoon. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                             |  |  |
|-----------------------------|--|--|
| 5. tɔɔn bàaj                | khun ca paj aw nɛən<br>m̄yàràj<br>When will you go<br>get the money?       | (paj) tɔɔn bàaj<br>khráp<br>In the afternoon.                      |
| 6. tɔɔn h̄aa moon<br>cháaw  | khun ca paj sòn<br>ph̄yan m̄yàràj<br>When will you see<br>your friend off? | (paj) tɔɔn h̄aa<br>moon cháaw<br>At 11 a.m.                        |
| 7. tɔɔn jen jen             | khun ca w̄aj nám<br>m̄yàràj<br>When will you<br>go swimming?               | (w̄aj) tɔɔn jen<br>jen khráp<br>Sometime late in<br>the afternoon. |
| 8. tɔɔn d̄yk                | kháw maa m̄yàràj<br>When did he come?                                      | (maa) tɔɔn d̄yk<br>Late at night.                                  |
| 9. m̄yawaanníi              | kháw paj m̄yàràj<br>When did he go?  | (paj) m̄yawaanníi<br>Yesterday.                                    |
| 10. m̄ya bàaj s̄ɔɔn<br>moon | kháw paj m̄yàràj<br>When did she go?                                       | (paj) m̄ya bàaj<br>s̄ɔɔn moon<br>At 2 p.m.                         |
| 11. m̄ya k̄iiníi            | kháw ph̄ut kàp khun<br>m̄yàràj<br>When did he speak<br>to you?             | (ph̄ut) m̄yak̄iiníi<br>A short time ago.                           |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### n) Transformation Drill

Observe the following examples:

- A: bàaj níi 'this afternoon' (Present or future time)  
m̂ya bàaj níi 'this afternoon' (Past time)
- B: khyynníi 'tonight' (Present or future time)  
m̂ya khyynníi 'tonight' (Past time)

#### Pattern 1

#### Pattern 2

- |                              |                                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. jenníi<br>this afternoon  | m̂yajenníi<br>this afternoon   |
| 2. bàaj sǎam moon<br>3 p.m.  | m̂ya bàaj sǎam moon<br>3 p.m.  |
| 3. cháawníi<br>this morning  | m̂yacháawníi<br>this morning   |
| 4. khâmníi<br>this evening   | m̂yakhâmníi<br>this evening    |
| 5. thîaṅníi<br>this noon     | m̂yathîaṅníi<br>this noon      |
| 6. sîi moon jen<br>4 p.m.    | m̂ya sîimoon jen<br>4 p.m.     |
| 7. sǎam moon cháaw<br>9 a.m. | m̂ya sǎam moon cháaw<br>9 a.m. |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### o) Substitution Drill

Using the cues given form pairs of sentences like the following with léew as the connective:

Cue: paj aw nən, paj prajsanii

Sentences: ca paj aw nən kòn, léew ca paj prajsanii

I'll get the money (first), then go to the Post Office.

#### Cue

#### Pattern

1. paj aw nánsǎy  
paj hônrían

ca paj aw nánsǎy kòn, léew ca paj  
hônrían

I'll get a book first, then  
go to the classroom.

2. paj thaán khâaw  
paj duu nǎn

ca paj thaán khâaw kòn, léew ca paj  
duu nǎn

I'll eat first, then go to  
the movies.

3. paj faŋ théep,  
paj hônsamùt

ca paj faŋ théep kòn, léew ca paj  
hônsamùt

I'll listen to tapes first,  
then go to the library.

4. paj talàat,  
paj bâan

ca paj talàat kòn, léew ca paj bâan

I'll go to the market, then home.

5. paj jùu krunthêep,  
jùu tàançanwàt

ca paj jùu krunthêep kòn, léew ca paj  
jùu tàançanwàt

I'll go live in Bangkok first,  
then go live in the provinces.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### p) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Question</u>                         | <u>Response</u>                  |
|------------|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. thĭaŋ   | thĭaŋ rýjaŋ<br>Is it noon yet?          | jaŋ mâj <u>thĭaŋ</u><br>Not yet. |
| 2. bàaj    | bàaj rýjaŋ<br>Is it afternoon yet?      | jaŋ mâj <u>bàaj</u><br>Not yet.  |
| 3. khâm    | khâm rýjaŋ<br>Is it evening yet?        | jaŋ mâj <u>khâm</u><br>Not yet.  |
| 4. dỳk     | dỳk rýjaŋ<br>Is it late (at night) yet? | jaŋ mâj <u>dỳk</u><br>Not yet.   |
| 5. cháaw   | cháaw rýjaŋ<br>Is it morning yet?       | jaŋ mâj <u>cháaw</u><br>Not yet. |

### 13.4 EXERCISES (Use a cardboard clock face with movable hands with the following exercises.)

- a) Set the hands on the clock face. One student asks what time it is and another responds according to the position of the hands.
- b) Set the hands on the clock face, then ask different students what time it will be in ten minutes, twenty minutes, one hour, etc.
- c) One student asks another what time it is by his watch; when he responds, the first student says that his watch is slow or fast by a certain number of minutes according to the time indicated by the classroom clock.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- d) Set the clock hands. Student A announces the time indicated. Student B asks Student C if it is (part of the day) (toon bàaj, toon jen, etc.) yet. Student C responds either (1) that it is, or (2) that it isn't yet according to the time announced by Student A.
- e) Concerning the activities listed below, find out from other students:
1. If they did any of them yesterday, and if so, at what time;
  2. If they will do any of them tomorrow, and if so, at what time;
  3. If they do any of them every day, and if so, at what time; and
  4. If they have done any of them yet. If the reply is that they haven't yet, find out if they will do any of them tomorrow, and if so, at what time.

### Activities:

- |                     |                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| a) come to school   | b) go mail a letter       |
| c) play music       | d) drive a car            |
| e) go to the bank   | f) drink coffee           |
| g) go see a doctor  | h) go for a walk          |
| i) go shopping      | j) go eat in a restaurant |
| k) go to work       | l) write a letter         |
| m) study lessons    | n) play tennis            |
| o) go to the market |                           |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 13.5 VOCABULARY

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| aw               | to get, to take   |
| bàaj / bàaj bàaj | afternoon, o'clock used for the time<br>1 p.m. - 4 p.m. |
| cháa             | late, slow  |
| cháaw            | morning, a.m.   |
| .cháawmÿyt       | early morning   |
| chûamooŋ         | hour (measure of Time)                                  |
| dǎawníi          | right now   |
| dỳk              | 11 p.m. - 3 a.m.  |
| hěn              | to see  |
| hěn ca           | think   |
| hôn̄samùt (hôn̄) | library   |
| hũakhâm          | 6 p.m. - 9 p.m.   |
| jen              | evening (used for 4 p.m. - 6 p.m.)                      |
| khâm             | 6 p.m. - 12 a.m.  |
| khrȳŋ           | half  |
| khyyn            | to be night   |
| khyynníi         | tonight   |
| klaaŋkhyyn       | night time (used for 7 p.m. - 3 a.m.)                   |
| kwàa             | more than, to a greater extent or degree                |
| lésw             | then  |
| moon̄            | o'clock, time   |
| mÿa              | used for past time                                      |
| mÿaràj           | when, question word                                     |
| mÿyt             | dark  |
| naathii          | minutes   |
| ŋán              | in that case  |
| (cháa) paj       | too much  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| rew         | early, fast                            |
| rîip        | to hurry                               |
| săaj        | late, the time 9 a.m. - 11:59 a.m.     |
| thîaŋ       | noon                                   |
| thîaŋ khyyn | midnight                               |
| thûm        | o'clock, used for 7 p.m. - 11 p.m.     |
| tii         | o'clock (for the time 1 a.m. - 5 a.m.) |
| toon        | sometime, time, part of (something)    |
| tron        | exactly, sharp (of time)               |
| weelaa      | time                                   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON FOURTEEN

#### 14.0 BASIC DIALOG: Directions (1)

- A: thěəwníi mii ráantàtphǒm máj khráp  
Is there a barber shop around here?
- B: mii khráp, jùu fànnóon  
Yes, there is. On the other side (of the street)
- A: jùu tronǎj khráp  
Exactly where?
- B: jùu khâaṅkhâaṅ ráankaafɛɛ<sup>1</sup>  
Next to the coffee shop
- A: jùu thaansáaj rý thaṅkhwǎa khráp  
To the left or right?
- B: jùu thaansáaj  
To the left.
- A: thaṅkhwǎa khǒṅ ráankaafɛɛ pen araj khráp  
What's to the right of the coffee shop?
- B: pen ráanaahǎan  
A restaurant.
- A: chýy khiinóot, cháj máj khráp  
It's named 'Key Note' isn't it?
- B: mǎj cháj khráp  
No, it isn't.
- ráan khiinóot jùu thǐinân  
The Key Note is over there.
- A: thanǒn thǐi jùu thaṅ khwǎa nân chýy thanǒn araj khráp  
What's the name of the street on the right?
- B: thanǒn nán rěkhráp  
That street?
- chýy thanǒn suriwon  
It's Suriwong.

---

<sup>1</sup>Bangkok is a rapidly changing city. Here today, gone tomorrow.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- A: (thanǒn suriwong) phàan  
sathǎanthûut ameerikan  
máj khráp      Does it (Suriwong Street)  
pass the American Embassy?
- B: māj phàan khráp      No, it doesn't.  
sathǎanthûut ameerikan jùu      The American Embassy is in  
thĕsw thanǒn phlœncit      the Ploenchit street area  
klâj klâj kàp sîjĕk      very near Ratprasong  
râatprasŏn      Corner.

### 14.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) Constructions with klâj 'near' and klaj 'far' are illustrated below:

|   |      |      |           |                |                    |                    |     |           |                |
|---|------|------|-----------|----------------|--------------------|--------------------|-----|-----------|----------------|
| <table style="border: none;"> <tr> <td rowspan="2" style="vertical-align: middle; padding-right: 10px;">jùu</td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">klaj</td> <td style="padding-left: 10px;">càak</td> <td style="padding-left: 10px;">krunthêep</td> <td rowspan="2" style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 10px;">'far from Bangkok'</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">klâj</td> <td style="padding-left: 10px;">kàp</td> <td style="padding-left: 10px;">krunthêep</td> <td rowspan="2" style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 10px;">'near Bangkok'</td> </tr> </table> <p style="text-align: center; margin-top: 5px;">_____</p> | jùu  | klaj | càak      | krunthêep      | 'far from Bangkok' | klâj               | kàp | krunthêep | 'near Bangkok' |
| jùu   |      | klaj | càak      | krunthêep      |                    | 'far from Bangkok' |     |           |                |
|   | klâj | kàp  | krunthêep | 'near Bangkok' |                    |                    |     |           |                |

ka can only be used after klâj when the word following begins with a consonant.

- b) The pairs of sentences below are equivalent in meaning:
- A: krunthêep jùu klaj      'Bangkok is far from  
càak udŏn      Udorn.'
- B: krunthêep kàp udŏn      'Bangkok and Udorn are  
jùu klaj kan      far apart.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- A: sathǎanthûut ameerikan jùu klâj kàp sathǎanthûut aᅇkrìt 'The American Embassy is near the British Embassy.'
- B: sathǎanthûut ameerikan kàp sathǎanthûut aᅇkrìt jùu klâj kan 'The American Embassy and the British Embassy are close to each other.'

- c) The extent of the distance between two places can be indicated by constructions like the following:

| NP <sup>1</sup>  | Verb Phrase   | NP <sup>2</sup> | Extent of distance |
|--|---------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| krunthêep  | jùu klaj càak | chianᅇmàj       | kìi kiloo          |
| krunthêep  | jùu klaj càak | chianᅇmàj       | 900 kiloo          |
| <p>'How far (how many kilometers) is Bangkok from Chiangmai?'</p> <p>'Bangkok is 900 kilometers from Chiangmai.'</p> |               |                 |                    |

- d) mii has the meaning 'to be in existence' in constructions like the one below:

| Location (optional)                             | <u>mii</u> | NP Complement |
|---|------------|---------------|
| (thěsw níi)                                     | mii        | ráantàtphǎm   |
| <p>'In this area (there) is a barber shop.'</p> |            |               |

There is no subject of the sentence.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 14.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Substitution Drills

| <u>Cue</u>               | <u>Pattern</u>   |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1. ráantàtphǒm           | thěəwníi mii <u>ráantàtphǒm</u> máj khráp<br>Is there a barber shop in this area?                      |
| 2. ráantàtsŷa            | thěəwníi mii <u>ráantàtsŷa</u> máj khráp<br>Is there a tailor shop in this area?                       |
| 3. ráankhǎaj náŋsŷyphim  | thěəwníi mii <u>ráankhǎaj náŋsŷyphim</u> máj<br>Is there a newstand in this area? ?                    |
| 4. pámnámman             | thěəwníi mii <u>pámnámman</u> máj khráp<br>Is there a gas pump in this area?                           |
| 5. thoorasàp sǎathaaraná | thěəwníi mii <u>thoorasàp sǎathaaraná</u> máj<br>khráp<br>Is there a public telephone in this<br>area? |
| 6. ráanmǔo               | thěəwníi mii <u>ráanmǔo</u> máj khráp<br>Is there a doctor's place in this area?                       |
| 7. ráankhǎaj jaa         | thěəwníi mii <u>ráankhǎaj jaa</u> máj khráp<br>Is there a pharmacy in this area?                       |
| 8. ráanaahǎan diidii     | thěəwníi mii <u>ráanaahǎan dii dii</u> máj khráp<br>Are there good restaurants in this area?           |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Progressive Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>             | <u>Pattern</u>   |
|------------------------|--|
| 1. ráantàtphǒm         | thěswnii mii <u>ráantàtphǒm</u> máj<br>Are there any barber shops in the area?                   |
| 2. thaan̄ khwǎa        | <u>thaan̄khwǎa</u> mii ráantàtphǒm máj<br>Are there any barbershops to the right?                |
| 3. thīi hooten         | <u>thīi hooten</u> mii ráantàtphǒm máj<br>Are there any barbershops at the hotel?                |
| 4. thoorasàp           | thīi hooten mii <u>thoorasàp</u> máj<br>Are there telephones at the hotel?                       |
| 5. thīin̄fi            | <u>thīin̄fi</u> mii thoorasàp máj<br>Are there telephones here?                                  |
| 6. aahǎan faràn̄ khǎaj | thīin̄fi mii <u>aahǎan faràn̄ khǎaj</u> máj<br>Is there foreign food for sale here?              |
| 7. thīi ráan nán       | <u>thīi ráan nán</u> mii aahǎan faràn̄ khǎaj máj<br>Is there foreign food for sale at that shop? |
| 8. thěsw nán           | <u>thěsw nán</u> mii aahǎan faràn̄ khǎaj máj<br>Is there foreign food for sale in this area?     |
| 9. ráankaafɛɛ          | thěsw nán mii <u>ráankaafɛɛ</u> máj<br>Are there coffee shops around here?                       |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

10. klâj klâj (kàp) klâj klâj (kàp) thîithamṅaan mii ráankaafæe  
thîithamṅaan máj  
Are there coffee shops near the office?

### c) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u>           | <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>   |
|----------------------|--|---|
| 1. pratuu náam       | juusōom jùu thîinǎj<br>khráp<br>Where is U.S.O.M?                                | jùu (thîi) <u>pratuu náam</u><br>khráp<br>On Pratunam.                              |
| 2. doon myaṅ         | sanǎambin <u>doon myaṅ</u><br>jùu thîinǎj khráp<br>Where's Don Muang<br>airport? | jùu thîi <u>doon myaṅ</u><br>khráp<br>At Don Muang.                                 |
| 3. saphaan khwaaj    | roonreem késēppitōon<br>jùu thîinǎj khráp<br>Where's the Capitol<br>Hotel?       | jùu (thîi) <u>saphaan</u><br><u>khwaaj</u> khráp<br>At the Water<br>Buffalo bridge. |
| 4. sîijêek pathumwan | sanǎam kiilaa jùu<br>thîinǎj khráp<br>Where's the Sports<br>Stadium?             | jùu (thîi) <u>sîijêek</u><br><u>pathumwan</u><br>At Pathumwan Corner.               |
| 5. baanṅapî          | bāan khun jùu thîi<br>nǎj<br>Where's your house?                                 | jùu <u>baanṅapî</u><br>At Bangkapi.   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d) Response Drill

Cue Words: bâan khun.... baan kapì

Student 1: bâan khun jùu thîinǎj      Where's your house?  
khráp

Student 2: jùu baan kapì khráp      In Bangkok.

| <u>Cue</u>                                      | <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>   |
|---|--|---|
| 1. sanǎam kiilaa,<br>thěew sîijêek<br>pathumwan | sanǎam kiilaa jùu<br>thîinǎj<br><br>Where's the Sport<br>Stadium?      | jùu (thîi) thěew<br>sîijêek pathumwan<br><br>Near Pathumwan<br>Corner.    |
| 2. juusôm,<br>pratuunám                         | juusôm jùu thîinǎj<br><br>Where is USOM?                               | jùu thîi pratuunám<br><br>At Pratunam.                                    |
| 3. bâan khun, klâj<br>klâj (kàp)<br>anúsăawarii | bâan khun jùu thîinǎj<br><br>Where's your house?                       | jùu klâj klâj (kàp)<br>anúsăawarii<br><br>Quite close to<br>the monument. |
| 4. roonrëem kéepitôn,<br>saphaan khwaaj         | roonrëem kéepitôn jùu<br>thîinǎj<br><br>Where's the Capitol<br>Hotel?  | jùu (thîi) saphaan<br>khwaaj<br><br>Near the Water<br>Buffalo Bridge.     |
| 5. sanǎambin dôn<br>myan, dôn myan              | sanǎambin dôn myan<br>jùu thîinǎj<br><br>Where's Don Muang<br>Airport? | jùu (thîi) dôn myan<br><br>At Don Muang.                                  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Substitution Drill (Use street chart on next page)

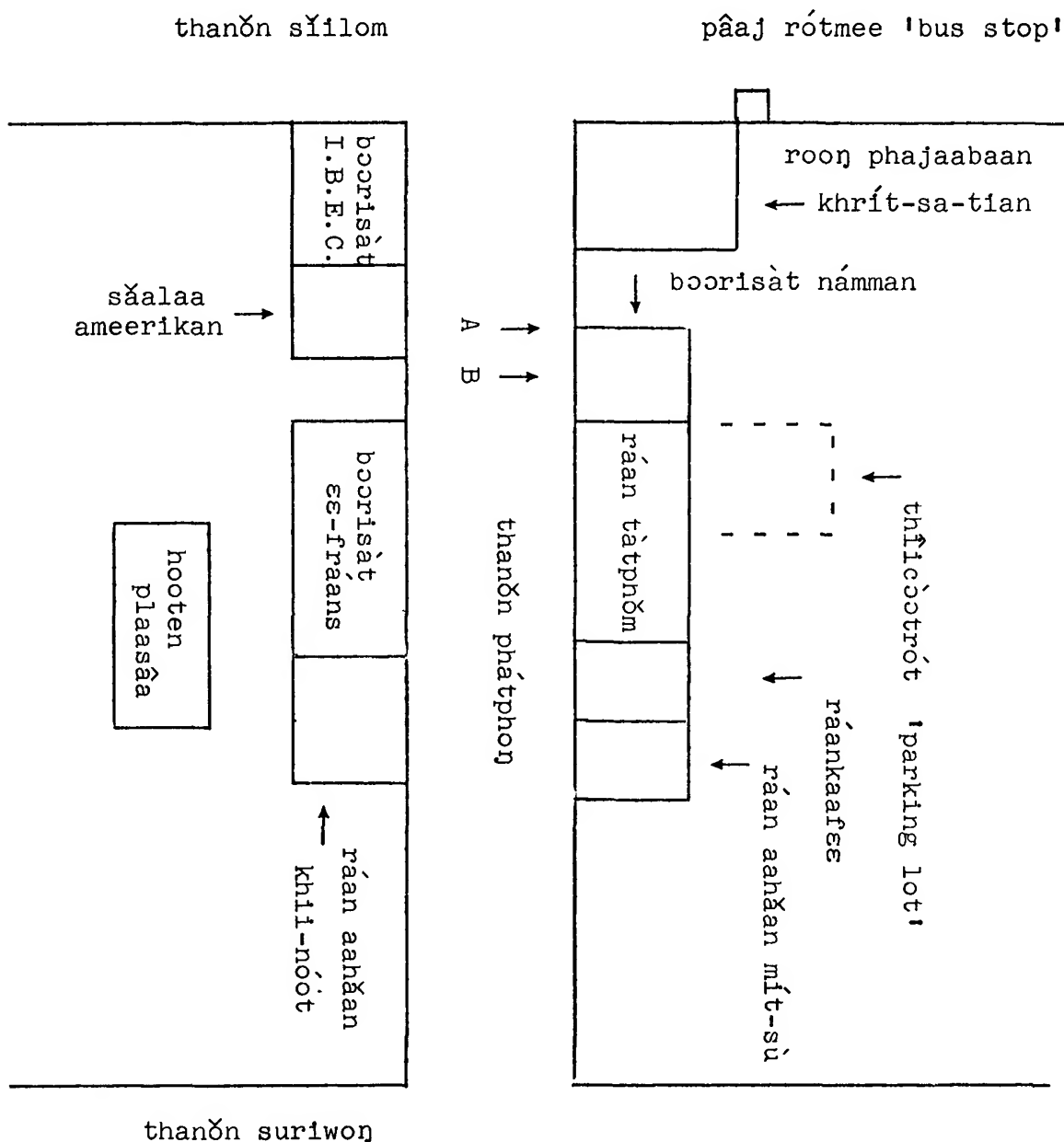
| <u>Cue</u>         | <u>Pattern</u>  |
|--------------------|---|
| 1. khwǎa           | <u>ráantàtphǒm jùu thaankhwǎa</u><br>The barber shop is to the right.     |
| 2. ráanaahǎan      | <u>ráanaahǎan jùu thaankhwǎa</u><br>The restaurant is to the right.       |
| 3. bǒorisàt námman | <u>bǒorisàt námman jùu thaankhwǎa</u><br>The oil company is on the right. |
| 4. thanǒn suriwong | <u>thanǒn suriwong jùu thaankhwǎa</u><br>Suriwong street is on the right. |
| 5. hooten plaasâa  | <u>hooten plaasâa jùu thaankhwǎa</u><br>The Plaza Hotel is on the right.  |

### f) Substitution Drill (Use street chart on next page)

| <u>Cue</u>         | <u>Pattern</u>  |
|--------------------|---|
| 1. sáaj            | <u>roonphajaabaan jùu thaansáaj</u><br>The hospital is to the left. |
| 2. thanǒn sǐilom   | <u>thanǒn sǐilom jùu thaansáaj</u><br>Silom Street is to the left.  |
| 3. bǒorisàt aj-bèk | <u>bǒorisàt aj-bèk jùu thaansáaj</u><br>I.B.E.C. is on the left.    |

Continue the drill with additional examples from the map on the next page.

# THAI BASIC COURSE



g) Expansion Drill (Combine the cue words to form place expressions)

| <u>Cue:</u> | <u>Cue:</u> | <u>Pattern</u> |                |
|-------------|-------------|----------------|----------------|
| nīi         | thīi        | thīinīi        | here           |
| nân         | thīi        | thīinân        | there          |
| nôn         | thīi        | thīinôn        | way over there |

h) Response Drill

Cue

- |    |      |                                  |  |
|----|------|----------------------------------|--|
| 1. | nīi  | bāan khun jùu thīinǎj            | (bāan phǒm) jùu thīin <u>nīi</u>           |
|    |      | Where's your house?              | It's here.                                 |
| 2. | nān  | sathǎanthūut jùu thīinǎj         | (sathǎanthūut) jùu thīin <u>nān</u>        |
|    |      | Where's the Embassy?             | It's there.                                |
| 3. | nōon | sīijêek rāatprasǒŋ jùu thīinǎj   | (sīijêek rāatprasǒŋ) jùu thīin <u>nōon</u> |
|    |      | Where's Ratprasong Intersection? | It's way over there.                       |
| 4. | nīi  | phyan khun jùu thīinǎj           | (phyan phǒm) jùu thīin <u>nīi</u>          |
|    |      | Where's your friend?             | (My friend) is here.                       |
| 5. | nān  | nānsy y khun jùu thīinǎj         | (nānsy y phǒm) jùu thīin <u>nān</u>        |
|    |      | Where's your book?               | It's there.                                |
| 6. | nōon | rót jùu thīinǎj                  | (rót) jùu thīin <u>nōon</u>                |
|    |      | Where's the car?                 | It's way over there.                       |

i) Expansion Drill (Combine the cue words to form place expressions.)

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern</u> |                             |
|------------|------------|----------------|-----------------------------|
| 1.         | nīi        | tron           | tron nīi right here         |
| 2.         | nán        | tron           | tron nán right there        |
| 3.         | nóon       | tron           | tron nóon right over there  |
| 4.         | nīi        | thěew          | thěew nīi (in) this section |
| 5.         | nán        | thěew          | thěew nán (in) that section |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. nóon thěew thěew nóon (in) that section over there  
 7. níi fàŋ fàŋ níi (on) this side (of the street)  
 8. nóon fàŋ fàŋ nóon (on) the far side (of the street)

j) Response Drill (Have one student form a question from cue 1, and another respond to it using cue 2.)

| <u>Cue 1</u> | <u>Question</u>                 | <u>Cue 2</u> | <u>Response</u>                 |
|--------------|---------------------------------|--------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. thîi      | thîinǎj<br>Where?               | nîi          | thîinîi<br>Here.                |
| 2. tron      | tronǎj<br>(Exactly) where?      | níi          | tronníi<br>Right here.          |
| 3. thěew     | thěewnǎj<br>(in) which section? | nóon         | thěewnóon<br>(In) that section. |
| 4. fàŋ       | fàŋǎj<br>Which side?            | níi          | fàŋníi<br>This side.            |
| 5. thîi      | thîinǎj<br>Where?               | nôn          | thîinôn<br>Way over there       |
| 6. tron      | tronǎj<br>(Exactly) where?      | nóon         | tronóon<br>Right over there.    |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- k) Response Drill (Have one student form a question with the first cue, and a second student respond to it using the second cue.)

### Cue

- |    |  |   |   |
|----|--|---|---|
| 1. | ránaahăan,<br>thaan̄khwăa                        | ránaahăan jùu<br>thîinăj<br>Where's the<br>restaurant?          | ránaahăan jùu<br>thaan̄khwăa khráp<br>It's on the right.                            |
| 2. | ráantàtphôm,<br>thaansáaj                        | ráantàtphôm jùu<br>thîinăj<br>Where's the barber<br>shop?       | ráantàtphôm jùu<br>thaansáaj khráp<br>It's on the left.                             |
| 3. | roon̄rēm eerawan,<br>thěsw sîijêsk<br>râatprasōŋ | roon̄rēm eerawan<br>jùu thîinăj<br>Where's the Erawan<br>Hotel? | roon̄rēm eerawan jùu<br>thěsw sîijêsk râatprasōŋ<br>It's Ratprasong<br>Corner area. |
| 4. | talàat,<br>tron̄nóon                             | talàat jùu thîinăj<br>Where's the market?                       | talàat jùu tron̄nóon<br>It's right over there.                                      |

### 1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. sathăanthûut ameerikan jùu klaj càak krasuan̄tăan prathêet.  
The American Embassy is far from the Foreign Ministry.
2. roon̄rēm kēep-pi-tōon jùu klaj càak cátsamèek  
The Capitol Hotel is far from JUSMAG.
3. sanăambin doon myan̄ jùu klaj càak juusít  
Don Muang Airport is far from USIS.

4. phii-éks jùu klaj càak juusôm  
The PX is far from USOM.
5. talàat jùu klaj càak bâan phôm.  
The market is far from my house.
6. sathăanii rótfaj jùu klaj càak bâan kháw  
The R.R. station is far from his house.
7. hôn aahăan jùu klaj càak hôn rian.  
The dining room is far from the classroom.

m) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. sathăanthût jùu klaj càak  
krasuaŋ tàaŋ prathêet  
The Embassy is far from  
the Foreign Ministry.
2. doon myaŋ jùu klaj càak  
sathăanthût  
Don Muang is far from  
the Embassy.
3. rooŋrɛɛm ɔɔrianten jùu klaj  
càak rooŋrɛɛm eerawan  
The Oriental Hotel is far  
from the Erawan Hotel.

Pattern 2

- sathăanthût kàp krasuaŋ  
tàaŋ prathêet jùu klaj kan.  
The Embassy and the Foreign  
Ministry are far apart.
- doon myaŋ kàp sathăanthût  
jùu klaj kan.  
Don Muang and the Embassy  
are far apart.
- rooŋrɛɛm ɔɔrianten kàp rooŋrɛɛm  
eerawan jùu klaj kan.  
The Oriental Hotel and the  
Erawan Hotel are far apart.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>4. bân phǒm jùu klaj càak<br/>bân khun<br/>My house is far from<br/>your house.</p>                                | <p>bân phǒm kabân khun jùu<br/>klaj kan<br/>My house and your house<br/>are far apart.</p>                                  |
| <p>5. caṅwàt sǒṅkhlǎa jùu klaj<br/>càak caṅwàt udǒon<br/>Songkla Province is far<br/>from Udorn Province.</p>         | <p>caṅwàt sǒṅkhlǎa kàp caṅwàt<br/>udǒon jùu klaj kan<br/>Songkla Province and Udorn<br/>Province are far apart.</p>         |
| <p>6. thanǒn wítthajú jùu klaj<br/>càak thanǒn phahǒnjoothin<br/>Wireless Road is far from<br/>Paholyotin Street.</p> | <p>thanǒn wítthajú kàp thanǒn<br/>phahǒnjoothin jùu klaj kan<br/>Wireless Road and Paholyotin<br/>Street are far apart.</p> |

### n) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u>                        | <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>                 |
|-----------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| 1. prajsanii (no)                 | prajsanii jùu klaj càak<br>nǐi máj<br>Is the Post Office<br>far from here?                 | mâj klaj khráp<br>No, it isn't. |
| 2. krasuaṅ tàaṅ<br>prathêet (yes) | krasuaṅ tàaṅprathêet jùu<br>klaj càak nǐi máj<br>Is the Foreign Ministry<br>far from here? | klaj khráp<br>Yes, it is.       |
| 3. sanǎambin dǒon<br>myaṅ (no)    | sanǎambin dǒon myaṅ jùu<br>klaj càak nǐi máj<br>Is Don Muang Airport<br>far from here?     | mâj klaj khráp<br>No, it isn't. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                                |   |                                     |
|--------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|
| 4. juusôm (yes)                | juusôm jùu klaj càak<br>nîi máj<br>Is USOM far from here?                             | klaj khráp<br><br>Yes, it is.       |
| 5. hôn prachum<br>(no)         | hôn prachum jùu klaj càak<br>nîi máj<br>Is the auditorium far<br>from here?           | mâj klaj khráp<br><br>No, it isn't. |
| 6. thanakhaan<br>(yes)         | thanakhaan jùu klaj càak<br>nîi máj<br>Is the bank far from here?                     | klaj khráp<br><br>Yes, it is.       |
| 7. sathăanii<br>tamruat        | sathăanii tamruat jùu klaj<br>càak nîi máj<br>Is the Police Station<br>far from here? | klaj khráp<br><br>Yes, it is.       |
| 8. prathêet<br>farànsèet (yes) | prathêet farànsèet jùu klaj<br>càak nîi máj<br>Is France far from here?               | klaj khráp<br><br>Yes, it is.       |

### o) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. sathăanthûut ameerikan jùu klâj kàp roonrēm eerawan  
The American Embassy is near the Erawan Hotel.
2. cátsamèek jùu klâj kàp juusít.  
JUSMAG is near USIS.
3. sîijêek râatprasōŋ jùu klâj kàp thanōn wítthajú.  
The Ratprasong Intersection is near Wireless Road.

4. thonburii jùu klâj kàp krunthêep  
Thonburi is near Bangkok.
5. sapòot khláp jùu klâj kàp culaa.  
The Sports Club is near Chula.
6. sanăam lŭan jùu klâj kàp thammasàat  
The Pramane Grounds are near Thammasart (University).
7. bân phôm jùu klâj kàp talàat  
My house is near the market.

Note to the instructor: Repeat the drill using ka- for kàp.

p) Substitution Drill

Cue

1. talàat                      bân kháv jùu klâj talàat  
His house is near the market.
2. roonphajabaan            bân kháv jùu klâj roonphajabaan.  
His house is near the hospital.
3. thanŏn sŭilom            bân kháv jùu klâj thanŏn sŭilom  
His house is near Silom Street.
4. hŏnsamùt                 bân kháv jùu klâj hŏnsamùt  
His house is near the library.
5. thŭithamŋaan            bân kháv jùu klâj thŭithamŋaan  
His house is near the office.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. hooten ramâa      bâan kháw jùu klâj hooten ramâa  
His house is near Rama Hotel.
7. thanǒn jàj      bâan kháw jùu klâj thanǒn jàj  
His house is near the main street.
8. roonṅaan      bâan kháw jùu klâj roonṅaan  
His house is near the factory.
9. tua muan      bâan kháw jùu klâj tua muan  
His house is near down town.

### q) Sentence Formation Drill

#### Cue

1. talàat, thîithamṅaan      talàat jùu klâj thîithamṅaan máj  
Is the market near the office?
2. bâan khun, bâan khun      bâan khun jùu klâj bâan khun thǎawoon máj  
thǎawoon  
Is your house near Thaworn's?
3. thîithamṅaan khun,      thîithamṅaan khun jùu klâj prajsanii máj  
prajsanii  
Is your office near the Post Office?
4. sathǎanthûut      sathǎanthûut ameerikan jùu klâj juusôm máj  
ameerikan, juusôm  
Is the American Embassy near USOM?
5. krunthêep, ajúthajaa      krunthêep jùu klâj ajúthajaa máj  
Is Bangkok near Ayuthaya?
6. prathêet jîipùn,      prathêet jîipùn jùu klâj prathêet  
prathêet jæraman      jæraman máj  
Is Japan near Germany?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### r) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. cátsamèk jùu klâj kàp  
juusít

JUSMAG is near USIS.

2. sathǎanthûut óossatreelia  
jùu klâj kàp sathǎanthûut  
filíppin

The Australian Embassy  
is near the Philippine  
Embassy.

3. roonrɛɛm ammarin jùu klâj  
kàp roonrɛɛm eerawan

The Amarin Hotel is near  
the Erawan Hotel.

4. juusɔɔm jùu klâj kàp talàat  
pratuunám

USOM is near the Pratunam  
Market.

5. ee-juu-ee jùu klâj kàp  
roonrɛɛm eerawan

A.U.A. is near the Erawan  
Hotel.

6. wɔɔchɪntân jùu klâj kàp  
wəə-ci-nia

Washington is near Virginia.

#### Pattern 2

- cátsamèk kàp júusít jùu  
klâj kan

JUSMAG and USIS are near  
each other.

- sathǎanthûut óossatreelia kàp  
sathǎanthûut filíppin jùu  
klâj kan.

The Australian Embassy and  
the Philippine Embassy are  
near each other.

- roonrɛɛm ammarin kàp roonrɛɛm  
eerawan jùu klâj kan

The Amarin Hotel and the  
Erawan Hotel are near  
each other.

- juusɔɔm kàp talàat pratuunám  
jùu klâj kan

USOM and the Pratunam Market  
are close together.

- ee-juu-ee kàp roonrɛɛm eerawan  
jùu klâj kan

The A.U.A. and the Erawan  
Hotel are close together.

- wɔɔchɪntân kàp wəə-cinia jùu  
klâj kan

Washington and Virginia are  
close together.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### s) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. ráanaahǎan jùu thaankhwǎa

The restaurant is on  
the right.

2. bâan khǒŋ kháw jùu thîinôn

His house is over there.

3. talàat jùu thaansáaj

The market is to the left.

4. prajsanii jùu tronón

The P.O. is right over there.

5. sathǎanthûut jùu thaansáaj

The Embassy is to the left.

6. nánsŷy khǒŋkhun jùu thîinôn

Your book is over there.

7. sǎalaa ameerikan jùu thîi  
thanón nón

The USIS auditorium is on  
the street over there.

#### Pattern 2

ráanaahǎan mâj dâj jùu  
thaansáaj

The restaurant is not  
on the left.

bâan khǒŋ kháw mâj dâj jùu  
thîinîi

His house isn't here.

talàat mâj dâj jùu thaankhwǎa

The market is not to the right.

prajsanii mâj dâj jùu tronîi

The P.O. is not right here.

sathǎanthûut mâj dâj jùu  
thaankhwǎa

The Embassy is not to the  
right.

nánsŷy khǒŋ khun mâj dâj jùu  
thîinîi

Your book isn't here.

sǎalaa ameerikan mâj dâj  
jùu thîi thanón níi

The USIS auditorium is not  
on this street.



t) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. ráanaahǎan jùu thaan̄khwǎa

The restaurant is on the right.

2. hooten jùu thaansáaj

The hotel is to the left.

3. bâan khǎon̄kháw jùu thǎewnóon

His house is in the area over there.

4. rót khǎon̄ phǎm jùu tron̄níi

My car is right here.

5. talàat jùu thaansáaj

The market is on the left.

Pattern 2

ránaahǎan jùu thaan̄khwǎa,  
mâj châj thaansáaj

The restaurant is on the right. It's not on the left.

hooten jùu thaansáaj, mâj  
châj thaan̄khwǎa

The hotel is to the left. It's not to the right.

bâan khǎon̄kháw jùu thǎewnóon,  
mâj châj thǎewníi

His house is in the area over there. It's not in this area.

rót khǎon̄ phǎm jùu tron̄níi,  
mâj châj tron̄nóon

My car is right here.

talàat jùu thaansáaj, mâj  
châj thaan̄khwǎa

The market is on the left. It isn't on the right.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

u) Transformation Drill (Change to the Negative.)

Pattern 1

1. roonrɛɛm eerawan jùu klâj  
ka sathǎanthûut  
The Erawan Hotel is  
near the Embassy.

2. roonrɛɛm ɔɔrianten jùu klâj  
ka prajsaniklaan  
The Oriental Hotel is near  
the Central Post Office.

3. sathǎanthûut sapeen jùu klâj  
ka sathǎanthûut ameerikan  
The Spanish Embassy is  
near the American Embassy.

4. cátsamèek jùu klâj ka juusít  
JUSMAG is near USIS.

5. slijêek sàpràthum jùu klâj  
ka slijêek râatprasǎn  
Sapratum Corner is near  
Ratprasong Corner.

Pattern 2

roonrɛɛm eerawan jùu mâj  
klaj càak sathǎanthûut  
The Erawan Hotel is not  
far from the Embassy.

roonrɛɛm ɔɔrianten jùu mâj  
klaj càak prajsaniklaan  
The Oriental Hotel is not  
far from the Central Post  
Office.

sathǎanthûut sapeen jùu mâj  
klaj càak sathǎanthûut  
ameerikan  
The Spanish Embassy is not  
far from the American  
Embassy

cátsamèek jùu mâj klaj càak  
juusít  
JUSMAG is not far from USIS.

slijêek sàpràthum jùu mâj klaj  
càak slijêek râatprasǎn  
Sapratum Corner is not far  
from Ratprasong Corner.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 14.3 EXERCISES

- a) Find out if any of the following things are in this area: barber shop, bank, restaurant, Post Office, gas pump, oil company, public telephone, pharmacy, coffee shop, hospital, railroad station, airport, police station.
- b) Starting from some particular spot (in front of a bank, etc.) find out where other buildings are in relation (to the left, right over there, etc.) to your position.
- c) Using the map following page 133, discuss what places are near each other and which are far apart in Bangkok.
- d) Using the map following page 112 discuss what provinces are near each other and which are far apart.
- e) Ask other students if particular buildings are near their homes.
- f) Ask where particular buildings are located. In the answer you will be told that they are near other buildings.

### 14.4 VOCABULARY

|                  |                                      |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|
| aj bək (bɔrisət) | I.B.E.C., Name of a company          |
| ammariin         | Amarin, name of a hotel in Bangkok   |
| anúsǎwarii (hèn) | monument                             |
| εε fráans        | Air France, name of an airline       |
| ɔɔrianten        | Oriental, name of a hotel in Bangkok |
| baɔŋkapi         | Bangkok (section of Bangkok)         |
| bɔɔrisət         | company                              |
| bɔɔrisət námman  | Oil Company                          |
| fàn              | side (of the street/river/canal/sea) |
| hôn aahǎan (hôn) | dining room                          |
| hooten           | hotel                                |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| jaa                  | medicine                                  |
| jàj                  | big, large                                |
| kéepitôon            | The Capitol (name of a hotel in Bangkok)  |
| khâan                | next to ( something or someone), side     |
| khiinóot             | keynote (name)                            |
| khrítsatian          | Christian (name of a hospital)            |
| klaj                 | to be far                                 |
| klâj                 | to be near, close                         |
| mít su               | Mitsu (name of a restaurant)              |
| pâaj (pâaj)          | poster, sign, tag                         |
| pâaj rôtmee (pâaj)   | bus stop                                  |
| pámnámman            | a gas pump                                |
| pathumwan            | Patoomwan, (section of Bangkok)           |
| phàan                | to pass, to go past                       |
| phahǒnjoothin        | Phaholyotin Street in Bangkok             |
| plaasâa              | Plaza, name of a hotel in Bangkok         |
| prajsanii klaan      | The Central Post Office                   |
| pratuunám            | Pratunam (name of the section in Bangkok) |
| ráankhǎaj-           |   |
| nánsýyphim (ráan)    | a newstand                                |
| ráan khǎajjaa (ráan) | a pharmacy                                |
| ráanmǎo (ráan)       | a doctor's office                         |
| ráantàtphǒm (ráan)   | a barber shop                             |
| ráantàtsýa (ráan)    | a tailor shop                             |
| râatprasǒn           | Ratprasong (section of Bangkok)           |
| roonŋaan (roon)      | factory                                   |
| rótmee (khan)        | bus                                       |
| sǎalaa ameerikan     | the USIS Auditorium                       |
| sǎathaaraná          | public (not private)                      |
| sanǎam (hèn)         | field, yard, lawn                         |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| sanăam kilaa (hèn)              | the sports stadium  |
| sanăam lŭaŋ (hèn)               | the Pramane Grounds in Bangkok  |
| saphaan (saphaan, an)           | bridge (a structure)  |
| saphaan khwaaj<br>(saphaan, an) | the Water Buffalo Bridge (name of a<br>bridge in Bangkok)   |
| sàpràthum                       | Saprathum (name of the corner and<br>section in Bangkok)  |
| sathăanii tamrùat<br>(hèn)      | police station  |
| sìijêek                         | corner  |
| sĭilom                          | Silom (name of the street in Bangkok)   |
| thaaŋ                           | way, path, direction, means   |
| thaaŋ khwăa                     | to the right  |
| thaaŋsáaj                       | to the left   |
| thanǒn jàj                      | the main street   |
| thĭi                            | at  |
| thĭi còot rót (thĭi)            | parking lot   |
| thĭinôn                         | way over there  |
| thĕew                           | section, district (of a town)   |
| thonburii                       | Thonburii, Name of a province in<br>Thailand, used to be the capital<br>during the year 1767 through 1782 |
| tron                            | right, exactly  |
| tron (năj)                      | (exactly) where   |

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON FIFTEEN

### 15.0 BASIC DIALOG: An Interview at Korat.

- A: sawàtdii khráp, phǒm chýy thoom      Hello, my name is Tom.  
B: phǒm chýy méen khráp      My name is Maen.
- A: jindii thîi dâj rúucàk      Glad to meet you.  
B: khun pen thahǎan rǎkhráp      You're a soldier, aren't you?
- A: plàaw khráp      No, I'm not.  
    phǒm pen phonlaryan      I'm a civilian.  
B: khun phûut phaasǎa thaj kèŋ mâak      You speak Thai very well.
- A: khòpkhun khráp      Thank you.  
B: khun maa tham araj thîini khráp      What did you come here to do?
- A: phǒm maa thamŋaan thîi juusít      To work at USIS.  
    khráp
- B: khǒothôot, khun mii khròpkhrua      Do you have a family?  
    léew rýjaŋ khráp
- A: mii léew khráp, tè weelaanîi,      I do, but at present  
    phǒm jùu khondiaw      I live by myself.
- B: thammaj lâ khráp, phanrajaa ka      Why? Are your wife and  
    lûuklûuk khǒoŋ khun jùu thîi      children in America?  
    ameerikaa rǎkhráp

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- A: plàaw khráp  
kháw jaŋ jùu thîi krunthêep, phró  
kòon thîi phóm ca maa thîinîi,  
phóm thamnaan thîi krunthêep
- B: khun mii bùt kîi khon khráp
- A: sǒŋ khon khráp
- B: phûujǐŋ rý phûuchaaŋ khráp
- A: khontoo pen phûujǐŋ, khonlék  
pen phûuchaaŋ
- B: aajú thâwraŋ khráp
- A: khontoo aajú sǐp khùap,  
khonlék aajú hâa khùap
- B: rian nánsǎy thîinǎj khráp
- A: lûuk phóm rǎkhráp  
khonnyŋ rian thîi roonrian  
naanaachâat, ìik khonnyŋ jaŋ  
mâj rian nánsǎy
- B: roonrian naanaachâat pen roonrian  
khǒŋ ameerikan, châj máj khráp
- A: châj khráp  
tèe kháw mii khruu lé nákrían  
châat òyn òyn lǎaj khon
- B: roonrian níi jùu thîinǎj khráp
- No, they aren't.  
They're still in Bangkok,  
because before I came here  
I worked in Bangkok.
- How many children do  
you have?
- Two.
- Girls or boys?
- The oldest is a girl;  
the youngest, a boy.
- What ages?
- The oldest is 10; the  
youngest is 5.
- Where do they go to  
school?
- My children?
- One goes to the Inter-  
national School; the  
other doesn't go to  
school yet.
- The International School  
is the American School,  
isn't it?
- Yes, it is.
- But they have many  
teachers and students  
of other nationalities.
- Where is that school?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- A: j̀u th̄i s̄oj r̀amcaj, than̄n  
sukh̄mwít khráp It's at Ruamchaj Lane  
Sukhumwit Road.
- B: ph̄m jan̄ m̄j kh̄ej paj s̄amn̄k̄naan  
juusít læej, j̀u th̄in̄j khráp I've never been to (the  
USIS (office). Where  
is it?
- A: j̀u kl̄ajkl̄aj katalàat khráp.wanl̄aj  
wanl̄aj ch̄een paj j̄iam raw It's quite close to the  
market. Why don't you  
come over and visit us  
some day?
- B: kh̄òp̄khun khráp Thank you.  
th̄itham̄naan kh̄òp̄khun p̄et  
k̄i moon̄ khráp When does your office  
open?
- A: h̄õnsam̀t p̄et weelaa th̄ian,  
p̄it raaw n̄ȳnth̄um t̄e ph̄m kh̄aw  
tham̄naan weelaa s̄õn̄ moon̄ khr̄ȳn̄,  
l̄h̄ek h̄aa moon̄ jen The library opens at  
noon, (and) closes  
around 7 p.m. but I  
begin at 8.30 a.m.,  
and quit at 5 p.m.
- B: n̄an, wanl̄aj ph̄m ca paj j̄iam khun.  
ph̄m laa k̄õn̄ nakhráp. Then someday I'll go  
visit you. I'll say  
'Goodbye'. I have  
urgent business (to  
take care of).
- A: khráp All right.  
w̄aj w̄aa raw khon̄ d̄aj ph̄p̄ kan ìik I hope we'll meet again.

### 15.1 QUESTIONS ON THE INTERVIEW

- khun th̄õm ph̄p̄ khraj
- kh̄aw kh̄ej r̀uc̀ak kan m̄j
- khun th̄õm pen khraj
- khun th̄õm t̄en̄naan l̄ēw r̀ȳjan



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- e) weelaaníi khun thoóm jùu kakhraj, thammaj
- f) thammaj phanrajaa kalûuklûuk khǒŋkháw jaŋ jùu thîi krunthêep
- g) lûuk khontoo khǒŋkhun thoóm aajú thâwràj
- h) kháw rian nánsŷy thîinǎj
- i) roonrian naanaachâat mii khon châat ÿyn ÿyn máj
- j) sǎmnáknaan juusít thîi khoorâat jùu klaj càak talàat máj
- k) khun thoóm khâw thamnaan kîi moon
- l) kháw lâek naan kîi moon
- m) hŋsamùt pèet kîi moon, pít kîi moon
- n) khun méen ca rîip paj nǎj

### 15.2 EXERCISES

One student will take the part of a Thai and will interview another student who will take the part of an American who has just arrived in a provincial city in Thailand for duty. The interview should follow the general format of the one in 15.0 but additional material may be included. As far as possible, all information given should be correct. The other students in the class should take notes on the interview and be prepared to answer questions about the information contained in it.

### 15.3 VOCABULARY

|           |  |
|-----------|--|
| jîam      | to visit                                     |
| khâw      | to begin (to work, to learn), enter          |
| khon (ca) | probably                                     |
| laa       | to say goodbye (said only by person leaving) |
| lâek      | quit, finish, to be over or through          |
| méen      | Maen (male or female first name)             |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| phonlaryan (khon)                    | civilian                                      |
| phró                                 | because                                       |
| raaw                                 | around, about                                 |
| rîip                                 | to hurry, to be urgent                        |
| roonriian naanaachâat<br>(roonriian) | The International School                      |
| rûam caj                             | Ruam chaj (name of lane on Sukhumwit<br>Road) |
| sămnáknaan (hèn)                     | office (of an agency, etc.)                   |
| sooj                                 | lane (narrow street)                          |
| sukhŭmwít                            | Sukhumwit Road                                |
| thoom                                | Tom (a name)                                  |
| thammaj                              | why (question word)                           |
| wanlăŋ                               | some day (in the future)                      |
| wăŋ                                  | to hope                                       |
| weelaaníi                            | at present                                    |

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON SIXTEEN

### 16.0 BASIC DIALOG: Directions (2)

- A: khǒothôot khráp, prajsanii klaan paj thaanǎj Excuse me, which way is the main Post Office?
- B: tron paj khâanâa khráp Straight ahead.
- A: khòopkhun khráp Thank you.

(10 minutes later)

- A: khǒothôot khráp, nîi prajsanii klaan, châj máj Excuse me, this is the main Post Office, isn't it?
- B: châj khráp Yes, it is.
- A: thîsòn thooralêek jùu tronǎj, sâap máj khráp Where's the place to send telegrams, do you know?
- B: jùu khâanaj khráp It's inside.
- A: paj thaanǎj khráp Which way do you go?
- B: dæen tron khâw paj khâanaj, l'èsw líaw khwǎa, thîsòn thooralêek ca jùu thaansáaj (myy) (khǒon) khun Go straight in, then turn right the place to send telegrams will be to your left.
- A: khòopkhun mâak khráp Thank you very much.
- B: mâj pen raj khráp You're welcome.

16.1 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

Pattern 2

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. nánsŷy phǒm jùu naj hǒŋ<br>My book is in the room.   | nánsŷy phǒm jùu khâaŋnaj<br>My book is inside.   |
| 2. thǐisǒŋ thooralêek jùu naj tỳk<br>The place to send telegrams<br>is in the building.             | thǐisǒŋ thooralêek jùu khâaŋnaj<br>The place to send telegrams<br>is inside.           |
| 3. thǐi thamkaan prajsanii jùu<br>naj rooŋrɛɛm<br>The office of the Post<br>Office is in the hotel. | thǐi thamkaan prajsanii jùu<br>khâaŋnaj<br>The office of the Post<br>Office is inside. |
| 4. khruu jùu naj hǒŋlèɛp<br>The teacher is in the lab.  | khruu jùu khâaŋnaj<br>The teacher is inside.   |
| 5. lûuksǎaw phǒm jùu naj hǒŋ<br>My daughter is in the room.   | lûuksǎaw phǒm jùu khâaŋnaj<br>My daughter is inside.                                   |
| 6. hǒŋthabian jùu naj tỳk<br>The registrar's room is<br>in the building.                            | hǒŋthabian jùu khâaŋnaj<br>The registrar's room<br>is inside.                          |
| 7. khun wíchaj jùu naj sǎalaa<br>ameerikan<br>Wichai is in the USIS<br>auditorium.                  | khun wíchaj jùu khâaŋnaj<br>Wichai is inside.  |

b) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. ph̄yan ph̄m j̄u n̄ok h̄n̄rian  
My friend is outside  
the classroom.
2. roon̄r̄ot j̄u n̄ok b̄an  
The garage is outside  
the house.
3. phanrajaa ph̄m j̄u n̄okb̄an  
My wife is outside the  
house.
4. ráanaah̄an j̄u n̄ok t̄yk rian  
The restaurant is outside  
the school building.
5. khruu j̄u n̄ok h̄n̄rian  
The teacher is outside  
the classroom.
6. l̄uuk ph̄m j̄u n̄ok b̄an  
My children are outside  
the house.

Pattern 2

- ph̄yan ph̄m j̄u kh̄aan̄n̄ok  
My friend is outside.
- roon̄r̄ot j̄u kh̄aan̄n̄ok  
The garage is outside.
- phanrajaa ph̄m j̄u kh̄aan̄n̄ok  
My wife is outside.
- ráanaah̄an j̄u kh̄aan̄n̄ok  
The restaurant is outside.
- khruu j̄u kh̄aan̄n̄ok  
The teacher is outside.
- l̄uuk ph̄m j̄u kh̄aan̄n̄ok  
My children are outside.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### c) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. kháw jùu nâa raw  
He is in front of us.
2. khruu jùu nâa chán  
The teacher is in front  
of the class.
3. pâajrótmee jùu nâa roonriian  
The bus stop is in front  
of the school.
4. ráanaahǎan jùu nâa hooten  
The restaurant is in  
front of the hotel.
5. rót jùu nâa bâan  
The car is in front of  
the house.

#### Pattern 2

1. kháw jùu khâanǎa  
He is in front.
2. khruu jùu khâanǎa  
The teacher is in front.
3. pâajrótmee jùu khâanǎa  
The bus stop is in front.
4. ráanaahǎan jùu khâanǎa  
The restaurant is in  
front.
5. rót jùu khâanǎa  
The car is in front.

### d) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. thǐi còot rót jùu lǎnǎn bâan  
The parking lot is behind  
the house.
2. kâw íi jùu lǎnǎn chán  
The chairs are in the  
back of the class.

#### Pattern 2

1. thǐi còot rót jùu khâanlǎnǎn  
The parking lot is in  
the back.
2. kâw íi jùu khâanlǎnǎn  
The chairs are in back.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>3. bâan khǒɔŋ kháw jùu lǎŋ hooten<br/>His house is behind the hotel.</p>        | <p>bâan khǒɔŋ kháw jùu khâaŋlǎŋ<br/>His house is behind.</p> |
| <p>4. páam námman jùu lǎŋ sathǎanthûut<br/>The gas pump is behind the Embassy.</p> | <p>pám námman jùu khâaŋlǎŋ<br/>The gas pump is out back.</p> |

### e) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u>           | <u>Question</u>                | <u>Response</u>                         |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|---|
| 1. khâaŋnâa<br>ahead | paj thaan nǎj<br>Go which way? | tron paj khâaŋnâa<br>Go straight ahead. |
| 2. sáaj<br>left      | paj thaan nǎj<br>Go which way? | paj thaansáaj<br>Go to the left.        |
| 3. níi<br>this       | paj thaan nǎj<br>Go which way. | paj thaanníi<br>Go this way.            |
| 4. khâaŋnâa<br>ahead | paj thaan nǎj<br>Go which way? | tron paj khâaŋnâa<br>Go straight ahead. |
| 5. khwǎa<br>right    | paj thaan nǎj<br>Go which way? | paj thaan khwǎa<br>Go to the right.     |
| 6. sáaj<br>left      | paj thaan nǎj<br>Go which way? | paj thaan sáaj<br>Go to the left.       |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### f) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u>                                     | <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>                   |
|--|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1. māj líaw<br>not turn                        | tron paj rý líaw<br>Straight ahead or turn?            | tron paj<br>Straight ahead.       |
| 2. khwǎa<br>right                              | líaw sáaj rý líaw khwǎa<br>Turn left or turn right?    | líaw khwǎa<br>Turn right.         |
| 3. sáaj<br>left                                | líaw sáaj rý líaw khwǎa<br>Turn left or turn right?    | líaw sáaj<br>Turn left.           |
| 4. māj tron paj<br>not go<br>straight<br>ahead | tron paj rý líaw<br>Go straight ahead or<br>turn?      | líaw<br>Turn.                     |
| 5. māj líaw<br>not turn                        | tron paj rý líaw<br>Go straight ahead or<br>turn?      | tron paj<br>Go straight<br>ahead. |
| 6. khwǎa<br>right                              | líaw khwǎa rý líaw sáaj<br>Turn right or turn<br>left? | líaw khwǎa<br>Turn right.         |
| 7. sáaj<br>left                                | líaw sáaj rý líaw khwǎa<br>Turn left or turn right?    | líaw sáaj<br>Turn left.           |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### g) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>      | <u>Pattern</u>   |
|-----------------|--|
| 1. hōŋrian      | kháw kamləŋ khâw paj naj <u>hōŋrian</u><br>He's going into the classroom.            |
| 2. bâan khun    | kháw kamləŋ khâw paj naj <u>bâan khun</u><br>He's going into your house.             |
| 3. hōŋsamùt     | kháw kamləŋ khâw paj naj <u>hōŋsamùt</u><br>He's going into the library.             |
| 4. thanaakhaan  | kháw kamləŋ khâw paj naj <u>thanaakhaan</u><br>He's going into the bank.             |
| 5. prajsanii    | kháw kamləŋ khâw paj naj <u>prajsanii</u><br>He's going into the Post Office.        |
| 6. ráanaahǎan   | kháw kamləŋ khâw paj naj <u>ráanaahǎan</u><br>He's going into the restaurant.        |
| 7. roonrɛɛm     | kháw kamləŋ khâw paj naj <u>roonrɛɛm</u><br>He's going into the hotel.               |
| 8. hōŋthoorasàp | kháw kamləŋ khâw paj naj <u>hōŋthoorasàp</u><br>He's going into the telephone booth. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### h) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>             | <u>Pattern</u>   |
|------------------------|--|
| 1. kháw                | <u>kháw</u> kamlan òok paj khâanòok<br>He's going outside.                         |
| 2. khruu               | <u>khruu</u> kamlan òok paj khâanòok<br>The teacher's going outside.               |
| 3. nákrían             | <u>nákrían</u> kamlan òok paj khâanòok<br>The student's going outside.             |
| 4. khun ceennîi        | <u>khun ceennîi</u> kamlan òok paj khâanòok<br>Jenny's going outside.              |
| 5. phanrajaa kháw      | <u>phanrajaa kháw</u> kamlan òok paj khâanòok<br>His wife's going outside.         |
| 6. lûuksăaw khǎw kháw  | <u>lûuksăaw khǎw kháw</u> kamlan òok paj khâanòok<br>His daughter's going outside. |
| 7. phýan dichán (phǎm) | <u>phýan dichán</u> kamlan òok paj khâanòok<br>My friend's going outside.          |
| 8. khun mǎw            | <u>khun mǎw</u> kamlan òok paj khâanòok<br>The doctor's going outside.             |
| 9. khun                | <u>khun</u> kamlan òok paj khâanòok<br>You're going outside.                       |

- 1) Substitution Drill (Repeat Drill g, using khâw maa 'come in' for khâw paj 'go in'.)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

j) Substitution Drill (Repeat Drill h, using òk maa 'come out' for òk paj 'go out'.)

k) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>        | <u>Pattern</u>   |
|-------------------|--|
| 1. kháw           | <u>kháw</u> òk maa léew rýjan<br>Has he come out yet?                    |
| 2. thahǎan        | <u>thahǎan</u> òk maa léew rýjan<br>Has the soldier come out yet?        |
| 3. mǔo            | <u>mǔo</u> òk maa léew rýjan<br>Has the doctor come out yet?             |
| 4. khruu          | <u>khruu</u> òk maa léew rýjan<br>Has the teacher come out yet?          |
| 5. naanphajabaan  | <u>naanphajabaan</u> òk maa léew rýjan<br>Has the nurse come out yet?    |
| 6. khon ankrít    | <u>khon ankrít</u> òk maa léew rýjan<br>Has the Englishman come out yet? |
| 7. phanrajaa kháw | <u>phanrajaa kháw</u> òk maa léew rýjan<br>Has his wife come out yet?    |
| 8. lûukchaaj phǔm | <u>lûukchaaj phǔm</u> òk maa léew rýjan<br>Has my son come out yet?      |
| 9. sǎamii khun    | <u>sǎamii khun</u> òk maa léew rýjan<br>Has your husband come out yet?   |
| 10. tamrùat       | <u>tamrùat</u> òk maa léew rýjan<br>Has the policeman come out yet?      |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>                    |
|------------|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. no      | thahǎan òok maa léew rýjan<br>Has the soldier come out yet?    | jan khráp<br>Not yet.              |
| 2. yes     | mǎo òok maa léew rýjan<br>Has the doctor come out yet?         | òok maa léew khráp<br>Yes, he has. |
| 3. no      | khruu òok maa léew rýjan<br>Has the teacher come out yet?      | jan khráp<br>Not yet.              |
| 4. no      | lûukchaaj kháw òok maa léew rýjan<br>Has his son come out yet? | jan khráp<br>Not yet.              |
| 5. yes     | phýankhun òok maa léew rýjan<br>Has your friend come out yet?  | òok maa léew khráp<br>Yes, he has. |
| 6. yes     | chaawnaa òok maa léew rýjan<br>Has the farmer come out yet?    | òok maa léew khráp<br>Yes, he has. |

### m) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Question</u>   | <u>Response</u>                 |
|------------|---|---------------------------------|
| 1. yes     | kháw khâw paj naj hǎnrían rýplàaw<br>Did he go into the classroom?      | khráp, khâw paj<br>Yes, he did. |
| 2. no      | kháw khâw paj naj roonphajabaan rýplàaw<br>Did he go into the hospital? | plàaw khráp<br>No, he didn't.   |
| 3. no      | kháw khâw paj naj thanakhaan rýplàaw<br>Did he go into the bank?        | plàaw khráp<br>No, he didn't.   |
| 4. yes     | kháw khâw paj naj ráanaahǎan rýplàaw<br>Did he go into the restaurant?  | khráp, khâw paj<br>Yes, he did. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. no      kháw khâw paj naj sathăanthûut      plàaw khráp  
             ameerikan rýplàaw  
             Did he go into the American Embassy?      No, he didn't.
6. yes      kháw khâw paj naj sathăanii      khráp, khâw paj  
             tamrùat rýplàaw  
             Did he go into the police station?      Yes, he did.

### n) Response Drill

| <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. prajsanii jùu tron paj khâanăa, phôm<br/>           khuan ca dœn tron paj rý líaw<br/>           If the Post Office is straight<br/>           ahead, should I go straight or<br/>           turn?</p> | <p>dœn tron paj khráp<br/>           Go straight ahead.</p>                        |
| <p>2. ráanaahăan jùu thaan khwăa, phôm khuan<br/>           ca líaw paj thaanăj<br/>           If the restaurant is to the right,<br/>           which way should I turn?</p>                                | <p>líaw paj thaan khwăa<br/>           khráp<br/>           Turn to the right.</p> |
| <p>3. roonrian jùu thaan sáaj, phôm khuan<br/>           ca líaw paj thaanăj<br/>           If the school is to the left,<br/>           which way should I turn?</p>  | <p>líaw paj thaan sáaj<br/>           khráp<br/>           Turn to the left.</p>   |
| <p>4. sathăanii rótfaj jùu tron paj khâanăa,<br/>           phôm khuan ca líaw paj thaanăj<br/>           If the train station is straight<br/>           ahead, which way should I turn?</p>                | <p>dœn tron paj khráp<br/>           Go straight ahead.</p>                        |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 16.2 EXERCISES

- a) Have students take turns playing the following roles:

Student : Goes in and out of the classroom.

Student : Who is sitting in the classroom, describes what Student A is doing ('He is going out of the classroom, he is coming in (to) the classroom', etc.)

Student : Who is standing outside the classroom, also says what student A is doing.

- b) Have students take turns playing the following roles.

Student : Goes in and out of the classroom.

Student : Asks Student C questions about Student A's actions (for example, 'Has he gone out of the classroom yet?, etc.) (Both Student B and C are in the classroom).

Student : Responds to Student B's questions according to where Student A is at the time.

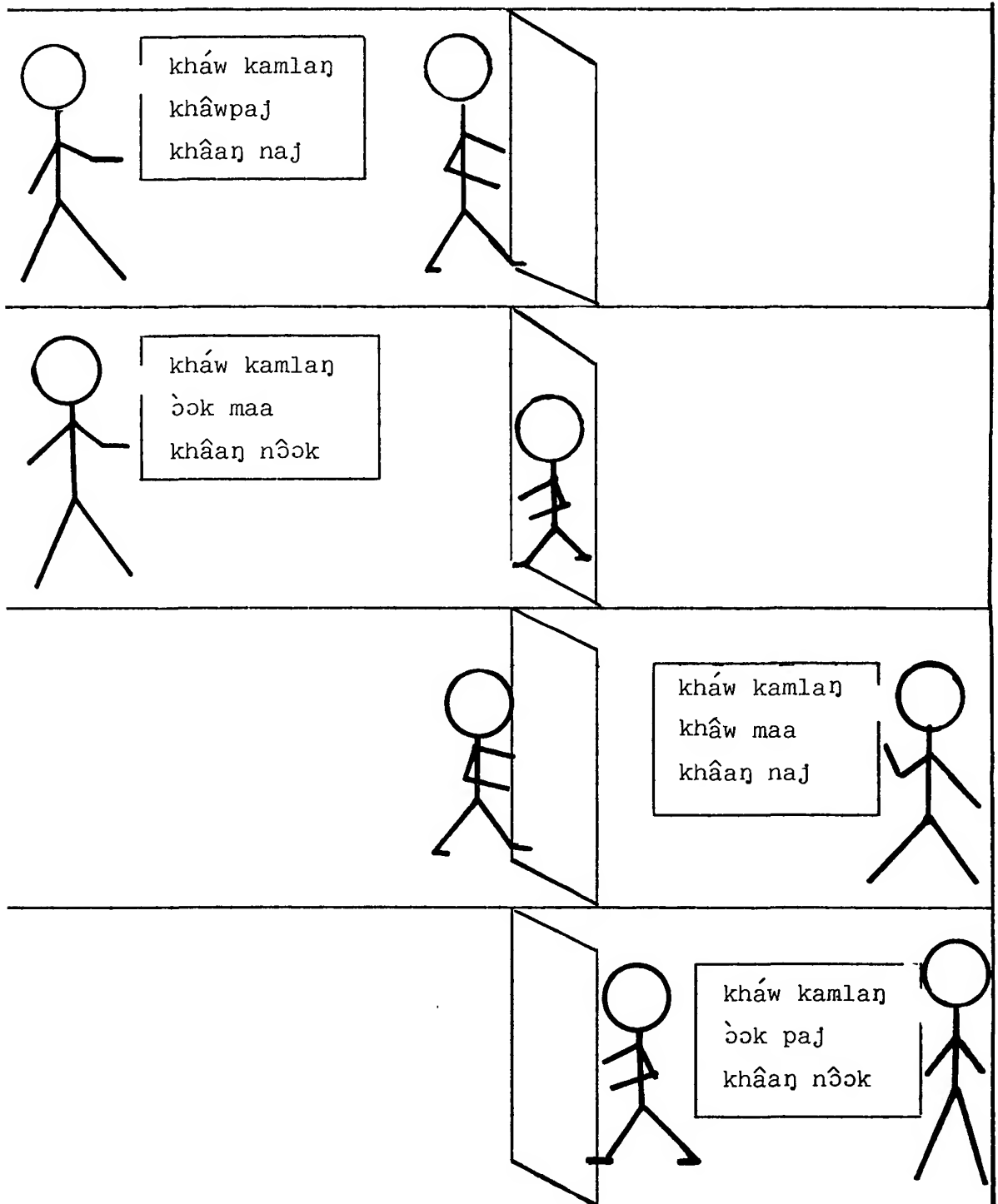
- c) Repeat exercise (b) with Student B and C standing outside the classroom.
- d) Ask various students to give directions to places in the neighborhood starting from where they are.
- e) Starting from specific places in the neighborhood, ask how you go to get to other specific places. (For Example, 'I'm at X. Which way do I go to get to Y,' etc.)

16.3 VOCABULARY

|                      |                             |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| òok / maa            | come out                    |
| paj                  | go out                      |
| chán                 | class                       |
| dæen                 | to walk                     |
| hôn̄thoorasàp (hôn̄) | telephone booth             |
| khâanlǎn̄            | the back, behind            |
| khâan̄nâa            | ahead, in front             |
| khâan̄naj            | inside                      |
| khâan̄nòok           | outside                     |
| khuan ca             | should                      |
| lǎn̄                 | behind                      |
| líaw                 | to turn                     |
| myy                  | hand                        |
| nâa                  | in front; face              |
| nòok                 | outside                     |
| araj                 | what (question word)        |
| roon̄rót (roon̄)     | garage, carport             |
| sâap                 | to know (a fact)            |
| thaan̄               | way, path, direction        |
| thîisòn̄ thooralêek  | the place to send telegrams |
| thîi thamkaan        | the office                  |
| thooralêek           | telegram                    |
| tron̄                | straight                    |
| tỳk (lǎn̄)           | building                    |

THAI BASIC COURSE

Chart illustrating use of khâw paj 'go in', òok maa 'come out', khâw maa 'come in', and òok paj 'go out'.





# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## LESSON SEVENTEEN

### 17.0 BASIC DIALOG: Directions (3)

- A: khǒothôot khráp  
khun sâap máj khráp wâa  
roonrɛɛm prɛsɪdɛn jùu thɪnǎj
- B: thɪi thanǒn keesǒn khráp
- A: paj thaan nǎj khráp
- B: dɛən tron paj thaan níi  
thýn sɪjɛk  
khâam thanǒn paj  
léɛw dɛən paj thaankhwǎa  
hooten ca jùu thaansáaj my
- A: jùu tron kan khâam kàp roonrɛɛm  
eerawan, châj máj khráp
- B: jùu jýan kan nòj khráp
- Excuse me,  
do you know where the  
President Hotel is?
- It's on Gaysorn street.
- Which direction is it?
- Go straight this way  
to the corner  
cross the street,  
then go to the right.  
The hotel is on the left.
- It's directly opposite  
the Erawan Hotel, isn't  
it?
- It's catercornered to it.

### 17.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) The verbs paj and maa occur as postpositions with other verbs to indicate direction of motion; paj 'motion away from the speaker' and maa 'motion toward the speaker'. Observe the following examples:

|                       |                                 |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| khâw maa <sup>1</sup> | 'enter (towards the speaker)'   |
| khâw paj              | 'enter (away from the speaker)' |
| òok maa               | 'exit (towards the speakers)'   |

---

<sup>1</sup>The meaning of khâw paj, khâw maa, òok maa, and òok paj is illustrated in the chart on the preceding page.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                        |                                     |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <u>òok paj</u>         | 'exit (away from the speaker)'      |
| <u>thoo(rasàp) paj</u> | 'telephone (away)from the speaker)' |
| <u>thoo(rasàp) maa</u> | 'telephone (towards the speaker)'   |
| <u>dæen maa</u>        | 'walk (towards the speaker)'        |
| <u>dæen paj</u>        | 'walk (away from the speaker)'      |
| <u>klàp paj</u>        | 'turn back (away from the speaker)' |
| <u>klàp maa</u>        | 'turn back (towards the speaker)'   |

- b) Prepositions such as naj 'in', nòok 'outside of', etc. may occur with nouns like khâan (or khân) 'side' and thaan 'way, path' to form derivatives with the meaning 'space relationship'<sup>1</sup>. The following are examples:

khâannaj 'inside', khâannòok 'outside', khâannâa 'in front of', khâanbon 'up above', khâanlăn 'behind', khâanlâan 'down below', thaansaa 'to the left', thaankhwaa 'to the right', thaannya 'North', thaantâj 'South'.

### 17.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

- a) Transformation Drill<sup>2</sup> (Change from pattern 1 to 2.)

#### Pattern 1

1. roonræem présidên jùu tronkan  
khâam kàp roonræem ammarin

The President Hotel is  
opposite the Amarin.

#### Pattern 2

- roonræem présidên kàp roonræem  
ammarin jùu tron khâam kan

The President Hotel and  
the Amarin are across  
from each other.

---

<sup>1</sup>For a fuller description see Noss, 147 ff.

<sup>2</sup>The instructor can extend this drill and the three that follow by using other place names from the map on page 289.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. roonrɛɛm eerawan jùu tronkan khâam kàp krom tamruət  
The Erawan Hotel is opposite the Police Department.
- roonrɛɛm eerawan kakrom tamruət jùu tron khâam kan  
The Erawan Hotel and the Police Department are opposite each other.
3. roonrɛɛm sajàam intəə jùu tronkan khâam kàp roonăn sajàam  
The Siam International is opposite the Siam Cinema.
- roonrɛɛm sajàam intəə ka roonăn sajàam jùu tron khâam kan  
The Siam International Hotel and the Siam Cinema are opposite each other.
4. sapòot khláp jùu tron kan khâam kàp culaa  
The Sports Club is opposite Chula(longkorn).
- sapòot khláp kàp culaa jùu tron khâam kan  
The Sports Club and Chulalongkorn are across from each other.

### b) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. diisaa j thaj jùu jyan kàp roonrɛɛm présidên  
Design Thai is diagonally across from the President.
2. roonphajaabaan culaa jùu jyan kàp (mahăawítthajaalaj) culaa  
Chula Hospital is diagonally across from Chula (University).

#### Pattern 2

- diisaa j thaj ka roonrɛɛm présidên jùu jyan kan  
Design Thai and the President are diagonally across from each other.
- roonphajaabaan culaa kàp culaa (lonkoon mahăawítthajaalaj) jùu jyan kan  
Chula Hospital and Chulalongkorn University are diagonally across from each other.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. ráan ee jùu jýan kàp ráan bii      ráan ee karáan bii jùu jyan kan  
Shop A is diagonally across      Shop A and Shop B are  
from Shop B.      diagonally across from  
each other.
4. roonăn lidôo jùu jýan kàp      roonăn lidôo kàp roonreem  
roonreem sajăam intəe      sajăam intəe jùu jýan kan  
The Lido Cinema is      The Lido Cinema and the  
diagonally across from      Siam International Hotel  
the Siam International      are diagonally across  
Hotel.      from each other.

### c) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

1. dəen paj thaan sáaj      khâam thanǎn paj, léew dəen paj  
thaan sáaj  
Cross the street, then go to  
the left.
2. dəen paj thaan níi      khâam thanǎn paj, léew dəen paj  
thaan níi  
Cross the street, then go this way.
3. dəen tron paj khâanâa      khâam thanǎn paj, léew dəen tron paj  
khâanâa  
Cross the street, then do  
straight ahead.
4. dəen paj thaankhwăa      khâam thanǎn paj, léew dəen paj  
thaan khwăa  
Cross the street, then go to  
the right.

- 5) líaw sáaj                      khâam thanǎn paj, lésw líaw sáaj  
Cross the street, then turn left.
6. dæen tron paj khâanâa      khâam thanǎn paj, lésw dæen tron  
paj khâanâa  
Cross the street, then go straight  
ahead.
7. líaw khwǎa                      khâam thanǎn paj, lésw líaw khwǎa  
Cross the street, then turn right.

d) Response Drill

Cue

- |                          |  |  |
|--------------------------|--|--|
| 1. sáaj                  | khâam thanǎn, lésw dæen<br>paj thaan nǎj<br>Cross the street,<br>and go which way? | khâam thanǎn, lésw dæen<br>paj thaan sáaj<br>Cross the street, and<br>go to the left.        |
| 2. khwǎa                 | khâam thanǎn, lésw dæen<br>paj thaan nǎj<br>Cross the street,<br>and go which way? | khâam thanǎn, lésw dæen<br>paj thaan khwǎa<br>Cross the street and<br>go to the right.       |
| 3. tron paj              | khâam thanǎn, lésw dæen<br>paj thaan nǎj<br>Cross the street,<br>and go which way? | khâam thanǎn, lésw dæen<br>tron paj<br>Cross the street and<br>go straight.                  |
| 4. tron paj<br>khâan nâa | khâam thanǎn, lésw dæen<br>paj thaan nǎj<br>Cross the street,<br>and go which way? | khâam thanǎn, lésw dæen<br>tron paj khâan nâa<br>Cross the street, and<br>go straight ahead. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |    |      |   |   |
|----|------|---|---|
| 5. | sáaj | khâam thanǎn, léew dæen<br>paj thaanǎj<br>Cross the street<br>and go which way? | khâam thanǎn, léew dæen<br>paj thaanǎj sáaj<br>Cross the street, and<br>go to the left. |
|----|------|---|---|

### e) Response Drill

#### Cue

- |    |             |   |   |
|----|-------------|---|---|
| 1. | bàaj moonǎj | weelaa thǎanǎj khun ca<br>paj kin khâaw, ca klàp<br>maa klǐ moonǎj khráp<br>You're going to eat<br>at noon. When will<br>you return?  | ca klàp maa bàaj moonǎj<br>khráp<br>,<br>I'll be back at 1 p.m. |
| 2. | sǎonǎj thǎm | khun ca paj ráp phǎan<br>weelaa jen, ca klàp<br>maa klǐ moonǎj<br>You're going to pick<br>up a friend in the<br>late afternoon. When<br>will you return?                      | ca klàp maa sǎonǎj thǎm<br>-<br>At 8 p.m.                       |
| 3. | hâa moonǎj  | khun paj fanǎj théep thǎi<br>hǎnǎj léep toon cháaw, ca<br>klàp maa klǐ moonǎj<br>You're going to listen<br>to tapes in the lab in<br>the morning. When will<br>you come back? | ca klàp maa hâa moonǎj<br>cháaw<br>At 11 p.m.                   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. khâm khâm      khun paj sýy khǒn thfi      ca klàp maa khâm khâm  
 talàat weelaa jen, ca  
 klàp maa kii moon  
 You're going shopping  
 at the market in the  
 late afternoon. When  
 will you be back?      Sometime in the evening.
5. hòk moon      mýawaanníi kháw paj      kháw ca klàp maa hòk  
 jen      bóosatân.wanníi kháw      moon jen  
 ca klàp maa kii moon  
 Yesterday he went to  
 Boston. What time  
 today will he get  
 back?      At 6 p.m.
6. sǎam moon      khun ca paj prachum      ca klàp maa sǎam moon  
 weelaa bàaj sǒn  
 moon      khun ca klàp  
 kii moon  
 You are going to the  
 meeting at 2 p.m.  
 What time will you  
 get back?      At 3 p.m.

### f) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u>         | <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>   |
|--------------------|--|---|
| 1. sǐi moon<br>jen | khun maa roonrian sǎam<br>moon cháaw, ca klàp<br>(paj) bâan kii moon<br>You came to school<br>at 9. What time are<br>you going home? | ca klàp (paj) bâan<br>sǐi moon jen khráp<br><br>At 4 p.m. |

**THAI BASIC COURSE**

---

- |    |                   |  |   |
|----|-------------------|--|---|
| 2. | hâa moon<br>khrÿn | khun maa thîi thamnaan moon<br>cháaw, ca klàp (paj) bâan<br>kîi moon<br><br>You came to the office<br>at 7. When will you go<br>home?  | ca klàp (paj) bâan<br>hâa moon khrÿn<br><br><br>At 5.30 p.m.                  |
| 3. | jen jen           | bàajníi khun ca paj hăa mǎo,<br>khun ca klàp (paj) bâan kîi<br>moon<br><br>You're going to the<br>doctor's this afternoon.<br>What time will you go home?  | ca klàp (paj) bâan<br>jen jen<br><br><br>Sometime<br>the late after-<br>noon. |
| 4. | thîan<br>thîan    | phrÿnńi cháaw khun ca paj<br>ráp phÿan thîi doon myan,<br>khun ca klàp paj thamnaan<br>kîi moon<br><br>Tomorrow morning you are<br>going to pick up a friend<br>at Don Muang. What time<br>will you get back to the<br>office? | ca klàp paj thîan<br>thîan<br><br><br><br><br>Around noon.                    |
| 5. | bàaj sǎam<br>moon | mÿawaanníi khun paj<br>sathǎanthûut khun klàp<br>paj roonrian kîi moon<br><br>Yesterday you went to the<br>Embassy. What time did<br>you get back to school?   | klàp paj bàaj<br>sǎam moon<br><br><br><br>At 3 p.m.                           |



**THAI BASIC COURSE**

---

- |    |  |   |
|----|--|---|
| 6. | sìi thûm      kháw maa naanlían thîi bâan<br>phôm weelaa nỳn thûm. kháw<br>klàp (paj) bâan k̀i thûm<br>He came to a party at my<br>house at 7 p.m. What time<br>did he get home? | kháw klàp (paj)<br>bâan sìi thûm<br>.<br>At 10 p.m. |
|----|--|---|

g) Response Drill

| <u>Cue</u> | <u>Question</u>   | <u>Response</u>                                |
|------------|---|--|
| 1. no      | m̀yacháawníi khun dæen maa<br>roonrian rýplàaw khráp<br>Did you walk to school this<br>morning?           | plàaw khráp<br>(mâj dâj dæen)<br>No, I didn't. |
| 2. yes     | bàajníi khun ca dæen paj bâan<br>rýplàaw khráp<br>Are you going to walk home<br>this afternoon?           | dæen khráp<br>Yes, I am.                       |
| 3. no      | phrûnńíi khun ca dæen maa roonrian<br>rýplàaw khráp<br>Are you going to walk to<br>school tomorrow?       | plàaw khráp<br>(mâj dæen)<br>No, I'm not.      |
| 4. no      | m̀yakíńíi khun dæen paj prajsani<br>rýplàaw khráp<br>Did you walk to the Post<br>Office a short time ago? | plàaw khráp<br>(mâj dâj dæen)<br>No, I didn't. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

h) Substitution Dialog: thoo maa : thoo paj

MODEL: A: phanrajaa thoo maa hǎa khun 'Your wife called.'  
B: bòok wâa araj khráp 'What did she say?'  
A: khǒo hâj thoo paj hǎa kháw 'Please call her.'

Repeat the dialog substituting the following words for phanrajaa:

- |                    |                     |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. phŷan khun      | 4. phŷisǎaw khun    |
| 2. lûukchaa j kháw | 5. khruu khǒon khun |
| 3. khon thaj       | 6. khèsk malajuu    |

i) Substitution Dialog

MODEL: A: khun thoo paj hǎa 'Have you called your  
phanrajaa lésw rýjan wife yet?'  
B: thoo lésw khráp 'I did.'  
A: kháw bòok wâa araj 'What did she say?'  
B: (bòok wâa) bàaj moon (She said) she would come  
ca maa hǎa phǒm to see me at 1 p.m.

Repeat the dialog substituting the following words for phanrajaa.

- |                    |               |
|--------------------|---------------|
| 1. lûuksǎaw khun   | 4. khun phôo  |
| 2. phŷan khun      | 5. khruu khun |
| 3. nóonchaa j khun | 6. khun mēe   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 17.3 EXERCISES (Use the maps on pages 288 and 289 with exercise a.)

- a) One student asks another if he knows where various buildings are. A second student gives the location either in terms of another building (directly opposite the Erawan Hotel, etc.) or gives directions as to how to get there (cross the street, go to the corner, etc.) Use the points marked A, B, C, D, and E as starting points for directions.
- b) One student reports to another that someone has telephoned him. There follows an exchange concerning (1) the person that called, (2) time of the call, and (3) the contents of the message.
- c) One student tells another one that he called him up last night (or yesterday, etc.). They discuss the time of the call and the message.
- d) Each student describes a 'trip' he has made recently in terms of places visited and times of visits. Another student asks questions about the trip (the location of places visited, the time he left home, the time he returned home, etc.).

### 17.4 VOCABULARY

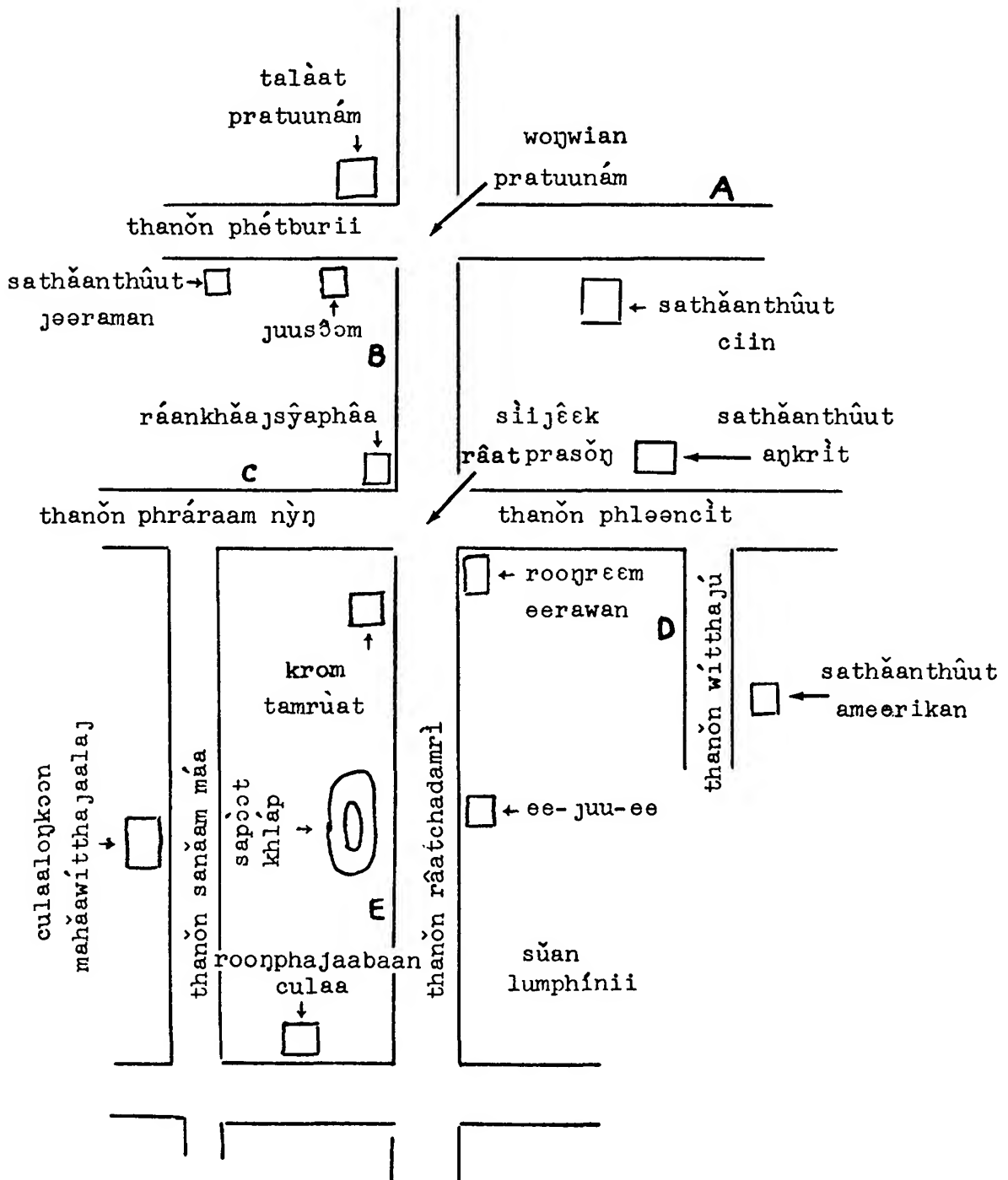
|                     |                                    |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| aŋrii duray         | Henri Durant (name of a street)    |
| amarin              | Amarin (name of a hotel)           |
| bon                 | above, on top of                   |
| diisaaj thaj        | Design Thai (name of a dress shop) |
| jýaŋ kàp /ka<br>kan | diagonally across                  |
| khâam               | to cross, across                   |
| khâaŋbon            | up above                           |
| khâaŋlâaŋ           | down below                         |
| lidôo               | Lido (name)                        |
| mum                 | corner                             |
| ŋaanlíaŋ            | party (entertainment)              |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

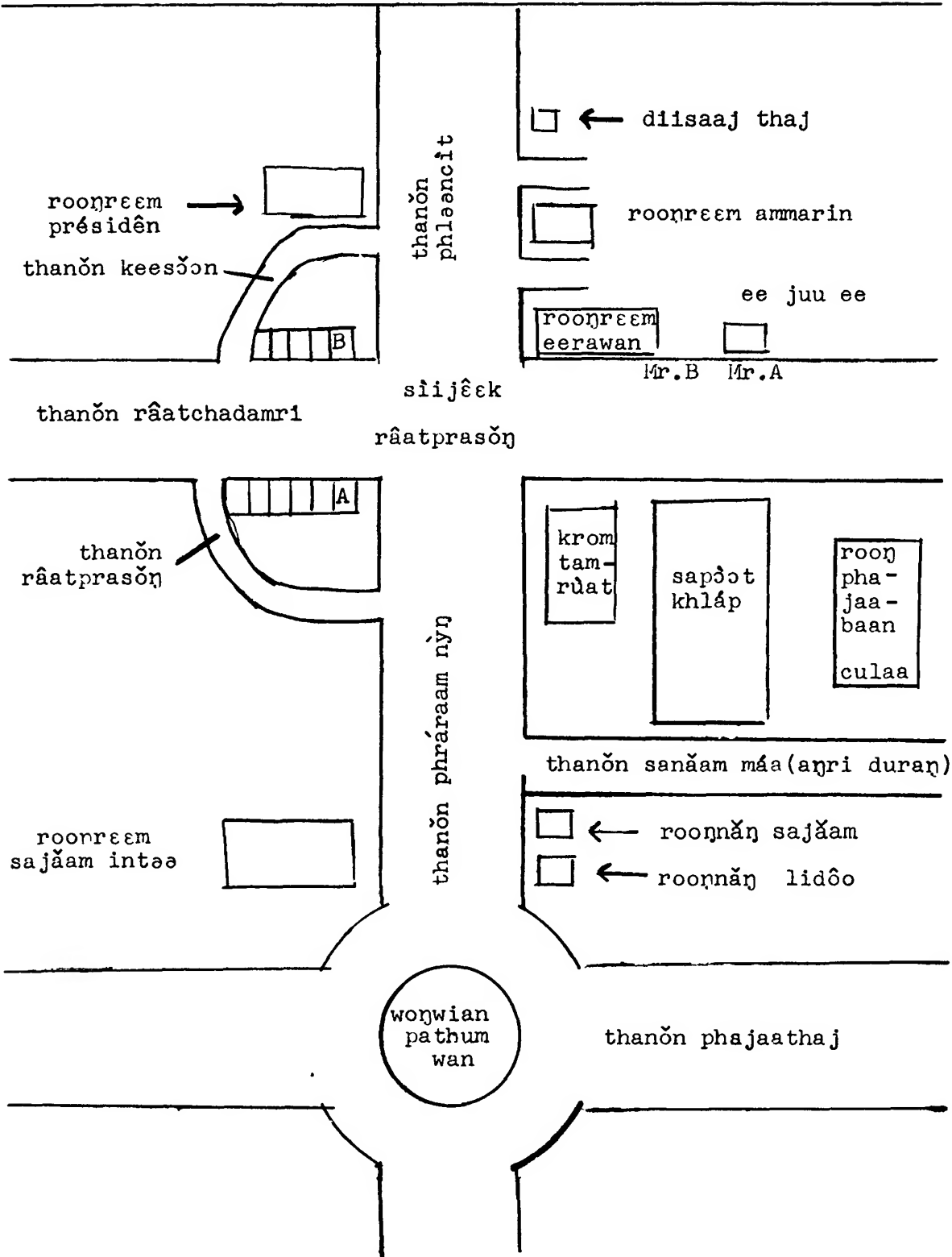
---

|                      |                                 |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| présidên             | President (English name)        |
| roonăn               | movie house, cinema             |
| sajăam               | Siam (former name for Thailand) |
| sajăam intəə         | Siam International Hotel        |
| sanăam máa (hèn)     | race track                      |
| sâap                 | to know                         |
| sýaphâa (tua, chút)  | cloth                           |
| thaaŋnǎ              | North                           |
| thaaŋtâj             | South                           |
| thǎn                 | to reach, get to                |
| tronkhâam kan kàp/ka | opposite                        |

THAI BASIC COURSE



THAI BASIC COURSE



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON EIGHTEEN

#### 18.0 BASIC DIALOG: An Appointment

- A: maa hǎa khraj khá Who did you come to see?  
B: khun sawàt jùu máj khráp Is Mr. Sawat in?
- A: māj jùu khâ No, he isn't.  
òok paj khâanòok He went out.  
B: ca klàp mýaràj, sâap máj khráp Do you know when he'll be back?
- A: kháw bòok wâa ca klàp kòon He said he'd be back  
thían before noon.  
chæen khâw maa nân khooj Please come in (and) sit  
knâan naj kòon sikhá down and wait.  
B: khòopkhun khráp Thank you.
- (khun B khâw maa naj hôn rápkhèsk): (Mr. B comes into the recep-  
tion room):
- B: ôo khòothòot, thîinîi mi Excuse me, is there a  
thoorasàp máj khráp telephone here?
- A: mi khâ Yes, there is.
- B: (phǒm) cháj (thoorasàp) May I use it?  
nòoj dâj máj khráp
- A: chæen khâ Go ahead.  
jùu bon tó tua nán It's on that desk.  
hěn máj khâ Do you see it?
- B: hěn léew khráp, khòopkhun mâak I see it. Thanks very  
much.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 18.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG:

- a) maa hǎa means to come to see someone.
- b) Both sâap and rúu mean to know a fact. sâap is more formal than rúu. In many constructions they are interchangeable, but not in all. In the following examples only rúu may be used.

kháw rúu nán̄sǎy

'He's literate'.

kháw rúu phaasǎa an̄krít

'He knows English'.

phaasǎa thaj khǒɔŋ kháw jêe

'His Thai is very bad.

mâak. phǒm faŋ mâj rúu rǎaŋ

I don't understand what he's saying.'

- c) rúucàk means to be acquainted with a person or thing.

### 18.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) Sentence embedding

One sentence (called a 'constituent sentence') may be embedded in another sentence (called a 'matrix sentence'). The embedded sentence stands in a particular relationship to the matrix sentence; for example, it may serve as object complement of the main verb, or in some other relationship. The examples below illustrate this.

- (i) jùu + Location with Motion Verbs

|           |      |              |                        |
|-----------|------|--------------|------------------------|
| A: kháw   | nân̄ |              | He's sitting.          |
| B: kháw   |      | jùu khâaŋnâa | He's in front.         |
| A/B: kháw | nân̄ | jùu khâaŋnâa | He's sitting in front. |

The sentence jùu + Location is embedded in the sentence kháw nân̄ and indicates the location of the action. It has the same function when it occurs with other verbs of motion like jyyn, paj, etc.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

(ii) Included sentence as Object Complement of Main verb.

|      |           |     |                  |                          |
|------|-----------|-----|------------------|--------------------------|
| A:   | khun sâap | ... |                  | You know.                |
| B:   |           |     | kháw jùu thîinǎj | Where does he live?      |
| A/B: | khun sâap | wâa | kháw jùu thîinǎj | You know where he lives. |

Certain verbs like sâap 'to know a fact', phûut 'to speak', etc. normally have sentences as object complements. wâa serves as an obligatory connector when the verb precedes its object.

(iii) khǎo as Request Form

|         |      |      |      |                |   |
|---------|------|------|------|----------------|---|
| A:      | phǎm | khǎo |      |                | I request....   |
| B:      |      |      | phǎm | cháj thoorasàp | I use the telephone.  |
| A/B: 1) | phǎm | khǎo |      | cháj thoorasàp | { I request (to be allowed) to use the telephone.<br>'May I use the telephone?' |
| A/B: 2) |      | khǎo | phǎm | cháj thoorasàp |   |
| A/B: 3) |      | khǎo |      | cháj thoorasàp |   |

Either (1), (2), or (3) may be used. (3) is probably more common than (1) or (2). There is no difference in meaning in the three. The subject pronoun may be omitted only when it is phǎm or dichán.

This request form is often followed by dâj máj khráp as in khǎo cháj thoorasàp (nòoj), dâj máj khráp, to which the response is dâj khráp 'go ahead'.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 18.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

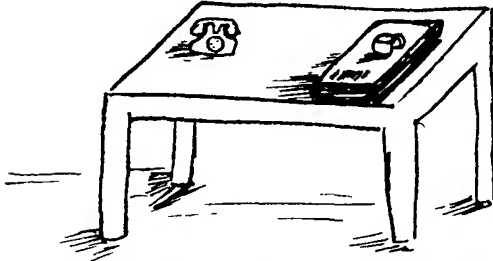
#### a) Response Drill (Use Chart I.)

| <u>Question</u>  | <u>Answer</u>                               |
|--|---|
| 1. thoorasàp jùu thîinǎj<br>Where's the telephone?     | jùu bon tó<br>On the table.                 |
| 2. thuâj kaafɛɛ jùu thîinǎj<br>Where's the coffee cup? | jùu bon nánsǎy (tó)<br>On the book. (table) |
| 3. krapǎw jùu thîinǎj<br>Where's the suitcase?         | jùu bon phýyn<br>On the floor.              |
| 4. phěenthîi jùu thîinǎj<br>Where's the map?           | jùu bon fǎa<br>On the wall.                 |
| 5. kháw jùu thîinǎj<br>Where is he?                    | jùu bon bâan<br>In the house.               |
| 6. rôt jùu thîinǎj<br>Where's the car?                 | jùu bon thanǎn<br>On the street.            |

THAI BASIC COURSE

CHART I

nánsýy jùu bon tó. thûaj kaafse  
jùu bon nánsýy thoorasàp jùu  
bon tó.



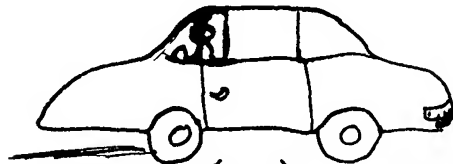
krapǎw jùu bon phýyn



naalikaá jùu bon fǎa  
kradaandam jùu bon fǎa  
phěenthîi jùu bon fǎa  
rûup jùu bon fǎa  
tua nánsýy jùu bon kradaandam



kháw jùu bon bâan



rót jùu bon thǎnǒn

## THAI BASIC COURSE

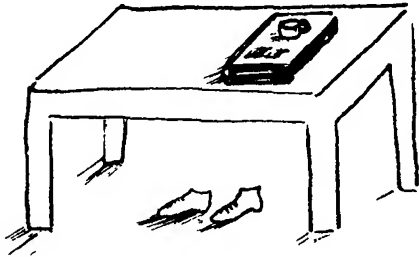
---

### b) Response Drill (Use Chart II.)

| <u>Question</u>  | <u>Answer</u>  |
|--|--|
| 1. rɔɔŋtháaw jùu thîinǎj<br>Where are the shoes?           | jùu tâj tó.<br>Under the table.  |
| 2. náŋsǎy jùu thîinǎj<br>Where's the book?                 | jùu bon tó<br>On the table...<br><br>tâj thûaj kaafɛɛ<br>under the coffee cup. |
| 3. khon jùu thîinǎj<br>Where is the person?                | jùu bon bâan<br>In the house.  |
| 4. mǎa jùu thîinǎj<br>Where's the dog?                     | jùu tâjthûn bâan<br>In the space under the house.                              |
| 5. caŋwàt udɔɔn jùu thîinǎj<br>Where's Udon Province?      | jùu nǎa khǒnkèn<br>It's north of Konkaen.                                      |
| 6. caŋwàt khǒnkèn jùu thîinǎj<br>Where's Konkaen Province? | jùu { nǎa khorâat<br>tâj udɔɔn<br>It's north of Korat/<br>south of Udon.       |
| 7. naalikaa jùu thîinǎj<br>Where's the clock?              | jùu nǎa kradaandam.<br>It's above the blackboard.                              |
| 8. kradaandam jùu thîinǎj<br>Where's the blackboard?       | jùu tâj naalikaa<br>It's below the clock.                                      |

tâj - bon

CHART II



tâj

nánsýy jùu tâj thûaj kaafɛɛ  
rɔɔnθháaw jùu tâj tó

bon

thûaj kaafɛɛ jùu bon nánsýy

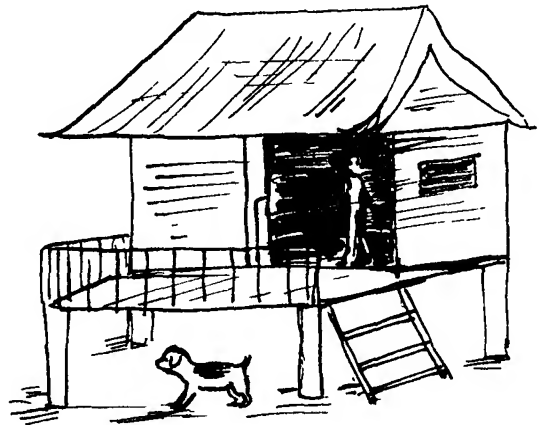
tâjthún bâan : bon bâan

tâj

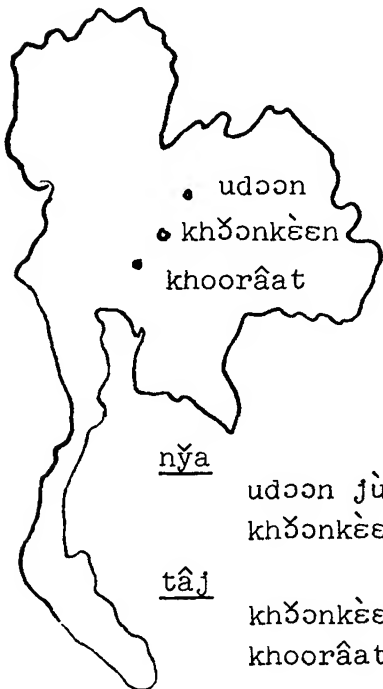
mǎa jùu tâjthún bâan

bon

khon jùu bon bâan



tâj - nýa



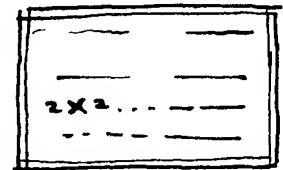
nýa

naalikaa jùu nýa  
kradaandam



tâj

kradandam jùu  
tâj naalikaa



nýa

udɔɔn jùu nýa khɔ́ɔnkɛ̀ɛn  
khɔ́ɔnkɛ̀ɛn jùu nýa khorâat

tâj

khɔ́ɔnkɛ̀ɛn jùu tâj udɔɔn  
khorâat jùu tâj khɔ́ɔnkɛ̀ɛn

c) Sentence Combination Drill

Pattern 1 and 2

Pattern 3

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. kháw nân<br>kháw jùu khâanâa             | kháw nân jùu khâanâa<br>He's sitting in front.                      |
| 2. kháw jyyn<br>kháw jùu khâan khâan pratuu | kháw jyyn jùu khâan khâan pratuu.<br>He's standing beside the door. |
| 3. kháw noon<br>kháw jùu bon tian           | kháw noon jùu bon tian<br>He's sleeping on (in) the bed.            |
| 4. kháw nân<br>kháw jùu naj rót             | kháw nân jùu naj rót<br>He's sitting in the car.                    |
| 5. kháw jyyn<br>kháw jùu thîi sîjêsk        | kháw jyyn jùu thîi sîjêsk<br>He's standing on the corner.           |
| 6. kháw nân<br>kháw jùu thîi kâwîi          | kháw nân jùu thîi kâwîi<br>He's sitting in the chair.               |
| 7. kháw nân<br>kháw jùu thaan khwăa         | kháw nân jùu thaan khwăa<br>He's sitting on the right.              |
| 8. kháw jyyn<br>kháw jùu thaansáaj phôm     | kháw jyyn jùu thaansáaj phôm<br>He's standing to the left of me.    |
| 9. kháw nân<br>kháw jùu bon bân             | kháw nân jùu bon bân<br>He's sitting in the house.                  |

d) Expansion Drill

1. nâŋ  
 nâŋ sikhráp  
 nâŋ kòon sikhráp  
 chæen nâŋ kòon sikhráp  
 chæen nâŋ thîinŋi kòon sikhráp  
 chæen nâŋ khoj thîinŋi kòon sikhráp
  
2. khâw maa  
 khâw maa sikhráp  
 khâw maa kòon sikhráp  
 chæen khâw maa kòon sikhráp  
 chæen khâw maa khâaŋnaj kòon sikhráp  
 chæen khâw maa nâŋ khâaŋnaj kòon sikhráp  
 chæen khâw maa nâŋ khoj khâaŋnaj kòon sikhráp

e) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

Pattern 2

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. (kháw) ca klàp mýaràj,<br/>(khun) sâap máj khráp</li> </ol>  | <p>khun sâap máj khráp wâa<br/>         kháw ca klàp mýaràj<br/>         Do you know when he will return?</p> |
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. (kháw) paj mýaràj<br/>(khun) sâap máj khráp</li> </ol>       | <p>khun sâap máj khráp wâa<br/>         kháw paj mýaràj<br/>         Do you know when he went?</p>            |
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. (kháw) thamŋaan thîinǎj<br/>(khun) sâap máj khráp</li> </ol> | <p>khun sâap máj khráp wâa<br/>         kháw thamŋaan thîinǎj<br/>         Do you know where he works?</p>    |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. (kháw) chÿy araj                      khun sâap máj khráp wâa  
(khun) sâap máj khráp                      kháw chÿy araj  
Do you know what his name is?
5. sathăanthûut aᅇkrít jùu                      khun sâap máj khráp wâa  
thĭinăj                      kháw chÿy araj  
(khun) sâap máj khráp                      sathăanthûut aᅇkrít jùu thĭinăj  
Do you know where the British  
Embassy is?
6. kháw pen khraj                      khun sâap máj khráp  
khun sâap máj khráp                      wâa kháw pen khraj  
Do you know who (what) he is?
7. kháw ca paj kĭi wan                      khun sâap máj khráp  
khun sâap máj khráp                      wâa kháw ca paj kĭi wan.  
Do you know how many days  
he'll be gone?
8. thĭi sathăanthûut mi khon                      khun sâap máj khráp wâa thĭi  
thăwràj                      sathăanthûut mi khon thăwràj  
khun sâap máj khráp                      Do you know how many people  
are at the embassy?

### f) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

1. ryăᅇ

kháw rúu ryăᅇ

He understands.

2. ryăᅇ níi

kháw rúu ryăᅇ níi

He understands this matter.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. ryâŋ khon ameerikan      kháw rúu ryâŋ khon ameerikan  
He understands Americans.
4. bæe thoorasàp phǒm      kháw rúu bæe thoorasàp phǒm  
He knows my telephone number.
5. wâa khun pen khraj      kháw rúu wâa khun pen khraj  
He knows who you are.
6. wâa phǒm mâj chǒp kháw      kháw rúu wâa phǒm mâj chǒp kháw  
He knows I don't like him.

### g) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

1. khun      kháw rúucàk khun  
He knows you.
2. phǒm      kháw rúucàk phǒm  
He knows me.
3. chýy khun      kháw rúucàk chýy khun  
He knows your name.
4. sanǎamlǔaŋ      kháw rúucàk sanǎamlǔaŋ  
He's acquainted with (knows where it is) the Pramane Grounds.
5. kham níi      kháw rúucàk kham níi  
He's familiar with this word.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. khonthaj lăaj khon                      kháw rúucàk khonthaj lăaj khon  
He knows many Thais.
7. thaaj paj bân khun                      kháw rúucàk thaaj paj bân khun  
He knows the way to your house.

### h) Combination Drill

#### Pattern 1 and 2

1. talàat jùu thĭnăj  
phǒm sâap
2. kháw thamnaan araj  
phǒm sâap
3. kháw pen khon dii  
phǒm sâap
4. thĕew năj mi ránaahăan  
diidii  
kháw sâap
5. khun kèn  
kháw sâap

#### Pattern 3

- phǒm sâap wâa talàat jùu thĭnăj  
I know where the market is.
- phǒm sâap wâa kháw thamnaan araj.  
I know where he works.
- phǒm sâap wâa kháw pen khondii  
I know he's a good person.
- kháw sâap wâa thĕew năj  
mi ránaahăan diidii  
He knows in which section there  
are good restaurants.
- kháw sâap wâa khun kèn  
He knows you are skillful.

1) Combination Drill

Pattern 1 and 2

1. nân, khraj  
khun sâap máj
2. kháw chôp araj  
khun sâap máj
3. hõnsamùt jùu thfinǎj  
khun sâap máj khráp
4. kháw maa mýaràj  
khun sâap máj
5. phrûnñíi kháw ca maa máj  
khun sâap máj
6. myâwaanníi kháw paj  
thamnaan rýplàaw  
khun sâap máj
7. kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj  
dâj rýplàaw  
khun sâap máj

Pattern 3

- khun sâap máj wâa nân khraj  
Do you know who that over there is?
- khun sâap máj khráp wâa  
kháw chôp araj  
Do you know what he likes?
- khun sâap máj khráp wâa  
hõnsamùt jùu thfinǎj  
Do you know where the library is?
- khun sâap máj khráp wâa  
kháw maa mýaràj  
Do you know when he came?
- khun sâap máj khráp wâa phrûnñíi  
kháw ca maa máj  
Do you know if he's coming tomorrow?
- khun sâap máj wâa myâwaanníi kháw  
paj thamnaan rýplàaw  
Do you know whether he went to work yesterday or not?
- khun sâap máj khráp wâa  
kháw phûut phaasǎathaj dâj rýplàaw  
Do you know if he speaks Thai or not?

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>8. kháw phimdiit dâj dii<br/>rý plàaw<br/>khun sâap máj</p>         | <p>khun sâap máj khráp wâa<br/>kháw phimdiit dâj dii rý plàaw<br/>Do you know whether he can<br/>type well?</p>             |
| <p>9. kháw chôop thaan aahăan<br/>faràn rý plàaw<br/>khun sâap máj</p> | <p>khun sâap máj khráp wâa<br/>kháw chôop thaan<br/>aahăan faràn rý plàaw<br/>Do you know if he likes<br/>foreign food?</p> |

j) Combination Drill

Pattern 1 and 2

Pattern 3

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. kháw nân jùu thîinăj<br/>phôm mâj sâap</p>      | <p>phôm mâj sâap wâa kháw<br/>nân jùu thîinăj<br/>I don't know where she's<br/>sitting.</p>                |
| <p>2. khun mâj chôop kháw<br/>phôm mâj sâap</p>       | <p>phôm mâj sâap wâa khun<br/>mâj chôop kháw<br/>I didn't know that you<br/>didn't like her.</p>           |
| <p>3. kháw jan pen sòot<br/>phôm mâj sâap</p>         | <p>phôm mâj sâap wâa kháw<br/>jan pen sòot<br/>I didn't know that he was<br/>still single.</p>             |
| <p>4.. kháw tènnaan léew rý jan<br/>phôm mâj sâap</p> | <p>phôm mâj sâap wâa kháw<br/>tènnaan léew rý jan<br/>I didn't know whether he<br/>was married or not.</p> |

5. kháw ca maa máj  
phǒm mâj sâap

phǒm mâj sâap wâa kháw ca  
maa máj

I don't know if she will  
come or not.

k) Combination Drill

Pattern 1 and 2

Pattern 3

1. kháw tham dâj rý plàaw  
phǒm mâj dâj thǎam (kháw)

phǒm mâj dâj thǎam wâa  
kháw tham dâj rý plàaw

I didn't ask if he could do it.

2. kháw ca klàp maa máj  
phǒm mâj dâj thǎam

phǒm mâj dâj thǎam wâa  
kháw ca klàp maa máj

I didn't ask if he would  
return.

3. kháw khœj thamnaan araj  
phǒm mâj dâj thǎam (kháw)

phǒm mâj dâj thǎam wâa  
kháw khœj thamnaan araj

I didn't ask what he used  
to do.

4. kháw pen khondii máj  
khun thǎam phýan khun  
rýplàaw

khun thǎam phýan khun  
rýplàaw wâa kháw pen khondii máj

Did you ask your friend  
if he is a good person?

5. kháw jùu thîinǎj  
khun thǎam kháw rý plàaw

khun thǎam kháw rý plàaw  
wâa kháw jùu thîinǎj

Did you ask him where he  
lived?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. kháw kháwcaj máj                      khun thǎam kháw rý plàaw  
khun thǎam kháw rýplàaw              wâa khâw khâwcaj máj  
Did you ask him if he  
understood?
7. khun sǒmsàk jùu rý mâj jùu              khun thǎam kháw rýplàaw wâa  
khun thǎam kháw rýplàaw              khun sǒmsàk jùu rý mâj jùu  
Did you ask him if Somsak  
was in or not?
8. kháw ca maa dâj máj                      khun thǎam kháw rýplàaw wâa  
khun thǎam kháw rýplàaw              kháw ca maa dâj máj  
Did you ask him if he  
would be able to come?

### 1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khǎo cháj thoorasàp nòoj, dâj máj khráp  
May I use the telephone?
2. khǎo thǎam araj nòoj, dâj máj khráp  
May I ask something?
3. khǎo duu nòoj, dâj máj khráp  
May I look?
4. khǎo òok kòon weelaa, dâj máj khráp  
May I leave ahead of time?
5. khǎo òok kòon weelaa sák sìphâa naathii, dâj máj khráp  
May I leave 15 minutes ahead of time?

Repeat the drill above two times. Use phǒm khǎo... one time and khǎo phǒm... one time.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### m) Substitution Drill

| <u>Cue</u>       | <u>Pattern</u>  |
|------------------|---|
| 1. bòok          | kháw <u>bòok</u> wâa ca klàp kòon thîaŋ<br>He said he would return before noon.                             |
| 2. khít          | kháw <u>khít</u> wâa ca klàp kòon thîaŋ<br>He thought he would return before noon.                          |
| 3. phûut         | kháw <u>phûut</u> wâa ca klàp kòon thîaŋ<br>He said he would return before noon.                            |
| 4. sàŋ           | kháw <u>sàŋ</u> wâa ca klàp kòon thîaŋ<br>He left a message that he would return<br>before noon.            |
| 5. thoo maa bòok | kháw <u>thoo maa bòok</u> wâa kháw ca klàp kòon thîaŋ<br>He called and said he would return<br>before noon. |

### 18.4 EXERCISES

- a) One student asks another where various classroom objects are; another responds that they are on, above, under, etc. other objects.
- b) Using the map following page 74 (or a classroom map) discuss the relative positions ('north of', 'south of') of various Thai cities and provinces.
- c) Different students assume different positions in the classroom (standing by the door, sitting on the table, etc.). Other students describe the positions they are in.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- d) Have the students find out information about each other (where they live, whether they play tennis, if they are cold, etc.). Use conversational exchanges like the one below:

Student A: Do you know where Mr. C lives?

Student B: No, I don't.

- (to Student D): Where does Mr. C live?

Student D: I think he lives on Birch Street.

Student C: No, I don't. I live on Elm Street.

- (Student A to Student B): Did you ask Mr. C where he lives?

Student B: No, I didn't. I asked Mr. D.

Student A: What did Mr. D say?

Student B: He said he didn't know.

Student A: Then you didn't ask Mr. C?

Student B: No, I didn't.

Student A: Ask him now.

- (Student B to Student C): Where do you live?

Student C: On Elm Street.

Student B: He said he lived on Elm Street.

Student A: Thanks very much.

- e) Student A asks Student B if he is familiar with a certain person or place. Student B responds that he is not familiar with the person or place and asks for further information (where a thing is or who a person is). Student A provides the information.
- f) Student A asks the instructor for permission to perform some act (close the window, open his book, etc.) The instructor responds to the request either negatively or affirmatively.
- g) One student asks another his opinion about something. The second student gives an opinion.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 18.5 VOCABULARY

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| ๓๐                 | oh   |
| bəə (bəə)          | number (for rooms, telephone, clothing size, etc.) |
| chəən              | please   |
| chōp               | to like  |
| fǎa (fǎa)          | wall   |
| hěn                | to see   |
| hōŋráp khèek (hōŋ) | reception room, living room                        |
| jjyn               | to stand   |
| kham               | word   |
| khít               | to think   |
| khon               | person (classifier for person)                     |
| khǔ                | to request, ask                                    |
| khōj               | to wait  |
| krápǎw (baj)       | suitcase, bag, purse                               |
| mǎa                | dog  |
| nāŋ                | to sit   |
| nōn                | to sleep   |
| phimdit            | to type, print                                     |
| phýyn              | floor  |
| rōŋtháaw (khūu)    | shoes (pair)                                       |
| rúu rýaŋ           | to understand                                      |
| rýaŋ               | story (about), about<br>(classifier for story)     |
| sák                | a little, bit                                      |
| sanǎam lúan        | the Pramane Grounds                                |
| sàŋ                | to order, to leave instructions or<br>a message    |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| sawàt            | Sawat (name)                                    |
| sii, sí          | particle indicating definiteness<br>or emphasis |
| tâj              | under   |
| tâjthŭn          | the space under the house                       |
| thăam            | to ask, (a question)                            |
| thuâj (baj)      | cup (classifier for a cup of something)         |
| tiaŋ (tiaŋ)      | bed (to sleep on)                               |
| tua nánsŷy (tua) | letter (of the alphabet)                        |
| wan (wan)        | day (classifier for day)                        |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON NINETEEN

#### 19.0 BASIC DIALOG: Directions to the Bathroom

- A: khǒwthôot, hǒnám sámràp  
phûuchaaj jùu thǐnǎj khráp      Excuse me, where's the  
men's bathroom?
- B: hǒnám phûuchaaj lǎ  
jùu khâanlâan      The men's bathroom?  
It's downstairs.
- A: paj thaanǎj khráp      Which way?
- B: paj thaanǐi  
loŋ kradaaj paj, lésw líaw khwǎa      Go this way.  
hǒnám ca jùu thaan khwǎa myy      Go down the stairs, then  
turn right. The bathroom  
will be on your right.
- A: khòopkhun khráp      Thank you.
- B: mâj pen raj khráp      You're welcome.

#### 19.1 GRAMMAR DRILLS

##### a) Expansion Drill

1. loŋ      down  
loŋ paj      Go down.  
loŋ kradaaj paj      Go down the stairs.  
dæen loŋ kradaaj paj      Walk down the stairs.
2. loŋ      down  
loŋ paj      Go down.  
loŋ líf paj      Go down on the elevator.  
loŋ líf paj chán sǒŋ      Go down to the second  
floor on the elevator.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. khÿn up  
khÿn paj Go up.  
khÿn kradaaj paj Go up the stairs.  
dæen khÿn kradaaj paj Walk up the stairs.  
dæen khÿn kradaaj paj chán pèet Walk up the stairs to  
the eighth floor.
4. khÿn up  
khÿn paj Go up.  
khÿn líf paj Go up on the elevator.  
khÿn líf paj khâanbon Go upstairs on the  
elevator.
5. loŋ down  
loŋ maa Come down.  
loŋ kradaaj maa Come down the stairs.  
dæen loŋ kradaaj maa Walk down the stairs.
6. loŋ down  
loŋ maa Come down.  
loŋ líf maa Come down on the  
elevator.
7. khÿn up  
khÿn maa Come up.  
khÿn kradaaj maa Come up the stairs.  
dæen khÿn kradaaj maa Walk up the stairs.  
(towards the speaker)
8. khÿn up  
khÿn maa Come up.  
khÿn líf maa Come up on the elevator.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                                      |                                 |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 9. khỳn                              | up                              |
| khỳn maa                             | Come up.                        |
| chæen khỳn maa kòon sikhráp          | Please come up first.           |
| chæen khỳn maa bon bâan kòon sikhráp | Please come in the house first. |

b) Response Drill (See Chart I)

1. Teacher: kháw kamlan dæen paj hõnsamùt  
She's walking to the library.

| <u>Question</u>                               | <u>Response</u>                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| kháw kamlan tham araj<br>What is she doing?   | kháw kamlan dæen<br>She's walking. |
| kháw kamlan ca paj nǎj<br>Where is she going? | paj hõnsamùt<br>To the library.    |
| kháw paj janņaj<br>How is she going?          | kháw kamlan dæen<br>She's walking. |

2. Teacher: kháw kamlan dæen maa hõnrìan  
She's coming to the classroom.

| <u>Question</u>                               | <u>Response</u>           |
|---|---------------------------|
| kháw kamlan tham araj<br>What's she doing?    | dæen<br>Walking.          |
| kháw kamlan ca paj nǎj<br>Where is she going? | maa hõnrìan<br>To school. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

kháw maa jaŋŋaj                      dæen maa.  
How is she coming?                      Walking.

3. Teacher: kháw kamlan nân loŋ bon kâwfi  
She's sitting down on the chair.

| <u>Question</u>   | <u>Response</u>          |
|---|--------------------------|
| kháw kamlan tham araj<br>What is she doing?                   | nân<br>(She's) sitting.  |
| kháw nân loŋ bon <sup>1</sup> araj<br>What is she sitting on? | bon kâwfi<br>On a chair. |

4. Teacher: kháw kamlan noon loŋ bon tian  
He's lying down on the bed.

| <u>Question</u>                           | <u>Response</u>         |
|---|-------------------------|
| kháw kamlan tham araj<br>What's he doing? | noon<br>Lying.          |
| noon loŋ bon araj<br>What's he lying on?  | bon tian<br>On the bed. |

5. Teacher: kháw kamlan jyyn khÿn  
She's standing.

| <u>Question</u>                            | <u>Response</u>             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| kháw kamlan tham araj<br>What's she doing? | jyyn khÿn<br>Standing (up). |

---

1. This type of question is not common. It is used here in order to elicit a certain kind of response.

6. Teacher: kháw kamləŋ lúk khÿn càak tian  
He's getting up out of bed.

| <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>         |
|--|-------------------------|
| kháw kamləŋ tham araj<br>What's he doing?                      | lúk khÿn<br>Getting up. |
| lúk khÿn càak araj <sup>1</sup><br>What is he getting up from? | càak tian<br>From bed.  |

c) Contraction Drill



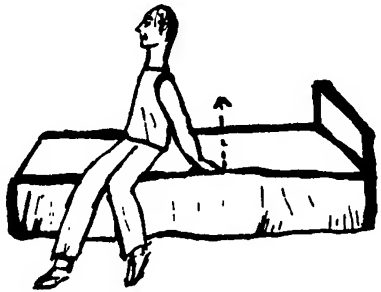
| <u>Pattern 1</u>  | <u>Pattern 2</u>  |
|---|---|
| 1. hōŋnám sámràp phūuchaaj<br>Men's toilet                          | hōŋnám phūuchaaj<br>Men's toilet                          |
| 2. hōŋnám sámràp phūujǐŋ<br>Women's toilet                          | hōŋnám phūujǐŋ<br>Women's toilet                          |
| 3. nāŋsǎy sām ràp dèk<br>A book for children                        | nāŋsǎy dèk<br>A book for children                         |
| 4. rót sámràp thūut<br>The ambassador's car                         | rót thūut<br>The ambassador's car.                        |
| 5. thī còot rót sámràp cāwnāathī<br>The parking place for officials | thī còot rót cāwnāathī<br>The parking place for officials |

---

<sup>1</sup>This type of question is not common. It is used in this exercise only in order to get a certain kind of response.

THAI BASIC COURSE

CHART I

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1.</p> <p>kháw kamləŋ dæən<br/>pəj (thǐi)<br/>hōŋsamùt</p>  | <p>2.</p> <p>kháw kamləŋ<br/>dæən maa<br/>(thǐi)<br/>hōŋrian</p>  |
| <p>3.</p> <p>kháw kamləŋ<br/>nāŋ loŋ<br/>bon kâwǐi</p>        | <p>4.</p> <p>kháw kamləŋ noon<br/>loŋ bon tiaŋ</p>               |
| <p>5.</p> <p>kháw kamləŋ<br/>jyyn khǐn</p>                   | <p>6.</p> <p>kháw kamləŋ lúk khǐn<br/>càak tiaŋ</p>             |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 6. tó sámràp khruu<br>The teacher's desk. | tó khruu<br>The teacher's desk. |
|---|---------------------------------|

### d) Transformation Drill

| <u>Cue</u>  | <u>Pattern 1</u>  | <u>Pattern 2</u>   |
|-------------|---|--|
| 1. phûujǎn  | nǐi hōnám sámràp<br>phûuchaaj<br>This is a men's<br>toilet.             | mâj cháj sámràp<br>phûujǎn<br>It's not for women.            |
| 2. phûujàj  | nǐi nán̄sǎy sámràp dèk<br>This is a book for<br>children.               | mâj châj sámràp phûujàj<br>It's not for adults.              |
| 3. nákrían  | nǐi tó sámràp khruu<br>This is the teacher's<br>desk.                   | mâj châj sámràp nákrían<br>It's not for students.            |
| 4. dỳm      | nǐi nám sámràp cháj<br>This is water for<br>use.                        | mâj châj sámràp dỳm<br>It's not for drinking.                |
| 5. khon con | nǐi bân sámràp khon<br>ruaj<br>This is a house for<br>rich people.      | mâj châj sámràp khon<br>con<br>It is not for poor<br>people. |
| 6. rían     | nǐi nán̄sǎy sámràp<br>àn lèn<br>This is a book to<br>read for pleasure. | mâj châj sámràp<br>rían<br>It is not a text<br>to study.     |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                          |  |   |
|--------------------------|--|---|
| 7. thahǎan               | nǐi khrǎnbin sǎmràp<br>phonlaryan<br>This is a plane for<br>civilians. | mâj châj sǎmràp<br>thahǎan<br>It is not for<br>soldiers.                |
| 8. prathaan<br>aathípodi | nǐi rôt sǎmràp thûut<br>This is the car for<br>the Ambassador.         | mâj châj sǎmràp<br>prathaanaathípodi<br>It is not for the<br>President. |
| 9. chaawnaa              | nǐi khrǎnmy sǎmràp<br>chaawsǎan<br>This is a tool for<br>gardeners.    | mâj châj sǎmràp<br>chaawnaa<br>It is not for rice<br>farmers.           |

### 19.2 EXERCISES

- a) The instructor will ask different students to do different things (stand up, sit down, sit down on the table, etc.). As the student performs the action, another student will ask a third student questions like these: (1) What's he doing? (2) What's he doing it on? (If appropriate)
- b) Ask directions to:
1. Registrar's room.
  2. The library.
  3. Language laboratory.
  4. The restaurant.
  5. Other places in the vicinity.

19.3 VOCABULARY

|                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| cháj                | to use                 |
| chán                | floor, story           |
| con                 | to be poor (in wealth) |
| còot                | to park                |
| dỳym                | to drink               |
| hônnaám             | bathroom               |
| jyyn                | to stand               |
| khryañbin (khryañ)  | airplane               |
| khryañmyy (khryañ)  | tool                   |
| khÿn                | (to go) up             |
| kradaaj             | stairs, steps          |
| lon                 | to (go) down           |
| líaw                | to turn                |
| líf                 | elevator               |
| lúk                 | to get up              |
| myy                 | hand                   |
| phûujàj (khon)      | an adult               |
| prathaanaathípbodii | The President          |
| ruaj                | to be rich, wealthy    |
| sámràp              | for                    |
| thfi còotrót        | parking place          |

LESSON TWENTY

20.0 BASIC EPISODE: Tambon Bangchak

nîi khyy tambon baançàak. tambon níi jùu naj canwàt hèn nỳn naj phâak klaan. tambonníi tân jùu rim khloon wát pen sũunklaan khõon tambon níi. wát jùu rim khloon. khâan khâan wát mii roonrian. roonrian níi pen roonrian léklék, mii khruu hâa khon. khonnyñ maa càak krunthêep, ìik sîi khon pen khon canwàtníi. thîi roonrian mii nákrían raawraaw róoj khon.

fàn tronkan khâam kàp wát mii talàat, ráan lé sathãanii tamruat. talàat jùu jýan kàp wát. khâan khâan talàat mii ráan tàantàan chên ráankhãajkhõon, ráantàtphõm. thîi tambon níi mâj mii roonăn, roonreem lé prajsanii. roonphajaabaan kô mâj mii tè mii sũksãalaa. thîi sũksãalaa mii naanphajaabaan sõon khon. sũksãalaa jùu klâj kàp talàat. thîinîi mii sathãanii tamruat. sathãanii tamruat jùu mâj klaj càak talàat.

tambonni mii rótfaj phaan. sathãanii rótfaj jùu klaj càak talàat.

hũanâa khõon tambon riak wâa kamnan. kháw chýy naaj prasít kènnaan. naaj prasít pen chaawnaa mýankan. chaaw baançàak kýap thúk khon pen chaawnaa. bân kamnan prasít jùu fàn diaw kàp wát tè jùu klaj càak wát lé talàat. nâabân kháw pen khloon. lãnbân pen naa.

20.1 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC EPISODE

1. tambonníi chýy araj
2. tambonníi jùu naj phâak nǎj
3. tambonníi tâŋ jùu bon khloŋ rýy mēnám
4. araj pen sũunklaaŋ khŋŋ tambon níi
5. roonrian jùu thŋi nǎj
6. thŋi roonrian mi khruu kii khon. mi nákrían thâwràj
7. khruu maa càak thŋinǎj bân
8. fàŋ tronkan khâam kàp wát mi araj bân
9. thŋi tambonníi mi roonphajaabaan máj
10. thŋi tambonníi mi sathǎanii tamrùat máj . jùu thŋinǎj
11. tambonníi mi rótfaj phàn máj
12. hũanâa khŋŋ tambon ríak wâa araj
13. chaaw baançàak kyàp thúk khon thamŋaan araj
14. bân kamnam prasít jùu thŋinǎj
15. nâa bân khŋŋ kháw pen araj . lǎŋ bân pen araj

### Translation of the Basic Episode

This is Bangchak tambon.<sup>1</sup> This tambon is in a province in the central part. This tambon is located on a canal. The temple is the center of this tambon. The temple is on the bank of the canal. Beside the temple is the school. This school is a very small school. It has five teachers. One comes from Bangkok; the other four are natives of this province. At the school there are around one hundred and fifty pupils.

On the opposite bank from the temple are the market, shops, and the police station. The market is diagonally opposite the temple. Next to the market are various shops, such as a store, and a barber shop. There is no movie house, hotel, or post office in this tambon. There is no hospital either, but there is a public health center. At the center are two nurses. The center is near the market. There is a police station here. The police station is not far from the market.

The train passes through this tambon. The train station is far from the market.

---

<sup>1</sup>A tambon is a subdivision of an amphoe, which is a subdivision of a changwat. changwat, amphoe, and tambon may be translated roughly as province, district, and precinct.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

The head of the tambon is called the kamnan. He is Mr. Prasit Kengngan. Mr. Prasit is also a rice farmer. Almost all the residents of Bangchak are rice farmers. Kamnan Prasit's house is on the same side of the canal (lit. bank) as the temple, but is far from the temple and the market. In front of his house is the canal. Behind are rice fields.

### 20.2 EXERCISE

Student A takes the part of a resident of Bangchak (precinct). Student B takes the part of an American writer who has just come to Bangchak with the intention of writing a magazine article about it. He asks questions of one or more residents in order to get information of the following kind:

- a) People (how many there are, ages, how many children they have, etc.)
- b) Physical layout of the tambon (location of buildings, rice fields, the canal, etc.)
- c) Occupations of people.
- d) Daily habits (time of eating, going to bed, going to work, etc.)
- e) Weather
- f) Religion (if there is a wat, where it is, when people go to it).
- g) Market (where it is located, when it is open, who goes there, etc.)
- h) Language (which dialect of Thai is spoken in the tambon, in the school, etc.)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- i) Health Facilities (where does one go when he is sick, if there is a clinic, how many doctors and nurses does it have, etc.)
- j) Travel experience of people (have they been outside the tambon, to Bangkok, to some other place, etc.)
- k) Any other information that may be of interest

Students should take turns carrying out each of the roles in the interview. Students not participating should be taking notes on the conversation. After each interview students not taking part in it may question other students about information contained in it.

### 20.3 VOCABULARY

|                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| amphəə (amphəə) | district, a subdivision of a changwat        |
| baancaak        | Bangchak, name of tambon in Thailand         |
| chên            | such as                                      |
| fàŋ             | bank (of a river, street)                    |
| hèn             | classifier for places                        |
| hŭanâa (khon)   | the chief, head (of an organization)         |
| kamnan (khon)   | kamnan, the chief of the tambon              |
| kènŋaan         | Kengngan (last name)                         |
| kô              | then, also, too, consequently                |
| kyàp            | almost                                       |
| khyy            | to be (in written language or formal speech) |
| khloŋ (khloŋ)   | canal  |
| mĕEnám (sǎaj)   | river  |
| naa (râj)       | rice field                                   |
| naaj (khon)     | Mr. (title)                                  |
| prasit          | Prasit (male first name)                     |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                 |                                    |
|-----------------|------------------------------------|
| phàan           | to pass                            |
| raaw/raawraaw   | around, approximately              |
| rim             | bank, edge                         |
| sùksǎalaa (hèn) | public health center or clinic     |
| sǔunklaan (hèn) | center                             |
| tambon (tambon) | precinct, subdivision of an amphoe |
| tâŋ             | to be located                      |
| tronkan khâam   | opposite                           |

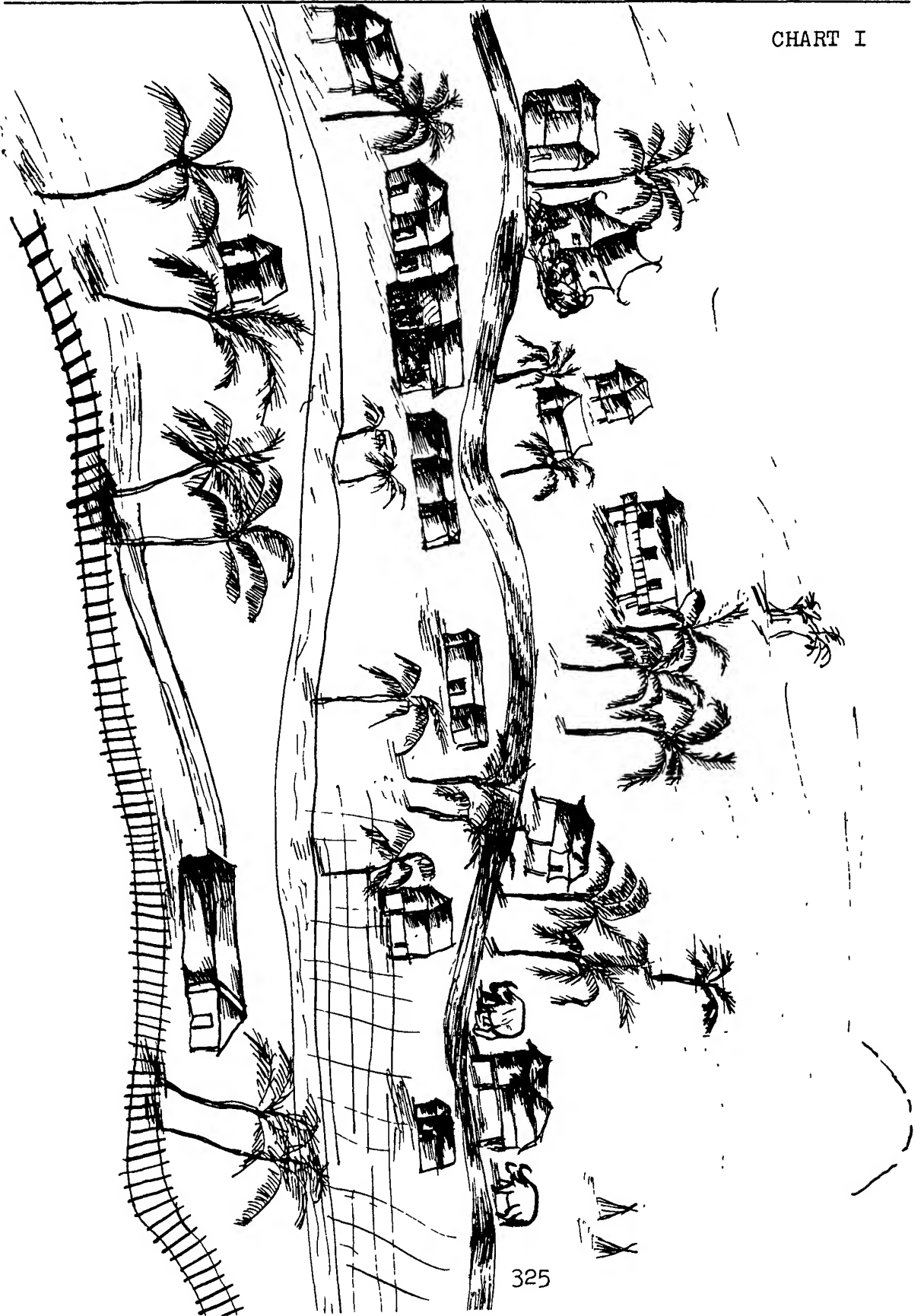
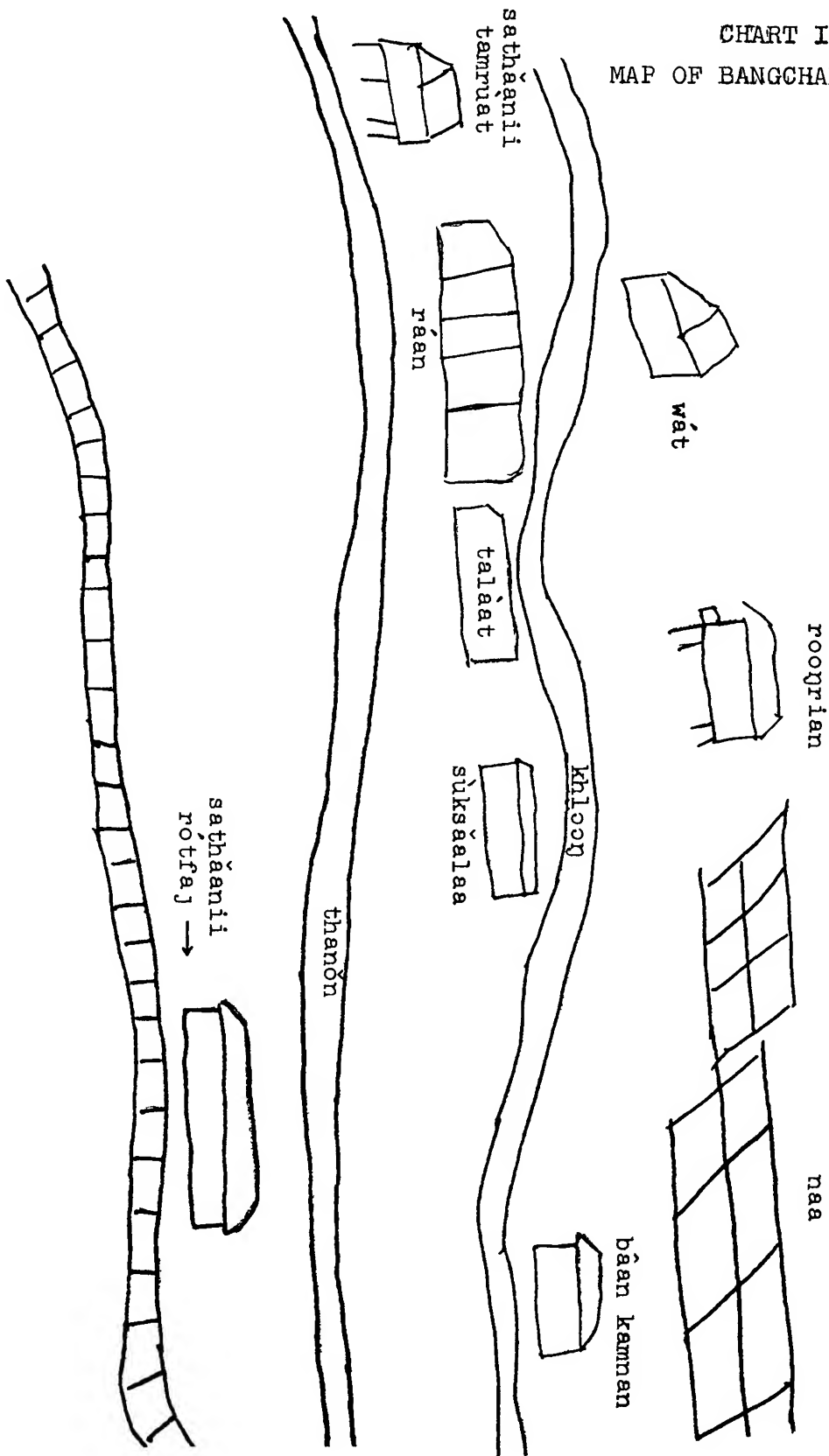


CHART II  
MAP OF BANGCHAK TAMBON



# THAI BASIC COURSE

## COMPREHENSIVE GLOSSARY

For Volumes I and II

This glossary contains all of the words that have been used in this volume, a total of approximately 1400 entries. It gives the following information about each entry:

(1) A phonemic transcription using Roman letters with some special symbols added, and (2) English definitions or equivalents.

The entries are arranged in the order of the English alphabet except that all words beginning with vowels are placed at the beginning of the glossary in the following order:

a, e, ε, ə, i, o, ɔ, u, and y.

Noun and Verb Compounds that occur in the text are listed after the head of the compound, thus

hǔa (hǔa) .... head

hǔakhâm .... early evening (6 to 9 p.m.)

### a

|                    |                                  |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| aacaan (khon)      | college or university teacher    |
| aachîp             | profession                       |
| áafarikaa (thawîp) | Africa (continent)               |
| aahǎan (jàan, mýy) | food                             |
| aahǎan klaanwan    | lunch, noontime meal             |
| aajú               | age (in years)                   |
| aakàat             | weather, air                     |
| àan                | to read                          |
| aarii              | Aree (male or female first name) |
| aa sii ee          | R.C.A.                           |
| aathít             | week                             |
| âaw                | oh! (excl. of surprise, dismay)  |
| aj bèk (bòrisàt)   | I.B.E.C. (name of a company)     |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| ajpaanaa          | Ipana  |
| ajútthajaa        | Ayuthaya (city in Central Thailand)  |
| ameerikaa         | America  |
| ameerikan         | American   |
| ammarin           | Amarin (name of a hotel in Bangkok)  |
| amphəə (amphəə)   | district, a subdivision of a changwat  |
| amphoon           | Amphorn (male or female first name)  |
| an                | classifier for inanimate objects. Careless speakers often use <u>an</u> as a substitute for other classifiers. |
| anujâat ... (hâj) | to permit  |
| anúrôot           | Anuroj (male first name)   |
| anúsăawarii (hèŋ) | monument   |
| aŋkrít            | England, English   |
| aŋrii duraŋ       | Henri Durant. (name of a street in Bangkok)  |
| apháatmên (lăŋ)   | apartment  |
| araj              | what (question word)   |
| àt                | to tape, to copy   |
| athíbaaj          | to explain   |
| aw                | to get, to take; to want (to have) cf. <u>tônkaan</u>  |
| aw máj            | will you accept? (question word. It is similar in usage to <u>dii máj</u> .)                                   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| ee-aj-dii      | A.I.D. (Agency for International Development)  |
| ee-juu-ee      | A.U.A. (American University Association)   |
| eeŋ            | by himself, herself, themselves, etc., without outside help of influence                                   |
| tua phǒm eeŋ   | I (myself)   |
| ... kháw eeŋ   | he (himself)   |
| ... raw eeŋ    | we (ourselves), more emphatic than 'tua' alone   |
| eeŋ            | is used to emphasize the shortness shortness of the distance in <u>klâj khêenfi eeŋ</u> 'right near here'. |
| eerawan        | Erawan (name of hotel)   |
| eesia (thawîp) | Asia   |
| eethén         | Athens   |
| éf-és-aj       | F.S.I. (Foreign Service Institute)   |

### ɛ

|                         |                                 |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| ɛɛ fráans               | Air France (name of an airline) |
| éepên (lûuk, phǒn, baj) | apple                           |
| éesphajrin (mét)        | aspirin                         |

### ə

|    |            |
|----|------------|
| əə | by the way |
|----|------------|

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## 1

|                       |                                       |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| ìik                   | in addition, more                     |
| ìik thii              | again, one more time                  |
| imphiirîan            | Imperial (name of a hotel in Bangkok) |
| india (prathêet)      | India, Indian                         |
| indianâa (rát)        | Indiana                               |
| indoniisia (prathêet) | Indonesia, Indonesian                 |
| isăan (phâak)         | northeast (in Thailand)               |
| italîan               | Italian ( <u>italîi</u> 'Italy')      |
| ìtsalaam              | Moslem                                |

## ๐

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| ookàat (khrán) | chance, occasion                          |
| okinaawaa (kò) | Okinawa                                   |
| ๐๓             | classifier for Buddha images, King, Queen |

## ๑

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| ๑๐           | Oh, yes! (suddenly remembering something)              |
| ๑๑           | Oh! (I see, I get it.)                                 |
| ๑๒k (nən)    | to put up the money for, to pay for, to stand good for |
| ๑๒k maa      | to come out  |
| ... paj      | to go out  |
| ๑๒k siăn     | to pronounce, to voice                                 |
| (khít) } ๑๒k | (to figure) out (a completive verb)                    |
| (nýk) }      |  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                         |                                      |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| òon                     | light (color)                        |
| òorianten               | Oriental, name of a hotel in Bangkok |
| óosatreeelia (prathêet) | Australia, Australian                |

### u

|           |  |
|-----------|--|
| ûan       | (to be) fat, stout                               |
| ubon      | Ubon (female first name)                         |
| ubon      | Ubon (city in Northeast Thailand)                |
| udoon     | Udon (city in Northeast Thailand)                |
| ùtnǔn     | to support, assist (financially)<br>to patronize |
| ùttaradìt | Uttaradit (city in North Thailand)               |

### y

|           |                           |
|-----------|---------------------------|
| ỳyn ỳyn | other, others, other ones |
|-----------|---------------------------|

### b

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| bàaj           | afternoon, o'clock (used for the time 1 p.m. - 4 p.m.)            |
| baan           | classifier for <u>door</u>  |
| bâan (lǎn)     | house, home   |
| bâanchâw (lǎn) | a house to rent   |
| bâanmáaj (lǎn) | a wooden house  |
| bâantỳk (lǎn)  | a stucco home, brick house (building)                             |
| baan           | (to be) thin  |
| bâan, mân      | some (out of a number), somewhat, in part, partly, to some extent |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| baan̄caak       | Bangchak, (name of tambon in Thailand)                    |
| baan̄kapì       | Bangkapì (section of Bangkok)                             |
| baan̄puu        | Bangpu (name of a tambon)                                 |
| bàat            | 'baht' (Thai unit of currency)                            |
| baj             | classifier for 'picture', etc.                            |
| baj la hâa      | 5 baht bank note  |
| bajmáaj         | leaf  |
| baw             | (to be) light (in weight)                                 |
| bèεp            | model, type, style  |
| bé̄njôj         | small bill (change)                                       |
| bəə (bəə)       | number (for rooms, telephone, clothing size, etc.)        |
| bèək            | to withdraw (money), to requisition (as from a storeroom) |
| bèək nən        | to get money (from the bank)                              |
| bin             | to fly  |
| bin             | Bill (name)   |
| bòk             | land (as opposed to sea)                                  |
| bon             | above, on top of  |
| boolîŋ          | bowling   |
| bóssatân        | Boston  |
| bòt (bòt)       | lesson (in a textbook)                                    |
| bòək            | to tell   |
| bóorisàt        | company   |
| bóorisàt námman | Oil company   |
| bóoriween       | compound, area, grounds (around a building), vicinity     |
| braaw(n)        | Brown (name)  |
| burìi (muan)    | cigarette   |
| bùt (khon)      | child (elegant usage) (one's direct descendant)           |
| bÿa             | (to be) bored   |

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

## c

|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| ca                | will, shall (future particle)  |
| càaj (nən)        | to pay refers to the actual expenditure of funds on a specific occasion) |
| càak              | from   |
| càkkrajaan (khan) | a bicycle  |
| cam... dâj        | to remember  |
| camnuan           | amount   |
| caŋ               | extremely, a great deal  |
| caŋwàt            | province   |
| carəen kruŋ       | Charoen Krung (name of a street in Bangkok)                              |
| cátsamèək         | JUSMAG (Joint Military Assistance Group)                                 |
| câw (oŋ)          | ruler (literally 'prince')   |
| câwkhǎoŋ (khon)   | owner  |
| câwnâathîi (khon) | official, officer, staff member, the man in charge                       |
| câwbàaw (khon)    | bridegroom   |
| câwsǎaw (khon)    | bride  |
| cennîi            | Jenny (name)   |
| cèt               | seven  |
| cəə               | to meet with unexpectedly  |
| ciin (prathêet)   | China, Chinese   |
| cim               | Jim (name)   |
| ciŋ ná            | That's true.   |
| con               | (to be) poor (in wealth)   |
| coo               | Joe  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| còp              | to complete a task (often of prescribed duration, such as a course of study) |
| còtmǎaj (chabàp) | letter (to mail)   |
| cóoc             | George (name)  |
| cɔɔn             | John (name)  |
| còot             | to park  |
| culaa            | Chula (abbreviation for Chulalonghorn University)                            |

### ch

|                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| cháa                    | (to be) late, slow   |
| chaaJ (hèn)             | edge, rim, border  |
| chaaJthalee (hèn)       | the beach  |
| chaam salàt (baj, lûuk) | salad bowl   |
| chaan (chaan)           | patio, porch without a roof  |
| châan-                  | a person who has skill in some craft or trade. (It is the head noun in many noun compounds.) |
| châat (châat)           | nationality, nation, race  |
| chaaw (khon)            | resident, native   |
| chaawnaa (khon)         | rice farmer  |
| chaawrâj (khon)         | a crop farmer  |
| chaawsǎan (khon)        | gardener, orchardist   |
| cháaw                   | morning, a.m.  |
| cháawmÿyt               | early morning  |
| chabàp                  | classifier for letter or newspaper   |
| châj                    | to be so, to be it, be the one (meant, intended)   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| châj máj          | Isn't it so? Isn't it the one?   |
| cháj              | to use (to do something), be used for, to spend (money), to use up, require, take (an amount of time, effort, people, etc.)  |
| chalĭaŋ (chalĭaŋ) | terrace, balcony, porch  |
| chán              | I, me. (Man speaking to persons of inferior status. Women use it more often with persons of inferior social status, to strangers, acquaintances, friends and intimates.) |
| chán              | class, rank, grade, floor (in a building), story   |
| chánbon           | upstairs   |
| chándiaw          | one story  |
| chánkhrÿŋ         | one and a half story   |
| chánlâaŋ          | downstairs   |
| chanít            | kind, type (emphasis on type)  |
| chát              | plain(ly), clear(ly), distinct(ly)   |
| châw              | to rent  |
| chên              | such as  |
| chæaŋ             | please, go ahead and...  |
| chianmàj          | Chiangmai (city in North Thailand)   |
| chiaw             | really, very, indeed (When it occurs after a quantitative expression, it indicates that the speaker thinks the quantity referred to is larger than he expected.)         |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| chîawchaan            | (to be) expert, experienced   |
| chíkhaakôo            | Chicago   |
| chín                  | piece (of anything whole),<br>hence classifier for piece<br>of clothing, furniture, bread<br>meat, bones, work (a specific<br>task), etc.                                     |
| chom                  | to look at, to admire, look at<br>with pleasure, to praise  |
| chomphûu              | rose apple  |
| chótchóoj             | Chotchoi (Thai female first name)   |
| chôo                  | bunch, classifier of fruit in<br>a bunch  |
| chôop                 | to like, be fond of   |
| chûaj                 | please (do something); help   |
| chûammon              | hour (60 minutes)   |
| chuan                 | to invite, urge, persuade<br>someone to do something  |
| chút                  | classifier for suit (e.g. of<br>clothing), suite (of furniture),<br>set (e.g. of ornaments, glass-<br>ware, books), for a committee,<br>cabinet (of ministers, for a<br>team) |
| chútrápkhèek (chút)   | living room furniture   |
| chútthaankhâaw (chút) | a dining set  |
| chýak                 | rope, cord, classifier for<br>'elephant'  |
| chýy                  | name, to be named   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| dâam           | classifier for 'pen', etc.  |
| dâj            | can, could, be able   |
| dâj            | to get, obtain, procure   |
| (hǎa) dâj      | to get (it indicates that the speaker was able to get the things he was looking for.) |
| dâjjin         | to hear   |
| (sǐi) dam      | black (color)   |
| daŋ            | loud  |
| deewít         | David   |
| dèk (khon)     | child (immature person)   |
| denwêe         | Denver  |
| (sǐi) dɛɛŋ     | (to be) red (color)   |
| dəən           | to walk   |
| dəənthaaŋ      | to travel   |
| dichǎn, dichán | I (female speaker)  |
| dii            | (to be) good  |
| diicaŋ         | (to be) glad  |
| diaw           | one only, only  |
| dǐawníi        | right now   |
| dǐaw           | soon  |
| dǐaw           | or else, otherwise  |
| diin ras(k)    | Dean Rusk   |
| diisaj thaj    | Design Thai (name of a dress shop)  |
| dík            | Dick (name)   |
| dinsǎo (thêŋ)  | pencil  |
| dontrii        | music   |
| dooj           | by (means of transportation)  |
| doojtron       | directly  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| dóktêe (khon)   | doctor (Ph.D.)  |
| dóktêe wés      | Dr. West  |
| dòokmáaj (dòok) | flower  |
| doolâa          | dollar  |
| doon myan       | Don Muang (the name of the main<br>commercial airport<br>in Bangkok)                  |
| duu naan        | to observe the operation (e.g.<br>of a system), observe (some-<br>thing) in operation |
| dúaj            | also, too, as well  |
| duu             | to look at  |
| dyan            | month   |
| dỳk             | late at night (11 p.m. - 3 a.m.)  |
| dỳym            | to drink  |

### f

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| fǎa (fǎa)     | wall  |
| fáa (sǐi fáa) | sky (sky blue)  |
| fàak          | to deposit; to ask a person<br>to carry on some business<br>for you                 |
| fàak nən      | to deposit money (in the bank)  |
| faj (fáa)     | electric light, electricity   |
| faŋ (sǐi)     | tooth   |
| faŋ           | to listen   |
| fàŋ           | bank (of a river), side (of<br>the street)  |
| faràŋ (khon)  | white-skinned people, including<br>Europeans, Australians, white<br>Americans, etc. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                      |                             |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| farànsèet (prathêet) | France, French              |
| fæen (khon)          | girl or boy friend          |
| filíppin (prathêet)  | Philippines, Philippine     |
| fǎi myy              | manual skill, craftsmanship |
| floridâa (rát)       | Florida                     |
| fòot                 | a Ford (brand name)         |
| frét                 | Fred (name)                 |
| frii                 | to be free (no cost)        |
| fút                  | foot, English system        |

### h

|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| hâ and há         | They replace the polite female particles <u>khâ</u> and <u>khá</u> respectively in informal use. |
| há?               | It replaces the male polite particle <u>kháp</u> in informal use.                                |
| hǎa               | (to go) to see, visit, to look for, seek   |
| hǎa { phóp<br>cæe | to meet with (indicates that the search resulted in meeting with persons or things)              |
| hâa               | five   |
| hǎaj (paj)        | to disappear, vanish, to be missing, be lost from sight  |
| hàan              | to be far apart, to be separate, to be distant   |
| haawaaj (kò)      | Hawaii   |
| hâj               | for the benefit or in place of someone else  |
| hâj jyym          | to let someone borrow, to lend   |
| hanlǎo            | Hello.   |
| (fỳk)hàt          | to practice, drill, train  |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| hě̃n                 | to see, perceive  |
| hě̃n ca              | to think  |
| hě̃n                 | classifier for places   |
| hòk                  | six   |
| hók cèt              | 6 or 7  |
| hòk-sìp              | sixty   |
| hooten               | hotel   |
| hòt                  | to shrink   |
| hòo                  | carton, classifier for packages<br>or things wrapped in paper |
| hǒom                 | to smell sweet  |
| hôn̄ (hôn̄)          | room  |
| hôn̄naahǎan (hôn̄)   | dining room, dining hall                                      |
| hôn̄kèpkhǎon̄ (hôn̄) | storage, space, storage room                                  |
| hôn̄khrua (hôn̄)     | kitchen   |
| hôn̄lè̃ep (hôn̄)     | laboratory (English loan 'lab')                               |
| hôn̄náam             | bathroom  |
| hôn̄prachum (hôn̄)   | auditorium  |
| hôn̄rápkhè̃ek (hôn̄) | reception room, living room                                   |
| hôn̄rian (hôn̄)      | classroom   |
| hôn̄samùt (hôn̄)     | library   |
| hôn̄thabian (hôn̄)   | registrar's (office)  |
| hôn̄thamnaan (hôn̄)  | work room   |
| hôn̄thoorasàp (hôn̄) | telephone room  |
| hôn̄kon̄             | Hong Kong   |
| hǔa (hǔa)            | head  |
| hǔakhâm              | early evening (6 p.m. - 9 p.m.)                               |
| hǔanâa (khon)        | the chief, head (of an organiza-<br>tion)                     |
| hǔalamphoon̄         | Hualampong (name of the main<br>train station in Bangkok)     |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### ↓

|  |  |
|--|--|
| jaa (jàaŋ)                             | medicine, chemical compound                                  |
| jaa hǒm                                | nice-smelling inhalants                                      |
| jaasǐifan                              | toothpaste   |
| jàa                                    | don't (negative request form)                                |
| jâa                                    | grass  |
| jáaj { <sup>maa</sup><br>pa.j} (+ jùu) | to move (in)   |
| jâak                                   | (to be) difficult  |
| jàak hâj                               | to want to, would like to                                    |
| jàaŋ                                   | kind, type (with emphasis on quality); classifier for things |
| jàaŋdii                                | good quality   |
| jàaŋ mâak                              | at most  |
| jàaŋ nǒj                               | at least   |
| jâat (khon)                            | relative(s)  |
| jàj                                    | (to be) large, big, major, main                              |
| jalaa                                  | Yala (city in South Thailand)                                |
| jaŋ                                    | still, not yet   |
| jaŋraj, jaŋraj, ɲaj                    | how (question word)  |
| jaŋnán, jàaŋnán                        | so   |
| jáp                                    | to wrinkle   |
| jeel                                   | Yale (University)  |
| jen                                    | evening (used for 4 p.m. - 6 p.m.)                           |
| jé, jéjé                               | (to be) a whole lot, a great deal, plenty; plentifully       |
| jêe                                    | (to be) terrible, to be in a bad way                         |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| jæeraman (prathêet) | Germany, German                                   |
| jîam                | to go to see, to visit                            |
| jîihôo              | brand or trade name                               |
| jîipùn (prathêet)   | Japan, Japanese                                   |
| jîi-sìp             | twenty  |
| jindii              | (to be) glad                                      |
| -jon                | ending of the months that have<br>30 days         |
| jóom (phâa)         | to dye (cloth)                                    |
| juan                | Vietnam, Vietnamese                               |
| júròop (thawîp)     | Europe  |
| jùt                 | to stop   |
| jùt phá'k           | to take a break                                   |
| jùu                 | to live, stay, to be located at                   |
| juusít              | U.S.I.S. (United States Informa-<br>tion Service) |
| juusôm              | U.S.O.M. (United States Opera-<br>tions Mission)  |
| jýan kàp            | (to be) diagonally across (from)                  |
| jyyn                | to stand  |

### k

|              |                                  |
|--------------|----------------------------------|
| kà           | to guess, estimate               |
| kaafæ        | coffee                           |
| kaan         | work, affairs                    |
| kaanbanjaa'j | lecturing, narration             |
| kaan lýak    | choice, selection (as an action) |
| kaanprachum  | a meeting conference, session    |
| kâan         | classifier for matches           |
| kaandaa      | Kanda (female first name)        |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| kaan̄keən̄ (tua)  | trousers, pants  |
| kâaw              | nine   |
| kâw-sìp           | ninety   |
| kâw-sìp `èt       | ninety one   |
| kamlan̄           | aspect particle indicating<br>action in process  |
| kamlan̄ phoođii   | just right   |
| kamnan (khon)     | kamnan, the chief of the tambon  |
| kamphuu           | Kambhu (Thai family name)  |
| kan               | together (particle indicating<br>mutuality or reciprocity)                                   |
| kanjaa (jon)      | September  |
| kàp, ka-          | with   |
| kàpkhâaw          | food, something to eat with rice   |
| kaproon̄          | woman's skirt  |
| karákkadaa (khom) | July   |
| karunaa           | please, kindly   |
| kasètsàat         | agriculture, also the name of<br>the university of agriculture<br>in Bangkok                 |
| kàw               | (to be) old (of non living things),<br>former (of living and non-<br>living things)          |
| kâwfi (tua)       | chair  |
| kawlŷi (prathêet) | Korea, Korean  |
| keem (keem)       | game (sports)  |
| kèn̄              | (to be) expert, skillful (at<br>doing something)   |
| kèn̄naan          | Kengngan (last name)   |
| kεε               | he, she, they (in the third<br>person) for children, inti-<br>mates, persons of equal status |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| kêe                | to fix, correct (something)   |
| kèe                | dark (color)  |
| kèe                | to, for   |
| kéepitôn           | The Capitol (name of a hotel<br>in Bangkok)   |
| kèsalàk            | to carve or chisel (as wood)  |
| kəən               | too much  |
| kəən paj           | too..., in excess   |
| kìaw kàp           | about, concerning   |
| kìi                | how many, (question word)   |
| kiilaa             | Sport(s), athletics   |
| kiloo              | kilometer   |
| kiloo(kram)        | kilogram (metric system)  |
| kiloo(méet)        | kilometer (metric system)   |
| kin                | to eat or drink something<br>(common usage)   |
| klaaŋ              | central, middle, neutral  |
| klaaŋkàw klaaŋmàj  | not old but not new   |
| klaaŋkhyyn         | night time (used for 7 p.m. -<br>3 a.m.)  |
| klaaŋwan           | in the daytime, by day  |
| klaj               | (to be) far   |
| klâj               | (to be) near, close   |
| klàk               | small case or box, classifier<br>for things in such containers<br>hence, box of matches, etc. |
| klàp... (paj/maa)  | to go back (return), to come<br>back  |
| klètthoon          | Gold Flake (name of cigarettes)   |
| klòn               | a small carton or plastic box   |
| klîŋthaajrûup (an) | camera  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| klua                | to be afraid of  |
| klûaj (lûuk)        | banana   |
| koŋsǔn (khon)       | the Consul   |
| kô                  | then, also, too, consequently<br>(connective particle)   |
| kô rŷaj rŷaj        | so so  |
| kô lésw kan         | used in affirmative sentences<br>to indicate preference for a<br>particular course of action<br>and to urge another to agree<br>to it.   |
| kóof                | golf   |
| kôn                 | bump, cube, bar (classifier for<br>bumpy objects, e.g. rocks,<br>lumps of clay or sugar, cubes<br>of sugar, chunks or hunks of<br>coal or charcoal, bricks,<br>broken bricks, cake of soap,<br>clouds, and figuratively,<br>sums of money) |
| kôn                 | before, first; used to emphasize<br>the fact that the action is to<br>be of very short duration  |
| koŋ                 | division (subdivision of a <u>krom</u> )   |
| koŋtháp             | the armed forces (of a country)  |
| koŋtháp aakàat      | the Air Forces   |
| koŋtháp bòk         | the Army   |
| koŋtháp rya         | the Navy   |
| kracòk (baan, phèn) | glass  |
| kradaan             | board  |
| kradaandam (phèn)   | blackboard   |
| kradaat (phèn)      | paper  |
| kradaj              | stairs, steps  |
| kram                | gram (metric system)   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| krápǎw (baj)                | suitcase, bag, purse                         |
| krasuaŋ (krasuaŋ)           | ministry (division of the government)        |
| krasuaŋ (kaan)tàaŋ prathêet | State Department, Foreign Ministry           |
| krasuaŋ kalaahǒm            | Ministry of Defense                          |
| krasuaŋ mahàatthaj          | Ministry of the Interior                     |
| kratàaj (tua)               | rabbit                                       |
| kratìknàm (baj)             | thermos bottle                               |
| krítìsàkàràat               | Christian Era (A.D.)                         |
| krom                        | department (major subdivision of a ministry) |
| krom tamrùat                | police department                            |
| kromathâa                   | navy blue, dark blue                         |
| kruij (kruij)               | city (used to refer to some capital cities)  |
| kruijthêep                  | Bangkok                                      |
| kumphaa(phan)               | February                                     |
| kwàa                        | more than, to a greater extent or degree     |
| kwâaŋ                       | (to be) broad, wide                          |
| kwâaŋ khwǎaŋ                | (to be) wide, to be large, to be roomy       |
| kyàp                        | almost                                       |

### kh

|      |   |
|------|---|
| khâ  | polite particle, <u>statement</u> by a female |
| khá  | polite particle, <u>question</u> by a female  |
| khâa | servant (as in khâarâatchakaan)               |
| khâa | fee, cost, price, value                       |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| khâacâaŋ                          | wage, wages, pay                                  |
| khâachâw                          | the rent  |
| khâadoojsaan                      | fare  |
| khâajùu                           | lodging   |
| khâakéēs                          | gas bill  |
| khâalâwrian                       | tuition   |
| khâarót                           | carfare   |
| khâatittâŋ                        | installation fee                                  |
| khâarâatchakaan (khon)            | government employee                               |
| khâarâatchakaan phonlaryan (khon) | civilian government employee                      |
| khâarâatchakaan thaahăan (khon)   | military government employee                      |
| kháa                              | to trade, engage in trade                         |
| khăaj                             | to sell   |
| khâam                             | to cross, across                                  |
| khâaŋ                             | next to (something or someone),<br>side           |
| khâaŋbon                          | up above  |
| khâaŋlâaŋ                         | down below  |
| khâaŋlăŋ                          | the back, behind                                  |
| khâaŋnâa                          | ahead, in front                                   |
| khâaŋnaŋ                          | inside  |
| khâaŋnôok                         | outside   |
| khàat (tèē)                       | to be lacking, missing shortage<br>of, short (of) |
| khàat tua                         | no bargaining                                     |
| khâaw                             | rice  |
| khăaw                             | white   |
| (pen) khâj                        | (to have) (a) fever                               |
| (pen) khâjwàt                     | (to have) flu                                     |
| kham                              | word  |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| khambanjaaJ (khôo) | lecture   |
| khamthăam (khôo)   | question  |
| khamtòop (khôo)    | the answer  |
| khâm               | evening   |
| khaměen (prathêet) | Cambodia, Cambodian   |
| khamooj (khon)     | thief, robber   |
| khạn               | classifier for cars, and other vehicles   |
| khănngən (baj)     | silver bowl   |
| •khanàat           | size  |
| khanáthfi          | while   |
| khàp rôt           | to drive a car  |
| khanεen (khanεen)  | grade, score point(s)   |
| khâw               | to begin (to work, to learn), enter   |
| khâwcaj            | to understand   |
| khâw hûn           | to team up, to go into partnership  |
| khăw, kháw         | he, she; they (third person, singular and plural). It does <u>not</u> refer to things |
| khèek (khon)       | dark-skinned people, Moslems and Hindus in particular                                 |
| khelifoonia        | California  |
| khěŋ               | (to be) hard, firm, strong, stiff   |
| khêep              | (to be) narrow  |
| khəəj              | to have ever (done something), to be used to (be something, etc.)                     |
| khǎen              | to lacquer  |
| khǎan              | to write  |
| khǎaw              | green (in color)  |
| khǎaw òon          | light green   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| khiiinóot          | keynote (name)   |
| khít               | to strike, scratch                                       |
| khít               | to figure or reckon, to think                            |
| khít jaŋŋaj        | how is it figured (what is included in the calculations) |
| khít òok           | to figure out  |
| khêε { níi         | up to (such and such a point)                            |
| { nán              | that near (far), to that extent                          |
| khloɔŋ (khloɔŋ)    | canal  |
| khloɔŋ tæej        | Klong Toei (Section of Bangkok)                          |
| -khom              | ending of months that have 31 days                       |
| khon (khon)        | people, also classifier for humans                       |
| khoncháj (khon)    | servant  |
| khonkhâj (khon)    | patients   |
| khonkhàprót (khon) | chauffeur, driver  |
| khonklaan (khon)   | the middle one (of children)                             |
| khonlék (khon)     | the youngest one (of children)                           |
| khonnaaj (khon)    | insider  |
| khonnôok (khon)    | outsider or layman                                       |
| khonsùtthóŋ (khon) | the youngest one (of children)                           |
| khon too (khon)    | the oldest one (of children)                             |
| khon (ca)          | probably   |
| khoolooradôo (rát) | Colorado   |
| khôj               | softly, low (of sound)                                   |
| khǎo               | to request, ask  |
| khǎo jyum/jyum     | to borrow  |
| khǎothôot          | excuse me  |
| khooj              | to wait  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| khoołkèet                  | Colgate (trade name)  |
| khǎnkèen                   | Khonkaen (city in Northeastern Thailand)  |
| khǎn                       | thing, object; of, belonging to   |
| khǎncháj (jàan, an, chíin) | something useful, utensils, things for use  |
| khǎn hâj lýak              | selections (of merchandise, things, etc.)   |
| khǎnkhwǎn (jàan)           | present, gift   |
| khǎnłên (jàan)             | toys  |
| khǎnkèsalàk (jàan)         | carvings  |
| (khǎn) naj (jàan)          | is used to refer to products made in Thailand or in country                       |
| (khǎn)nǎok (jàan)          | is used to refer to any product made outside of Thailand or country               |
| khǎnpcaj                   | thank you (superior to inferior)  |
| khǎnpkhun                  | Thank you.  |
| khoo sǎo                   | A.D.  |
| khraaw                     | time(s) (occasion)  |
| khraj                      | who, what (in some constructions)   |
| khraán                     | time(s) (occasion) classifier for time  |
| khraáp, há?, khaáp         | polite particle, used in statements and questions by males                        |
| khraítàkàràat (khoo sǎo)   | Christian Era   |
| khraítamâat                | Christmas   |
| khraítatian                | Christian (name of a hospital)  |
| khroonkaan                 | project   |
| khroáp                     | to be complete (in quantity) to include all the members of a limited set of items |
| khraápkhrua (khraápkhrua)  | the family  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| khruu (khon)                 | teacher                                    |
| khry̆an                      | engine; -ware                              |
| khry̆anbin (khry̆an)         | airplane                                   |
| khry̆anàtthéep (an)          | tape recorder                              |
| khry̆an (cák) (an)           | machine                                    |
| khry̆anfajfáa (khry̆an)      | electrical equipment                       |
| khry̆anchájfajfáa (khry̆an)  | electrical                                 |
| khry̆anjon (khry̆an)         | engine                                     |
| khry̆an khǎen                | lacquerware                                |
| khry̆an khrua (khry̆an)      | kitchen utensils                           |
| khry̆an myy (khry̆an)        | tool                                       |
| khry̆an nen                  | silverware                                 |
| khry̆an pèetkrápǎon (an)     | an electric can opener                     |
| khry̆an phét khry̆an thǎon   | jewelry                                    |
| khry̆an pràpaakàat (khry̆an) | air conditioning                           |
| khry̆an ryan (chút)          | furniture                                  |
| khry̆an sákphâa (khry̆an)    | washing machine                            |
| khry̆an thǎm                 | nielloware                                 |
| khry̆an thǎon sǎmrít         | bronzeware                                 |
| khry̆an thǎon                | things of gold                             |
| khry̆an tiikhàj (khry̆an)    | an electric (egg) beater                   |
| khry̆an                      | half                                       |
| khry̆an lǎa                  | half yard                                  |
| khuan ca                     | should                                     |
| khùap                        | year (of age for people under<br>14 years) |
| khuj                         | to converse                                |
| khun                         | you (singular only) polite form            |
| khun                         | Mr., Mrs., Miss (a polite title)           |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| khun phôo       | parents (polite usage)                       |
| khun mĕe (khon) |  |
| khŭu            | pair   |
| khwaamciŋ       | truthfully, actually                         |
| khwaamhĕn       | opinion                                      |
| khwaamkhíthĕn   | opinion                                      |
| kwâaŋ           | (to be) wide, to be broad                    |
| khÿn            | (to go) up                                   |
| khÿn nĕn        | to cash a check                              |
| khyy            | to be (in written language or formal speech) |
| khyyŋ           | night  |
| khyyŋfĭ         | tonight                                      |

### 1

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| la                    | question word                                |
| la, lá                | per, a, the                                  |
| laa                   | to say goodbye (said only by person leaving) |
| lăa                   | yard (36 <sup>m</sup> )                      |
| lăakhrÿŋ              | one and one half yards                       |
| lăaj                  | many, several                                |
| lăan                  | million                                      |
| laaŋsàat (lŭuk, phŏn) | bangsa (small fruit)                         |
| laaw (prathĕet)       | Laos, Lao, Laotian                           |
| lăks                  | Lux (brand name)                             |
| lambàak               | (to be) hard, difficult, troublesome         |
| lăŋ                   | behind                                       |
| lăŋ                   | classifier for houses and buildings          |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| lâw (khùat)    | liquor, alcohol (bottle)  |
| làwníi         | these, this group   |
| làwnán         | those, that group   |
| lèek           | iron, steel   |
| lék            | (to be) small, little (in size)   |
| lékchêe (khôo) | lecture   |
| lêm            | classifier for 'book'   |
| lên            | to play (games, music, etc.)  |
| lé             | and   |
| leew           | to be bad, poor (in quality);<br>low (in character)                     |
| lèep (hôn)     | lab (English loan)  |
| léew           | and then (sentence connective)  |
| léew           | (used to indicate completed<br>action)                                  |
| léew rý jaŋ    | or not yet? (used in questions)   |
| léew lý jaŋ    |   |
| léew lé jaŋ    |   |
| léew ý jaŋ     |   |
| léew é jaŋ     |   |
| læej           | quite   |
| læej           | at all (after a negative); so,<br>then, consequently                    |
| lêek           | to be over, to end, to quit,<br>discontinue, to give up, to<br>break up |
| líjaŋ dèk      | to take care of children, to<br>raise children                          |
| lídôo          | Lido (name)   |
| líaw           | to turn   |
| líf            | elevator  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| lít                | liter (metric system)                                      |
| lon                | to (go) down   |
| lôok               | world  |
| lópburii           | Lopburi (city in Central<br>Thailand)                      |
| lót                | to reduce (the price), to<br>lower, discount               |
| lɔɔndɔɔn (krun)    | London   |
| lòɔt               | classifier for tube, tube of<br>toothpaste                 |
| lòɔt fajfáa (lòɔt) | light bulb   |
| lûanâa             | in advance   |
| lúk                | to get up  |
| lûuk (khon)        | child (common usage, refers to<br>one's direct descendant) |
| lûuk               | classifier for fruit                                       |
| lûuknóɔŋ (khon)    | subordinate (employee)                                     |
| lûukthóɔ (lûuk)    | peach (a Chinese loan word)                                |
| lûuksít (khon)     | student, pupil   |
| lǎkæen             | too..., so...  |
| lŷak               | to choose, pick out, select,<br>elect                      |
| lŷaktân            | to elect (as in a political<br>election)                   |
| lŷan               | (to be) yellow   |
| lyym               | to forget  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### m

|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| maa               | to come  |
| (paj)... maa      | to come from   |
| maa kòon          | previously   |
| maa léew          | ago  |
| maa thǎn          | to arrive (towards speaker)  |
| máa (tua)         | horse  |
| mǎa (tua)         | dog  |
| máaj (an, phèen)  | wood, stick  |
| máajkèsalak       | woodcarvings   |
| májkhít (faj)     | matches  |
| máaj sàk          | teak   |
| mâak              | (to be) much, many; a lot; very  |
| maalíkaa          | Malika (female first name)   |
| mahǎasàk          | Mahasak (last name)  |
| mahǎawítthajaalaj | university   |
| mai               | mile   |
| mǎj, máj          | question word  |
| màj               | again, new   |
| mâj               | no, not (a negative word)  |
| mâj châj          | It is not so. It is not the one (meant). (Negative response)                             |
| mâj dâj           | not, not as assumed to be  |
| mâj khôj (ca)     | scarcely, hardly, not quite, not very  |
| mâj wǎj           | can't do it, unable to, is incapable of (because of lack of physical strength of energy) |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| mák ca          | usually, likely to  |
| mâᅇ             | some, any (pronominal, another form of <u>bâᅇ</u> )                           |
| malajuu         | Malaya  |
| malakᅇᅇ (lûuk)  | papaya (fruit)  |
| malí            | Malee (Thai girl's name)  |
| mamûᅇᅇ (lûuk)   | mango (fruit)   |
| maᅇkhút (lûuk)  | mangosteen (fruit)  |
| maryynníi       | the day after tomorrow  |
| míchíkᅇᅇn (rát) | Michigan  |
| meesǎa(jon)     | April   |
| méet            | meter (metric system)   |
| mesachusèᅇ(rát) | Massachusetts   |
| mét             | seed, grain, pill; classifier for small round objects (pills, etc.)           |
| mêᅇ (khon)      | mother  |
| mêᅇbâᅇn (khon)  | housewife   |
| mêᅇkháa (khon)  | salesperson (female)  |
| mêᅇnám (sǎaj)   | river   |
| méᅇn            | Maen (male or female first name)  |
| mᅇeríi          | Mary (name)   |
| mii             | to have   |
| mii             | there is, are (existence)   |
| mii... jùu      | has, have, is, are in possession of, is are in existence, is, are to be found |
| miinaa(khom)    | March   |
| míssís          | Mrs.  |
| místᅇ           | Mr.   |
| mítchân         | Mission (name of a hospital in Bangkok)                                       |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| míthunaa(jon)                 | June  |
| mítraphâap                    | Friendship (name of a highway<br>in Thailand) |
| mít su                        | Mitsu (name of a restaurant)                  |
| mókkaraa(khom)                | January                                       |
| moon                          | o'clock, time                                 |
| m๓๐ (khon)                    | medical doctor                                |
| muan                          | classifier for cigarette, cigar               |
| mum (mum)                     | corner  |
| mún (lǎn)                     | mosquito net                                  |
| múnlûat (lǎn)                 | screen (for window, etc.)                     |
| m̂ya                          | used for past time                            |
| m̂yakíkiníi, m̂yakíi, m̂yakíi | a short time ago                              |
| m̂yawaanníi                   | yesterday                                     |
| m̂yaràj                       | when, question word                           |
| m̂yankan, m̂yankan            | too, also                                     |
| myan (myan)                   | city, country (nation)                        |
| myy (myy)                     | hand  |
| m̂yyn                         | ten thousand                                  |
| m̂yyt                         | (to be) dark                                  |

### n

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| na, ná    | particle used to make the<br>question sound less abrupt                                       |
| naa (râj) | rice field  |
| nâa kwâan | in front; face  |
| nâa       | width (for fabric)  |
| nâa khêep | narrow  |
| nâa       | worthy of, leading to, or -<br>able -(It combines with other<br>verbs to form verb compounds) |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| nâa-àan               | interesting to read                        |
| nâab̀ya               | (to be) dull                               |
| nâacháj               | (to be) nice to use                        |
| nâachâw               | (to be) nice to rent                       |
| nâaduu                | (to be) interesting to look at             |
| nâafaŋ                | (to be) interesting to listen to           |
| nâaj̀u                | (to be) cozy, livable                      |
| nâakhàp               | (to be) nice to drive                      |
| nâarák                | (to be) lovable, cute                      |
| nâasǒncaj             | (to be) interesting                        |
| nâasǒn                | (to be) nice to teach                      |
| nâasýy                | (to be) nice to buy                        |
| nâathan               | to look delicious                          |
| nâatàaŋ (nâatàaŋ)     | window                                     |
| nǎa                   | (to be) heavy (of material), heavy texture |
| naaj (khon)           | Mr. (title)                                |
| naajnâa (khon)        | agent                                      |
| naajók                | } (thân)                                   |
| naajók rátthamontri   |  |
| naalikaa (ryan)       | prime minister (official name)             |
| naamsakun             | watch, clock                               |
| naan                  | family name                                |
| naanaaphan            | (to be) long (in time)                     |
| naaŋ (khon)           | Nanaphan (name of a shop)                  |
| naaŋphajaabaan (khon) | female, Mrs.                               |
| naathii               | female nurse                               |
| nâathîi               | minute                                     |
| nǎaw                  | duty                                       |
| naj                   | (to be) cold                               |
|                       | in, inside                                 |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| (khǒŋ) naj           | is used to refer to products<br>made in Thailand or country |
| nǎj                  | which (one(s)) (determiner)                                 |
| nák-                 | one who - (agent noun) (never<br>alone)                     |
| nàk                  | (to be) heavy (in weigh); hard<br>(of work); severely, very |
| nák                  | so, so much   |
| nákkaanmyaŋ (khon)   | a politician  |
| nákphaasáa (khon)    | linguistic scientist, linguist                              |
| nákrian (khon)       | student, pupil  |
| nákrian kàw (khon)   | former student  |
| nákrian naj (khon)   | Thais educated in Thailand                                  |
| nákrian nǒk (khon)   | Thais who were educated abroad                              |
| náksýksǎa (khon)     | student   |
| nakhǒn râatchasimaa  | Korat (Nakorn rachasima) (city<br>in Northeastern Thailand) |
| nakhǒnsǐi thammarâat | Nakorn Sri Thammarat (city in<br>Southern Thailand)         |
| (sǐi) námŋen         | (to be) blue (in color)                                     |
| (sǐi) námtaan        | (to be) brown (in color), sugar                             |
| nân                  | that (one), there   |
| nán, nân             | that (determiner)   |
| nǎŋ (rýaŋ)           | movie (story)   |
| náŋsýy (lêm)         | a book  |
| náŋsýyphim (chabàp)  | newspaper   |
| nâŋ                  | to sit  |
| nénam                | to introduce, to advise, to<br>suggest.                     |
| khamnénam            | advice, suggestion, instruction                             |
| nîi                  | this (one), here  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| níi, nīi            | this (determiner)   |
| nít nòɔj            | a little  |
| nítsít (khon)       | student (at Chulalongkorn,<br>Kasetsart, and the Fine<br>Arts Universities) |
| niw delhi           | New Delhi   |
| níw                 | inch (English system)   |
| njuu jóok           | New York  |
| nók (tua)           | bird  |
| nókjuun (tua)       | peacock   |
| nókkêew (tua)       | parrot  |
| nonjaw              | Nongyaw (Thai female first name)  |
| nonlák              | Nonglak (female first name)   |
| nôn                 | over there  |
| nôn                 | that (one) over there, over<br>there (pronominal)                           |
| nóon, nôon          | the one over there (determiner)   |
| nòɔj                | maybe used to make a request<br>less abrupt                                 |
| nóɔj                | few   |
| nóɔj                | (to be) little, small, less,<br>slight (in quantity)                        |
| nôok                | outside, external   |
| (khǎon) nôok        | is used to refer to any product<br>made outside of Thailand                 |
| noon                | to sleep  |
| nǎon (tua)          | worm  |
| nóon (khon)         | younger brothers and/or sisters   |
| nóonchaa (khon)     | younger brother(s)  |
| nóonśaw (khon)      | younger sister(s)   |
| noorawee (prathêet) | Norway  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|           |                                       |
|-----------|---------------------------------------|
| nútchanan | Nuchanan (female first name)          |
| nýa       | north, above                          |
| nýaphâa   | texture of cloth                      |
| nýk       | think about, can recall, can remember |
| nýk òøk   | to be able to recall to memory        |
| nyn, nỳn  | one, a                                |

### η

|                 |                               |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| ηâaj            | to be simple, easy            |
| ηaan            | ceremony                      |
| ηaan            | work                          |
| ηaanlían        | party (entertainment)         |
| ηaan phátthanaa | community development         |
| ηaj             | variant form of <u>janraj</u> |
| ηán             | in that case                  |
| ηæn             | silver, money                 |
| ηænbèæk         | a deposit (in a bank)         |
| ηænthoøn        | change (money returned)       |
| ηó (lûuk)       | rambuttan (fruit)             |
| ηuâηnoøn        | to be sleepy                  |

### p

|                    |                                       |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|
| pâaj (pâaj)        | (traffic) stop sign, tag, sign poster |
| pâaj rótmee (pâaj) | bus stop                              |
| pàak (pàak)        | mouth, beak, lips, opening            |
| pàaknáam           | Paknam (name of an Amphoe)            |
| pàaks๑๑            | the entrance into a lane              |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| pàakkaa (dâam) | pen   |
| páak kâe       | Parker  |
| paj            | to go   |
| paj kòon       | to go first, to go ahead  |
| paj... maa     | to come from  |
| paj thǎn       | to arrive (away from speaker)   |
| (cháa) paj     | too (much)  |
| pàk            | part (with <u>pàk</u> <u>tâj</u> 'Southern Part' only)  |
| pámnámmán      | a gas pump  |
| paríit (krun)  | Paris   |
| p̄athumwan     | Patoomwan, (section of Bangkok)   |
| pattani        | Pattini (city in South Thailand)  |
| pen            | to be   |
| pensilweenia   | Pennsylvania  |
| pentaakoon     | the Pentagon  |
| pèst           | eight   |
| pèet           | to open, turn on (lights)   |
| pil            | year  |
| pìt            | to close, turn off (lights)   |
| plaasâa        | Plaza, name of a hotel in Bangkok   |
| pláatsatìk     | plastic   |
| plàaw          | no (it isn't so) - particle indicating strong disagreement with the information content of the question |
| plæ            | to translate  |
| plèek (plèek)  | (to be) unusual, (to be) strange  |
| plòotphaj      | to be safe, out of danger   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| plyaŋ                        | to use up, to consume, to waste<br>(e.g. money, time resources)<br>the expenses; to be expensive |
| pooŋ                         | pound (weight)   |
| pracam                       | to be stationed  |
| prachaathíppataj             | freedom (also the name of a<br>monument in Bangkok)  |
| prachum                      | to meet (in a group), to hold<br>a meeting; meeting, assembly                                    |
| pradìt                       | Pradit (given name)  |
| prajsaniì                    | the post office  |
| prajsaniiklaaŋ               | The Central Post Office  |
| pramaan                      | about, to approximate, to<br>estimate  |
| praphâat                     | Prabas (Thai male first name)  |
| prasàat                      | Prasat, male first name  |
| prasèet                      | Prasert (male first name)  |
| prasìt                       | Prasit (male first name)   |
| prathaan (khon)              | president, chairman  |
| prathaan aathípbòodii (khon) | the president of a country   |
| prathêet (prathêet)          | country, nation  |
| pratuu (baan)                | door, gate   |
| pratuunám                    | Pratunam (name of the section<br>in Bangkok)   |
| présidên                     | President (English name)   |
| prɛɛŋ (prɛɛŋ)                | brush  |
| prɛɛŋsǎifan (prɛɛŋ)          | toothbrush   |
| prichaa                      | Pricha (Thai male first name)  |
| pròot                        | please (request form)  |
| prỳksǎa                      | to talk it over, consult   |
| pùat                         | to ache, have a pain   |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|  |     |  |
|--|-----|--|
| phaa... {                              | paJ | to take, or escort someone                         |
|  | maa |  |
| phâafâaj                               |     | cotton   |
| phâamăj                                |     | silk   |
| phâanaJlôn                             |     | nylon  |
| phâak (phâak)                          |     | part, region, section                              |
| phàan                                  |     | to pass, to go past                                |
| phaasăa (phaasăa)                      |     | language, speech                                   |
| phahônjoothin                          |     | phahonyothin Road (in Bangkok)                     |
| phajabaan                              |     | to nurse   |
| phák                                   |     | to stay at, to stop at<br>(hotel, etc.)            |
| phák phòn                              |     | to rest  |
| phamâa (prathêet)                      |     | Burma, Burmese                                     |
| phan                                   |     | thousand   |
| -phan                                  |     | ending for month of February                       |
| phanáknaan (khon)                      |     | employee   |
| phanrajaa, pharijaa,<br>phanjaa (khon) |     | wife (elegant term)                                |
| phátlom (khrŷan)                       |     | electric fan                                       |
| phát phon                              |     | Pat Pong Street (in Bangkok)                       |
| phátthanaakoon (khon)                  |     | a community development worker                     |
| phét                                   |     | diamond  |
| phétphlɔɔj                             |     | jewelry  |
| phétburii                              |     | Phetburi (city in Central<br>Thailand)             |
| phèen                                  |     | classifier for 'map, picture,<br>paper' sheet-like |
| phènsŷan                               |     | records (phonograph)                               |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| phěnthîi (phèn)   | map  |
| phæŋ              | (to be) expensive                                |
| phêŋ              | just (immediately before)                        |
| phíchaj           | Phichai (male first name)                        |
| phîi (khon)       | older brother(s) and/or sister(s)                |
| phîichaaŋ (khon)  | older brother(s)                                 |
| phîinóŋ (khon)    | brother(s) and sister(s)                         |
| phîisǎaw (khon)   | older sister(s)                                  |
| phim              | to type  |
| phim (dít)        | to typewrite, print                              |
| phimphaa          | Pimpa (female first name)                        |
| phimsĕen          | smelling salts                                   |
| phít              | (to be) incorrect, a mistake                     |
| phítsanulôok      | Pitsanuloke (city in Northern Thailand)          |
| phii-éks          | the PX (Post Exchange)                           |
| phlɔɔj            | precious stones, such as sapphires, rubies, etc. |
| phǒm              | I (male speaker)                                 |
| phǒn              | classifier for fruit                             |
| phǒnlamáaj        | fruit  |
| phonlaryan (khon) | civilian   |
| phóp              | to meet, run into (someone)                      |
| phóp... kan       | to meet or see each other                        |
| phɔɔ              | to be enough, sufficient                         |
| phôɔ (khon)       | father, male engaged in...                       |
| phǎm              | (to be) thin (not fat)                           |
| phôɔkháa (khon)   | merchant   |
| phɔɔsǎɔ           | B.E.   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| phrá-aathít                 | Pra-aathit Street (in Bangkok)  |
| phrácan (thâa)              | Phracan ('moon'), name of the port in Bangkok across the Chaophraya River |
| phráraam sîi                | Rama the Fourth (street)  |
| phránakoon                  | Bangkok (official name of the province the city of Bangkok is located in) |
| phró ... (wâa)              | because   |
| phróom                      | to be ready, set, completed   |
| phrûnníi                    | tomorrow  |
| phrýt(sa)cikkaa(jon)        | November  |
| phrýtsaphaa(khom)           | May   |
| phuan                       | bunch, classifier for fruit in a bunch                                    |
| phútthá sàkàràat (phooosǎo) | Buddhist Era  |
| phûu                        | person, one who   |
| phûuchaaĵ (khon)            | man, boy (male human of any age)  |
| phûuchâw (khon)             | tenant  |
| phûuchġawchaan (khon)       | an expert   |
| phûujàĵ (khon)              | an adult  |
| phûujġġ (khon)              | woman, girl (female human of any age)                                     |
| phûut                       | to speak, talk, say   |
| phûut taam                  | to repeat after   |
| phÿan (khon)                | friend  |
| phÿyn                       | floor   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### r

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| raaj la-làt           | details   |
| raakhaa               | price   |
| raamâa                | the Rama (name of a hotel in Bangkok)                 |
| ráan (hèn, ráan)      | shop, store   |
| ránaaháan (ráan)      | restaurant  |
| ráankaafεε (ráan)     | coffee shop   |
| ráankháajjaa (ráan)   | a pharmacy  |
| ráankháajkhǒn (ráan)  | shop, store   |
| ráannánsýyphim (ráan) | a newstand  |
| ráanmǒ (ráan)         | a doctor's office                                     |
| ráantàtphǒm (ráan)    | a barber shop   |
| ráantàtsýa (ráan)     | a tailor shop   |
| raanwan (jàan)        | prize (kind)  |
| râatcha-              | pertaining to the king                                |
| râatburii             | Ratburi (city in Central Thailand)                    |
| râatchadamnœn         | Rachadamnoen (Road)                                   |
| râatchadamrì          | Rachadamri (Road)                                     |
| râatchawithĩi         | Rajawithee (Road)                                     |
| râatprasǒn            | Ratprasong (section of Bangkok)                       |
| raaw, raawraaw        | around, approximately                                 |
| rabian (rabian)       | corridor  |
| rák                   | to love   |
| rákthaj               | Rakthai (Thai family name)                            |
| ráp                   | to receive, accept, to take on,<br>to eat (something) |
| (paj/maa) ráp         | to go meet someone, to go get something               |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                                    |                                  |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| ráprouᅇ dâj                        | guarantee, can guarantee         |
| rát (rát)                          | state, nation                    |
| rátsia (prathêet)                  | Russia                           |
| rátthamontri                       | minister (head of a ministry)    |
| raw                                | we, our, us                      |
| reenuu                             | Renu (male or female first name) |
| reᅇ                                | fast, soon, early                |
| rêek                               | to be first                      |
| reᅇnthian                          | watt (measure of electricity)    |
| rêem                               | to start                         |
| rîak wâa                           | to be called                     |
| rian                               | to study, learn                  |
| rîan                               | coin, dollars                    |
| rîip                               | to hurry, to be urgent           |
| rîit                               | to iron (cloth)                  |
| rim (rim)                          | edge, rim, bank                  |
| (pen) rôok àhiwaa                  | (to have) cholera                |
| (pen) rôok bìt                     | (to have) dysentery              |
| (pen) rôok sâjtan                  | (to have) appendicitis           |
| room (kruᅇ)                        | Rome                             |
| rooᅇ (rooᅇ)                        | bu'lding                         |
| rooᅇnăᅇ (rooᅇ)                     | movie house, cinema              |
| rooᅇnăᅇ khiᅇ (rooᅇ)                | King's Cinema                    |
| rooᅇrian (hèᅇ)                     | school                           |
| rooᅇrian naanaachâat<br>(rooᅇrian) | The International School         |
| rooᅇróᅇ (rooᅇ)                     | garage, carport                  |
| rooᅇᅇaan (rooᅇ)                    | factory                          |
| rooᅇphajabaan (rooᅇ, hèᅇ)          | hospital                         |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| roonrɛɛm (roonrɛɛm, hɛŋ)    | hotel  |
| rópkuən                     | to bother, trouble (someone)                           |
| rót (khan)                  | car  |
| róttúktúk (khan)            | a small 3-wheeled car used<br>mainly as taxis          |
| rótfaj (khabuan)            | a train  |
| rótjon (khan)               | car, motor car   |
| rótmeɛ (khan)               | bus  |
| rótsǎamlóɔ (khan)           | samlor (3 wheeled vehicle)                             |
| rót                         | flavor   |
| rɔ, ròk, rɔk, ròk, rɔk, rə- | particle often used with<br>statement of negation      |
| róɔj                        | hundred  |
| rón                         | (to be) hot (temperature)                              |
| roontháw (khûu, khâaŋ)      | shoes (pair; one of a pair)                            |
| ruaj                        | (to be) rich, wealthy                                  |
| ruam                        | include, to combine, add,<br>add up, sum up            |
| rûam caj                    | Ruam chaj (name of lane on<br>Sukhumwit Road)          |
| rûam rýdii                  | Ruam Rudi, name of a lane off<br>Sukhumwit Road        |
| rúucàk                      | to know, to be acquainted with,<br>to be familiar with |
| rúu rýaŋ                    | to understand (a subject)                              |
| rûup (baj)                  | picture  |
| ré, rýy, rý, lýy, lý        | question word  |
| rýjaŋ                       | yet (question word)                                    |
| rýplàaw                     | question word (negative)                               |
| rýy, rý                     | or   |
| rya }<br>khrýaŋ }           | bin (lam, khrýaŋ)<br>airplane                          |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| rya (lam)          | boat   |
| ryabaj (lam)       | sail boat                                      |
| ryacâaŋ (lam)      | rented boat                                    |
| ryan               | classifier for 'watch, clock'                  |
| rŷaj rŷaj          | so so (as a response to a greeting)            |
| ryan (lǎŋ)         | house (in older Thai)                          |
| ryankhoncháj (lǎŋ) | servants' quarters                             |
| rŷaŋ               | story (about), about<br>(classifier for story) |

### s

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| sà wâajnáam      | swimming pool   |
| sa-àat           | to be clean   |
| sǎaj             | late, the time (9 a.m.-11:59 a.m.)  |
| sǎaj             | 1. classifier for rivers, canals, roads, for ornamental chains, necklaces for wires, cables, and for other line like objects.<br>2. line (esp. in the fig. sense of a channel, route, as in 'telephone line') |
| sǎalaa (lǎŋ)     | a pavilion, a hall, a public building   |
| sǎalaa ameerikan | the USIS auditorium   |
| sǎam             | three   |
| sǎam-síp         | thirty  |
| sǎamii (khon)    | husband (elegant term)  |
| saan fransisko   | San Francisco   |
| sâap             | to know (a fact)  |
| sǎatharaaná      | public (not private)  |
| sǎathoon         | Sathorn (street in Bangkok)   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                      |                                    |
|----------------------|------------------------------------|
| săathoøn tâj         | South Sathorn (street in Bangkok)  |
| sabaajdiï            | to feel well, be in good health    |
| sabùuhǎøm (khôøn)    | toilet soap                        |
| sabùu(láks) (kôøn)   | (Lux) soap                         |
| sabùuna.j (khôøn)    | local soap                         |
| sabùunôøk (khôøn)    | imported soap                      |
| sabùusákphâa (khôøn) | laundry soap                       |
| sabùutha.j (khôøn)   | Thai soap                          |
| saduak               | to be convenient                   |
| sajǎam               | Siam (former name for Thailand)    |
| sajǎam intəe         | Siam International Hotel           |
| sàhàprachaachâat     | The United Nations                 |
| sák (or) sàk         | a little, bit                      |
| sák pradǎaw          | a minute                           |
| sák                  | to wash (cloth only), to launder   |
| sák hêɛŋ             | to dry clean                       |
| sák náam             | to wash (in water), to be washable |
| sakòt                | to spell (words)                   |
| sakruu               | one fourth yard                    |
| samǎan               | Saman, male or female first name   |
| samǎ.j               | time, period, era, age, reign      |
| samǎ.j mà.j          | modern                             |
| samǎe                | always, regularly, consistently    |
| sămnákŋaan (hèŋ)     | office (of an agency, etc.)        |
| sámràp               | for                                |
| samít                | Smith (name)                       |
| samoosǎøn            | club, association                  |
| samùt (lêm)          | notebook                           |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| samùt thoorasàp (lêm)        | a phone book  |
| sân                          | (to be) short (in length)   |
| sanăam (sanăam)              | yard, field, (golf) course  |
| sanăam (hèn)                 | field, (as in airfield, sports field, etc.)                                 |
| sanăamjâa (sanăam)           | lawn, yard  |
| sanăambin (hèn)              | airport   |
| sanăamkilaa (hèn)            | the sports stadium  |
| sanăamlũaŋ (hèn)             | the Pramane Grounds in Bangkok  |
| sanăammăa (hèn)              | race track  |
| sanít                        | extremely (sweet, etc.); close, intimate (of friends, etc.)                 |
| sănjaachâw (baj)             | a lease   |
| sanùk                        | (to be) amusing, to be fun, to have a good time                             |
| sawàt                        | Sawat (name)  |
| sawàtdii                     | hello (used for greeting or leavetaking)                                    |
| sawít (prathêet)             | Switzerland   |
| sàŋ                          | to order, to leave instructions or a message                                |
| sàŋ (hâj)                    | to order  |
| sàpdaa, sàppadaa             | week (elegant usage)  |
| sapeen (prathêet)            | Spain   |
| saphaan (saphaan, an)        | bridge (a structure)  |
| saphaan khwaaj (saphaan, an) | the Water Buffalo Bridge (name of a bridge in Bangkok on Phaholyothin Road) |
| sapòot khláp                 | The Royal Bangkok Sports Club   |
| sàpparót (lûuk, baj)         | pineapple   |
| sàpràthum                    | Saprathum (name of the corner and section in Bangkok)                       |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| saprinɿfil              | Springfield  |
| sàt (tua)               | animal   |
| ...lían (tua)           | pet  |
| satàan                  | satang (Thai coinage)  |
| sathǎan (hèn)           | place, location  |
| sathǎankonɿsǔn (hèn)    | the Consulate  |
| sathǎanii (hèn)         | station  |
| sathǎaniirótfaj (hèn)   | the railroad station   |
| sathǎaniiitamrùat (hèn) | police station   |
| sathǎanthíi (hèn)       | place, site (place equipped<br>for particular kind of work,<br>activity, etc.)   |
| sathǎanthûut (hèn)      | embassy  |
| sǎw                     | Saturday   |
| sèet satàan             | change (in coin)   |
| sen (tikram)            | centigram (metric system)  |
| sen (timéet)            | centimeter (metric system)   |
| sên                     | for rope, cord   |
| sèt                     | to finish some activity (often<br>of indefinite length and of<br>temporary nature)   |
| sěen                    | hundred thousand   |
| sí                      | particle indicating definiteness<br>or emphasis  |
| sí, sî, sí              | to request someone to do some-<br>thing, to urge someone to do<br>something that he has failed<br>to do on the first request or<br>obviously needs doing |
| sǎa                     | to pay out (money) to waste,<br>lose (time) to be obligated<br>to pay  |
| sǎa (khâa)              | to pay for something (a bill,<br>etc.)   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|               |  |
|---------------|--|
| sìi           | four   |
| sìijêek       | corner   |
| sìi-sìp       | forty  |
| sŷi (sŷi)     | color  |
| sŷi           | to polish  |
| sŷilom        | Silom (name of the street in Bangkok)  |
| sŷisà         | head (elegant word)  |
| sŷinkháa thaj | Thai merchandise   |
| sŷnhăa(khom)  | August   |
| sìp           | ten  |
| sirirâat      | Siriraj, name of the hospital in Thonburi                                      |
| sòkkapròk     | to be dirty  |
| sôm (lûuk)    | orange   |
| sôm oo (lûuk) | pomelo   |
| sŷmsàk        | Somsak (male first name)   |
| sòŋ           | to pass, to hand (someone something)   |
| sòŋ           | to send or ship something;<br>to see someone off, to<br>take someone somewhere |
| sŷŋkhlăa      | Songkla (city in South Thailand)   |
| sŷmcìt        | Somchit (male or female first name)  |
| sòot (khon)   | to be single, unmarried state<br>single person, bachelor,<br>spinster          |
| sòt           | (to be) fresh (of fruit, etc.)   |
| sŷŷj          | lane (narrow street)   |
| sŷŷn          | to teach   |
| sŷŷn dœŋ      | Red Arrow (name of a restaurant in Bangkok)                                    |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| sɔɔŋ                | classifier for cigarettes;<br>envelope  |
| sɔɔŋcòtmǎaj         | envelope  |
| sɔɔŋ                | two   |
| sɔɔŋchán            | two story   |
| sɔŋkhraam           | war   |
| sòɔp                | to test, be tested  |
| sǎaj                | (to be) pretty, beautiful   |
| sǎan (sǎan)         | garden  |
| sǎandòokmǎaj        | flower garden   |
| sàanmâak            | most of, in the main  |
| sùk                 | to be ripe  |
| sùksǎalaa (hèn)     | public health center or clinic  |
| sukhǔmwít           | Sukhumwit Road  |
| sǔnthɔɔn            | Sunthorn (male first name)  |
| suriwɔŋ             | Suriwong (street in Bangkok)  |
| sùttháaj            | last, final   |
| sǔunklaaŋ (hèn)     | center  |
| sǔuŋ                | to be high, tall  |
| sýa                 | refers to top garments, such<br>as shirts and blouses,<br>woman's dress   |
| sýa kaaŋkeen        | suit of clothes (for men) any<br>ensemble of clothes that<br>includes an upper garment<br>and slacks or pants. (e.g.<br>women's blouse and slacks,<br>children's coveralls, pajamas,<br>etc.) |
| sýanɔɔk             | jacket  |
| sýaphâa (tua, chúť) | cloth   |
| sýa (tua)           | tiger   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| sỳksǎa                            | to study, learn  |
| sýy                               | to buy, (with <u>khǎw</u> 'to shop')   |
| sýy... { paj } ...fàak<br>{ maa } | to buy something as a gift or<br>souvenir for someone                          |
| <u>t</u>                          |  |
| taam                              | along, after; to follow  |
| tàaŋ                              | (to be) different, separate  |
| tàaŋ kàp                          | to differ, be different, distinct<br>(i.e. from each other), to<br>differ from |
| tàaŋcaŋwàt                        | in the provinces, out-of-town  |
| (jùu) tàaŋhàak                    | to be separate   |
| tàaŋ prathêet                     | foreign  |
| tâj                               | South, under   |
| tâjthǔn                           | the space under the house  |
| talàat (hèn)                      | market   |
| talàat náam                       | the Floating Market in Thonburi  |
| talàat nát (hèn)                  | a special kind of market which<br>is open regularly on a certain<br>day        |
| tambon (tambon)                   | precinct, subdivision of an<br>amphoe  |
| tamnèeŋ                           | position (rank)  |
| tamrùat (khon)                    | police   |
| tâŋ                               | as much as, as many as   |
| tâŋ                               | to be located  |
| tâŋtèe                            | from (such and such a time or<br>starting point), since                        |
| tàt                               | to cut, sever  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| taw (taw)           | stove   |
| tawkéss (taw)       | gas stove   |
| tawríit (an)        | to iron (for clothing)  |
| teeharaan (myaη)    | Teheran   |
| tenníit             | tennis  |
| tênram              | to dance (Western style)  |
| tèè                 | but   |
| tèè }<br>ta } cháaw | very early  |
| tesnmoò (lûuk)      | watermelon  |
| tèn                 | to decorate, adorn (the verb<br>in <u>tèn naan</u> )  |
| tèn naan            | to marry, to get married, to<br>be married  |
| tíia                | to be short, low (in height)  |
| tiaη (tiaη)         | bed (to sleep on)   |
| tíi                 | o'clock (for the time 1 a.m. -<br>5 a.m.)   |
| tít                 | to get stuck (to, in), to<br>connect, to stick (to),<br>to attach (to)  |
| rót tít             | the traffic's heavy   |
| tít (múnluat)       | to (be) screen(ed)  |
| títât               | to install  |
| títtoò kàp          | to contact or get in touch<br>with someone  |
| tó (tua)            | table, desk   |
| tòk                 | to fade (of colors), to drop,<br>to fall (straight) down<br>(from, into, onto), to fall<br>or drop off, decrease,<br>diminish, to set (of the<br>sun, moon) |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| tòkloŋ            | right, O.K., to agree (to something)   |
| tônmaaŋ (tôn)     | plant, tree  |
| too               | (to be) big, large, mature   |
| tooklaw (krun)    | Tokyo  |
| tòo (raakhaa)     | to bargain   |
| tòo (thoorasàp)   | to make a phone call   |
| toon              | sometime, time, part of (something)  |
| toon (thîi)       | during, section (of space or time), part   |
| tôn               | must, have to  |
| tônkaan           | to want, need  |
| tòop              | to answer  |
| traa              | brand, trademark (It is sometimes attached to the name of the product in advertising.) |
| tron              | right, exactly sharp (of time)   |
| tron (nǎj)        | (exactly) where  |
| tron { ka-<br>kàp | to correspond to, agree with, coincide with  |
| tronkan khâam     | opposite   |
| tronkhâam kan kàp | opposite   |
| tua               | classifier for 'animals, objects with legs (chairs, tables, etc.)'                     |
| tua phǒm een      | I (myself)   |
| ... kháw ...      | he (himself), etc. <u>tua... een</u> is more emphatic than <u>tua</u> alone.           |
| tua myan          | the business district  |
| tua nánsǎy (tua)  | letter (of the alphabet)   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| tulaa(khom)  | October   |
| tûu (baj)    | chests of drawers, cabinets,<br>(book)cases, wardrobe |
| tûujen (tûu) | refrigerator  |
| tỳk (lǎŋ)    | building  |

### th

|                       |                                 |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| thaa (sǎi)            | to smear, spread (on), to paint |
| thâa (thâa, hèn)      | port, harbor                    |
| thàaj rûup            | to take pictures                |
| thǎam                 | to ask, (a question)            |
| thaan                 | to eat, drink (elegant term)    |
| thàanfajchaaj (kôn)   | flashlight batteries            |
| thaan                 | way, path, direction, means     |
| thaan̄khwǎa           | to the right                    |
| thaan̄lỳak            | choice (as a means)             |
| thaan̄nỳa             | North                           |
| thaan̄sáaj            | to the left                     |
| thaan̄tâj             | South                           |
| thaan̄kasèt           | agricultural                    |
| thǎawoon              | Thaworn (Thai male first name)  |
| thahǎan (khon)        | serviceman                      |
| thahǎan aakàat (khon) | airman                          |
| thahǎan b̀ok (khon)   | soldier                         |
| thahǎan rya (khon)    | sailor                          |
| thaj                  | Thai                            |
| thalee                | sea                             |
| tham                  | to do, make                     |
| thamnaan              | to work                         |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| tham dūaj...          | made of...   |
| thammaj               | why (question word)  |
| thammadaa             | usually, normally  |
| thammasàat            | Thammasart (university of Bangkok)                               |
| than                  | to accomplish something in time, to have time to, to catch up to |
| than samǎj            | modern, up-to-date   |
| thân                  | you, he, she (for persons of superior status)                    |
| thanaakhaan (hèn)     | bank   |
| thanaakhaan ameerikan | the Bank of America (the American bank)                          |
| thanaakhaan thaj      | the Bank of Thailand   |
| thanàt khooman        | Mr. Thanat Khoman, Foreign Minister of Thailand                  |
| thanǒn (sǎaj)         | street, road   |
| thanǒn jàj            | the main street  |
| thanwaa(khom)         | December   |
| thǎn (baj)            | pail   |
| thánmòt               | altogether   |
| thaw                  | grey (color)   |
| thâw kàp              | equal, same in size or quantity                                  |
| thâwnán               | only, only that (much)   |
| thâwraaj              | how many, how much (question word)                               |
| théep                 | tape (English loan word)   |
| thên                  | classifier for 'pencil', etc.                                    |
| théeksîi (khan)       | taxi   |
| thěew                 | section, district (of a town)                                    |
| thěewnán              | over there, that area  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| (kan) thè, (thə, thət)   | why not, let's  |
| thīaŋ                    | noon  |
| thīaŋ khyyn              | midnight  |
| thīaw                    | for pleasure  |
| paj thīaw                | to go out for pleasure  |
| thīi                     | instance, case, time  |
| thīidiaw                 | exactly, quite, very  |
| thīi                     | may be used in the place of<br><u>nòoj</u> to soften a request<br>if something is to be done<br>for the speaker |
| thīi wīi (khrŷaŋ)        | TV  |
| thīi                     | place; at, in (means 'place<br>where' as head of noun<br>compounds)   |
| thīi nǎj                 | where (as question word); any-<br>where (in negative statement)   |
| thīinān                  | there   |
| thīinīi                  | here  |
| thīinōon                 | way over there  |
| thīicòetrót (thīi)       | parking lot   |
| thīilêsknən              | place to exchange money   |
| thīiprachum (hèn)        | a meeting (place), assembly,<br>gathering (of people)   |
| thīisòŋ thooralêek       | the place to send telegrams   |
| thīithamnaan (hèn, thīi) | office  |
| thīithamkaan             | the office  |
| thīi                     | form that is used with numerals<br>to form ordinal numbers, hence<br><u>thīi sǎam</u> 'third', etc.             |
| thīi nyn                 | first   |
| thīi sǎam                | third   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| thîi sîi              | fourth  |
| thîi sǒŋ              | second, etc.  |
| thîisùt               | superlative most, -est (occurs<br>in construction with stative<br>verbs)  |
| thîi                  | that, which (connective)  |
| thîi léew             | ago   |
| (aathít) thîi léew    | last (week, etc.)   |
| thîi-                 | means 'simple device' when<br>used as the head of certain<br>noun compounds.  |
| thîitiikhàj (thîi)    | an ordinary (egg) beater  |
| thîipèetkrapǒŋ (thîi) | an ordinary can opener  |
| thîip                 | to ride, pedal  |
| thîp thǒop            | Tip Top (name of a coffee shop)   |
| thǒm                  | to make nielloware  |
| thon                  | to be durable, lasting, to<br>last, to endure   |
| thonabàt              | bank note   |
| thonburii             | Thonburii, name of a province<br>in Thailand. It used to be<br>the capital during the period<br>from 1767 through 1782. |
| thoomás               | Thomas  |
| thooralêek (chabàp)   | telegram  |
| thoo (rasàp)          |   |
| .... (rasàp) paj      | } to telephone, to call   |
| .... (rasàp) maa      |   |
| thoorathát (khÿaŋ)    | T.V.  |
| thoo (phâa)           | to weave cloth  |
| thoom                 | Tom (a name)  |
| thoon                 | to give change (money)  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| thooŋ          | gold   |
| thóoŋ (thóoŋ)  | stomach, intestinal area   |
| thooŋlǎŋ       | bronze (the market term)   |
| thooŋsǎmrít    | bronze (technical name)  |
| thûaj (baj)    | cup (classifier for a cup of something)                            |
| thûan          | exactly (in amount), complete (exact in amount), in a round number |
| thúk           | every, each  |
| thun (thun)    | a grant, fund, investment, a scholarship, a fellowship             |
| thǔŋ (baj)     | a bag  |
| thûm           | o'clock, (used for 7 p.m. - 11 p.m.)                               |
| thurá          | business, affairs, errands   |
| paj thurá      | to go out on business  |
| thúrian (lûuk) | durian (fruit)   |
| thùuk          | (to be) right, correct   |
| thûut (khon)   | the ambassador (common usage)                                      |
| thǔŋ, thýŋ     | to reach, get to; that, so, then, if it comes to the point that    |

### W

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| wâa           | to say, criticize, to think, to have an opinion; that (when used with verbs like <u>phûut</u> ) |
| wâajnáam      | to swim   |
| waansyyn(níi) | the day before yesterday  |
| wâan          | (to be) sweet (in flavor)   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| waaníi              | Wanee (female first name)   |
| wâan                | (to be) free, not busy, not occupied  |
| wâj                 | a salute made by placing the hands palm to palm and raising them towards the face |
| wájt                | White (English name)  |
| wan (wan)           | day (classifier for day)  |
| wanníi              | today   |
| wanaṅkhaan          | Tuesday   |
| wanathít            | Sunday  |
| wancan              | Monday  |
| wanph(a)rýhàt       | Thursday  |
| wanphút             | Wednesday   |
| wansǎw              | Saturday  |
| wansùk              | Friday  |
| wanlǎṅ              | some day (in the future)  |
| wanphrá             | Buddhist day of worship   |
| wanthíi             | date; (the... th)   |
| wǎṅ                 | to hope   |
| (pen) wàt           | (to have) a cold  |
| wát (wát)           | temple, temple compound   |
| wátthanátham        | culture   |
| weelaa              | time (to do something, etc.)  |
| weelaaníi           | at present  |
| wé                  | to stop in, over  |
| wæecinia (rát)      | Virginia  |
| wíatnaam (prathêet) | Vietnam, Vietnamese   |
| wíchaj              | Wichai (male first name)  |
| wǐi                 | bunch, classifier for bunch of bananas  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

wítsawákoon (khon)

an engineer

wítthajú (khrÿan, an)

radio; Withayu (Thai name of  
a street); Wireless Road  
(English name)

wóochintân

Washington